

ROUTLEDGE CONCISE GRAMMARS

Da!

A Practical Guide to Russian Grammar

SECOND EDITION

Tatiana Filosofova



DA!

A Practical Guide to Russian Grammar

This fully revised second edition of *Da! A Practical Guide to Russian Grammar* is a concise and contemporary reference grammar and workbook for intermediate-level students.

The book contains clear explanations of the core areas of Russian grammar. Each point is illustrated with examples of contemporary language usage showing you how grammar works in practice while at the same time enhancing your vocabulary and cultural knowledge. Every chapter ends with a variety of exercises to test your progress and consolidate your understanding. Now revised with more exercises and enhanced e-resources.

Suitable for intermediate-level students, *Da! A Practical Guide to Russian Grammar* is an invaluable resource for both classroom and self-study.

Tatiana Filosofova is a Senior Lecturer in Russian at the University of North Texas, USA. She teaches all core Russian language classes to undergraduate students at all levels and courses on Russian folklore and Russian culture. Her publications include a monograph on Russian folk poetry, a Russian textbook and more than 20 articles on both the methodology of teaching Russian and Russian folklore.

Routledge Concise Grammars

Yufa!

A Practical Guide to Mandarin Chinese Grammar, Second Edition
Wen-Hua Teng

¡Exacto!

A Practical Guide to Spanish Grammar, Third Edition
Ane Ortega, Tita Beaven, Cecilia Garrido and Sean Scrivener

Soluzioni

A Practical Grammar of Contemporary Italian, Fourth Edition
Denise De Rôme

Da!

A Practical Guide to Russian Grammar, Second Edition
Tatiana Filosofova

DA!

A Practical Guide to
Russian Grammar

Second edition

Tatiana Filosofova

Second edition published 2020
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

and by Routledge
52 Vanderbilt Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2020 Tatiana Filosofova

The right of Tatiana Filosofova to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by her in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition published by Hodder Education 2012

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Filosofova, Tatiana, author.

Title: Da! a practical guide to Russian grammar / Tatiana Filosofova.

Description: Second edition. | New York : Routledge, 2020. | Series: Routledge concise grammars | Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2019049957 (print) | LCCN 2019049958 (ebook) | ISBN 9780367209988 (hardback) | ISBN 9780367210014 (paperback) | ISBN 9780429264764 (ebook)

Subjects: LCSH: Russian language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. | Russian language—Grammar.

Classification: LCC PG2129.E5 F55 2020 (print) | LCC PG2129.E5 (ebook) | DDC 491.782421—dc23

LC record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2019049957>

LC ebook record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2019049958>

ISBN: 978-0-367-20998-8 (hbk)

ISBN: 978-0-367-21001-4 (pbk)

ISBN: 978-0-429-26476-4 (ebk)

Typeset in Minion

by Apex CoVantage, LLC

Visit the eResources: www.routledge.com/9780367210014

Contents

Acknowledgements	vii
How to use this book	viii
Glossary of grammatical terms	xi
1 Introduction	1
2 Nouns: animate and inanimate nouns and gender	6
3 Nouns: number	12
4 Nouns: the concept of cases and the principle of noun declension	16
5 Nouns: nominative case	32
6 Nouns: accusative case	39
7 Nouns: genitive case	52
8 Nouns: dative case	76
9 Nouns: instrumental case	86
10 Nouns: prepositional case	97
11 Adjectives	104
12 Adjectives: comparative, superlative and short- and long-form adjectives	112
13 Adverbs	118
14 Pronouns	125
15 Numbers	148
16 Verbs	167
17 Verbs: present tense	174
18 Verbs: past tense	181
19 Verbs: future tense	185
20 Verbs: verbal aspect	188
21 Verbs: transitive and intransitive verbs, active and passive voice	210

22	Verbs: mood	214
23	Reflexive verbs	220
24	Verbs of motion: introduction; verbs of motion without prefixes	226
25	Verbs of motion: verbs of motion with prefixes	236
26	Participles	255
27	Gerunds	262
28	Prepositions	268
29	Conjunctions and particles	274
30	Impersonal sentences	281
31	Essentials of syntax	290
	Bibliography	294
	Key to exercises	296
	Index	304

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all colleagues and students who gave valuable inputs to the book. Especially warm thanks are due to the many generations of students at the universities of Glasgow, Dundee, Edinburgh, St Andrews, Kentucky and University of North Texas whose linguistic curiosity and determination to learn Russian inspired me to produce this practical grammar book. Special thanks go to John Spink, Anna Darmody and Jeremy Burnell, who read some selected chapters of the book and made their valuable comments. I am very grateful to my colleague Dr. Anthony Hippisley for his valuable suggestions on modifications and improvements that were incorporated in the second edition of the book.

I would like to express my appreciation to the editors at Hodder Education, Bianca Knights, Lavinia Porter and Virginia Catmur, for their professional advice, help and support throughout all stages of first edition, and to Routledge for this new edition.

How to use this book

Добрó пожаловать! I hope you will enjoy using *Да!* This reference grammar and practice book is intended for Basic and Intermediate learners of Russian. All essentials are covered as well as more complex areas of the Russian language.

Read the following information carefully before you start, as it will give you tips on how to get the most out of the book.

Да! can be used in different ways, depending on your purpose.




It can be used to complement textbooks and course materials provided by your tutor or those you use for self-study, to support the understanding and practice of grammar.

There is no particular order in which you have to work through this book. All chapters are self-contained units and can be used in any order. In each chapter you will find cross-reference symbols to help you to look up any relevant topic.

If you wish to find out more about a specific grammatical area, look up the appropriate chapter.

If you would like to revise grammar more systematically, work through the book in sequence.

Features of *Да!*

- A glossary of grammatical terms with quick reference explanations.
- Grammar explanations with summary tables and examples.
- Exercises to practise and consolidate the grammar covered in each chapter and a key with answers.
- Free e-resource: to access this, go to www.routledge.com/9780367210014
- Examples are taken from many different, authentic sources, such as business, literary, journalistic, and academic texts, and everyday language.
- Indications of level of difficulty in the grammar explanations and in the exercises so that you can choose the most relevant sections for yourself.
- A grammatical index to help you to find the answers to all your queries on Russian grammar.
- Summary tables for quick overview.
- Cross-referencing to related points of grammar, signposted by .
- Coverage of points of special difficulty for the English-speaking learner, indicated by .
- Mr Smirnoff, the friendly face of Russian grammar, guiding you through the book .
- Stress indicator. Russian stress is unpredictable, except for a small number of patterns that are explained in the book. The acute accent ´ indicates the

stressed vowel in each word. The acute accent is omitted as unnecessary in two cases:

- (i) In monosyllabic words.
- (ii) If a word contains the letter Ё(ë), it is always stressed. In authentic Russian texts the acute accent is not used, and the letter Ё(ë) is replaced by the letter Е(е).

- Level indicator icons.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this book:

- N – Nominative case
- A – Accusative case
- G – Genitive case
- D – Dative case
- I – Instrumental case
- P – Prepositional case
- S – Singular number
- Pl – Plural number
- m – masculine gender
- f – feminine gender
- n – neuter gender
- imp. – imperfective verbal aspect
- pf. – perfective verbal aspect

Who is *Да!* for?

You need very little previous knowledge of formal Russian grammar in order to use this book. It is assumed, however, that you can read the Cyrillic (Russian) alphabet already so that you can understand the examples. Grammatical terms are explained in English and their Russian counterpart terms are given in the glossary. This way you will be able to use Russian reference textbooks later when you are ready to do so. If you are not yet ready for this, just use the equivalent English terms.

All the basic grammar areas are covered that are essential for Basic to Lower Intermediate level learners who may have just started to learn Russian or need to brush up on the beginnings of more advanced grammar. They are referred to as **Level 1**. If you feel that you are ready to deal with more challenging language concepts, vocabulary and examples, use the examples for **Levels 2** and **3**. See the quick reference guide (below) for descriptions of the levels. On occasion, there will be some overlap between levels.

Most importantly, this book is here to help you to use Russian with greater confidence in speaking and writing by complementing whichever way you have started to learn, in classes or on your own, with a textbook or without, with friends or family, in a Russian-speaking country or with Russian speakers in your home environment.

Да! is recommended for adult learners, but will also appeal to younger age groups. It can be used in schools, colleges and universities, as well as in evening classes, in English-speaking countries.

Quick reference guide to levels

Levels of progression and difficulty generally take into account language level indicators such as those of the CEF (Common European Framework, Council of Europe), ACTFL (American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages) and the Russian as a Foreign Language Standards set by the MGU (Moscow State University). Approximate equivalents of levels:

Level 1 up to CEF B1 or up to ACTFL Novice High or MGU Basic

Level 2 CEF B1/B2 or up to ACTFL Intermediate Mid or MGU Second Certificate

Level 3 CEF C1/C2 or ACTFL Intermediate High or MGU Third Certificate

Level 1 – Elementary, for beginners and post-beginners, covers essentials such as: basic concepts and vocabulary, basic spelling rules, essential characteristics of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and verbs, with a minimum inclusion of exceptions to rules. There is some overlap with **Level 2** on occasion.

Level 2 – Lower Intermediate, covers more advanced grammar. Vocabulary and concepts at this level have been expanded with the focus on areas that tend to be more challenging for the English-speaking learner, such as use of verbal aspects, verbs of motion and the highly inflected case system. Gerunds and the basic use of participles that are essential for writing are also introduced. There is some overlap with **Levels 1** and **3** on occasion.

Level 3 – Upper Intermediate. Learners are introduced to more complex sentence structures, passive constructions, figurative meanings of the verbs of motion and a more advanced vocabulary. Examples are drawn from more complex authentic texts, such as literary extracts and newspapers. There may be some overlap with **Level 2** on occasion.

Most importantly, remember that language learning is about communicating and enjoying working with the language and the experiences it opens up for you.

Enjoy and good luck! Желаю успеха и всего доброго! В добрый путь!

Tanya Filosofova

Glossary of grammatical terms

Adjectives/ прилагательные	are declinable words, in Russian, that describe a noun and agree with a noun they describe in gender, number and case. They can also be used as predicates.
Adverbs/ наречия	are indeclinable words in Russian. Adverbs mainly qualify verbs, but also adjectives and other adverbs.
Agreement/ согласование	is based on the principle that words that provide additional information about a main word must agree grammatically with it.
Animate nouns/ одушевлённые существительные	denote all living beings, including people and names of their relations and occupations, animals, mythological creatures and fictional characters as opposed to non-living objects. In Russian this grammatical category impacts the noun declension, especially in the accusative case.
Articles/ артикли	are defining words before a noun that express whether it is definite (the) or indefinite (a). There are no articles in Russian.
Cases/падежи	are word forms. Russian has a six-case system. This means that nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numbers have different endings depending on their role in a sentence. The choice of ending depends on that grammatical role, i.e. whether the word acts as a subject or object, or describes location, timing etc.
Clause/главное или придаточное предложение	is a part of a compound or complex sentence that contains a verb.
Conjugation/ спряжение	is a set of verb endings that reflect the person and number in which they are used.
Conjunctions/ союзы	are indeclinable link words. They link individual words within a sentence or clauses in compound and complex sentences.
Declension/ склонение	is a set of endings for nouns, adjectives, pronouns and numerals that reflect the case in which they are used.
Endings/ окончания	consist of one or more letters added to the end of the word's stem. Russian linguistics traditionally distinguishes between the terms suffix and ending, by their functions. Suffixes alter the word's meaning. Endings express the notion of grammatical gender, number and case and modify the word forms: number and case (nouns and numerals), number, gender and case (adjectives and numerals) or person and number (present and future tenses of the verbs) or gender and number (past tense of the verb).

Gender/род	is a grammatical category that divides nouns into masculine, feminine and neuter.
Gerunds/ депричастия	are a verbal form that, in Russian, combine characteristics of verbs and adverbs.
Inanimate nouns/ неодушевлённые существительные	denote all non-living objects as opposed to living beings, including people and names of their relations and occupations, animals, mythological creatures and fictional characters. In Russian this grammatical category impacts the noun declension, especially in the accusative case.
Infinitive/ инфинитив	is the basic (dictionary) form of a verb.
Mood/ наклонение	is a verbal category that defines the speaker's attitude towards the action.
Nouns/ существительные	are declinable words in Russian that denote material objects, living things, events or ideas. Their declension is determined by gender, number, the softness or hardness of the word stem and the case.
Numbers (numerals)/ числительные	are declinable words, in Russian, that denote quantity and agree with the noun they describe in gender, number and case.
Objects/ дополнения	are nouns, pronouns or phrases at which an action is aimed.
Participles/ причастия	are verbal forms that, in Russian, combine characteristics of verbs and adjectives.
Particles/ частицы	are indeclinable words in Russian that do not have a meaning of their own. They bring emotional emphasis to the word, phrase or sentence.
Predicate/ сказуемое	is one of the core elements of a sentence. The predicate explains the actions of the subject or denotes its status or quality. The predicate can appear in a one-word form (verb) or in a compound form consisting of a verbal link with a noun, adjective, participle or infinitive.
Prefixes/ приставки	consist of one or more syllables added to the beginning of the word before the word's root, and alter the word's meaning.
Prepositions/ предлоги	clarify the various relationships between a noun, pronoun or a noun phrase and other words in a sentence. Prepositions are mainly used when talking about time, location, start and end points of movement, when indicating ownership, reasons and consequences of an action. Prepositions play an important role in governing nouns or pronouns. Some prepositions can be used in several cases, and their use depends on the context.
Pronouns/ местоимения	are declinable words that qualify or replace a noun. Their declension is determined by the type of a pronoun (personal, possessive, reflexive, demonstrative, determinative, interrogative, indefinite, negative, reciprocal etc.).

Stems/осно́вы	are a core part of the word from which different word forms are created. Stems may consist of a root, prefix and suffix. The ending is not a part of the stem.
Subject/ подлежа́щее	is one of the core elements of a sentence. In active constructions the subject indicates the person or thing who carries out the action. In passive constructions the subject is a person or a thing to whom the action is directed.
Suffixes/ су́ффиксы	consist of one or more letters added to the end of the word's root, and alter the word's meaning.
Tense/вре́мя	indicates the time of an action: present, past or future.
Transitivity/ перехо́дность	clarifies the relationship between a verb and object. It establishes whether the verb must take a direct object to convey the message correctly (transitive verb) or whether it cannot have an object (intransitive verb).
Verbs/глаго́лы	are words that define an action or a state. Russian verbs conjugate and have grammatical categories of tense, aspect, voice, transitivity and mood.
Verbal aspect/ вид глаго́ла	is a grammatical category that describes how the action is carried out. In Russian there are two verbal aspects. Perfective aspect (соверше́нный вид) describes a complete, single action. Imperfective aspect (несоверше́нный вид) describes an ongoing or repeated action or denotes the fact that an action had occurred.
Voice/зало́г	is a grammatical category that clarifies the relationship between a verb and subject in a sentence. The verb describes what the subject does itself (active voice), or what is done to the subject by someone or something (passive voice).



Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

1 Introduction

1.1 About the language

Russian is a widely used language, spoken not only in Russia but across the world by first language (native) speakers, and also by many people who use it as their second language. Estimates vary between 160 and 250 million speakers worldwide.

Russian belongs to the Indo-European family of languages and is one of the East Slavonic languages of the Slavonic languages branch. It shares this Eastern Slavonic grouping with Belarusian and Ukrainian. Other Slavonic language groups are South Slavonic (Bulgarian, Serbian, Croatian, Macedonian and Slovene) and West Slavonic (Polish, Czech and Slovak).

There are 33 letters in the alphabet (21 consonants, ten vowels, a soft sign and a hard sign). The name used for the Russian alphabet, Cyrillic, is derived from the initial development of a writing system for Church Slavonic by the Byzantine saint Cyril.

Level
1, 2

1.2 Transliteration

1.2.1 Transliteration of Russian letters into English

Phonetic transcriptions of the sounds of Russian letters are sometimes used by English speakers. However, the current standard transliteration of (written) Russian letters into English is that of the Library of Congress (LOC), Washington, DC. The LOC transliteration is used worldwide. There are also some other transliteration conventions, such as the British Standard transliteration (BS2979:1958) used by Oxford University Press.

Russian printed letter (capital, lower case)	Transliteration (spelling in Latin alphabet), LOC standard	Russian printed letter (capital, lower case)	Transliteration (spelling in Latin alphabet), LOC standard
А, а	A, a	Р, р	R, r
Б, б	B, b	С, с	S, s
В, в	V, v	Т, т	T, t
Г, г	G, g	У, у	U, u
Д, д	D, d	Ф, ф	F, f
Е, е Ё, ё	E, e Ё, ё	Х, х	Kh, kh
Ж, ж	Zh, zh	Ц, ц	Ts, ts
З, з	Z, z	Ч, ч	Ch, ch
И, и	I, i	Ш, ш	Sh, sh
Й, й	ÿ, ÿ	Щ, щ	Shch, shch
К, к	K, k	Ъ	”
Л, л	L, l	Ы, ы	Y, y
М, м	M, m	Ь	’
Н, н	N, n	Э, э	É, é
О, о	O, o	Ю, ю	Iu, iu
П, п	P, p	Я, я	Ia, ia

Comments on the table

- The letter Ё, ё is not used in authentic Russian texts. It appears only in texts especially designed for foreign learners, in order to indicate pronunciation. When transliterating Ё, ё, the letter E, e is often used.
- Some Russian proper names are still transliterated using a nineteenth-century French system of transliteration. For example, the name of the famous Russian composer Чайко́вский is spelt Tchaikovsky, the name of the Russian entrepreneur Смирно́в is spelt Smirnoff.

1.2.2 Transliteration of some English words into Russian

Spelling of foreign names is based on an approximation of the word to Russian phonetic (pronunciation) rules. For example, Шекспі́р – Shakespeare.

The letter <i>h</i> (when it has a 'breathy' sound at the beginning of a word or syllable) is expressed by either г or х	Гамбург (Hamburg), Гавайи (Hawaii), Голливуд (Hollywood), Хэмптон Корт (Hampton Court) Exception: юмор (humour)
The letter <i>j</i> is expressed by two letters, дж	Джон (John)
The letter <i>w</i> , when used as a consonant, is expressed by either в or у	Вильям, Уильям (William)
English <i>th</i> is often expressed by т	Перт (Perth)

Level
1, 2

1.3 Spelling rules

There are some basic spelling rules in Russian that are important for word formation and declension. The general concept of the spelling rules is as follows:

Certain vowels cannot be written after certain consonants in any position within a word (prefix, root, suffix, ending). These rules affect the declension of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and numerals, verb conjugations and the formation of various verbal forms.

The most important rules are listed here.

1.3.1 Spelling rule 1: a seven-letter (г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ч) spelling rule

After	Never write	Always write
г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ч	ы	и

For example, плащ**и́** (raincoats), врач**и́** (doctors), кни**г**и (books), карандаш**и́** (pencils), маш**и**на (car), жи**р**ный (fat).

1.3.2 Spelling rule 2: a five letter (ж, ш, щ, ч, ц) spelling rule

To follow this rule, it is necessary to know where the stress falls.

After	Write	Write
ж, ш, щ, ч, ц	о (if stressed)	е (if unstressed)

For example, хоро**ш**его (good), большо**г**о (big).

Exceptions: in some nouns of foreign origin and the words that are derived from them, the letter **о** is **unstressed**, for example, жо**к**е́й (jockey), жо**н**глёр (juggler), шо**к**ола́д (chocolate), шовини́зм (chauvinism), шо**с**се́ (highway), шо**ф**е́р (driver), Шотла́ндия (Scotland), шотла́ндский (Scottish) etc.

1.3.3 Spelling rule 3

After	Never write	Always write
г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ч, ц	я	а
г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ч, ц	ю	у

For example, крича́т (they cry, scream), ча́й (tea), чу́до (miracle), лежу́ (I lie).

Exceptions: парашю́т (parachute), жу́ри (judges)

Exceptions: in proper nouns of foreign origin, the letter ю is used after г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ч, ц, for example, Цю́рих (Zurich).

Level
1, 2

1.4 Hard and soft stems and endings

Russian makes a distinction between *hard* and *soft* stems and endings. This influences the *declension* and *formation* of the words, as the *stem* and *ending* of a word indicate whether the word follows the hard or soft ending pattern. If the dictionary form of a word has a hard ending, it follows the hard ending pattern when it declines. If the dictionary form of a word has a soft ending, it follows the soft ending pattern when it declines.

The dictionary form of a noun **has a hard ending if it ends with:**

- Vowels а, о, у, ы or э
- Any consonant except й, ч or щ

The dictionary form of a noun **has a soft ending if it ends with:**

- Vowels я, ё, ю, и or е
- Consonants й, ч or щ
- The soft sign ь

Examples of nouns with hard endings	Examples of nouns with soft endings
уго́л (corner), бра́т (brother), оте́ц (father), каранда́ш (pencil), до́м (house), хулига́н (hooligan)	автомобиль (car), уго́ль (coal)
сестра́ (sister)	земля́ (earth)

👁️ The consonants г, к, х, ж, ш, ч, щ and ц are affected by spelling rules (👉 1.3). The spelling rules do not change the hardness or softness of the stem or ending, but modify the pattern that the word follows when it is declined.

Adjectival endings contain two letters. The first letter of the ending indicates its hardness or softness. The dictionary form of an adjective **has a hard ending if it ends with -ый or -ой**. The dictionary form of an adjective **has a soft ending if it ends with -ий**. The verb conjugation and formation of the verbal forms are not affected by the hardness or softness of their stems and endings.

1.5 Use of lower-case (small) and upper-case (capital) letters

The use of small and capital letters does not always correspond in Russian and English. In Russian, capital letters are used:

- At the beginning of a sentence: У нас есть до́мик в деревне. (We have a small house in the country.)
- For proper names: Лондон (London), Смит (Smith). However, if names of inanimate objects, such as institutions, official titles, names of holidays etc. consist of several words, usually only the first word is written with a capital letter: Но́вый год (New Year), Большо́й теа́тр (the Bolshoi Theatre), Но́белевская пре́мия (the Nobel Prize).
- If a geographical name consists of a proper name and a word that indicates generic type, only the proper name is written with a capital letter: Москва́-река́ (river Moskva), Се́верный по́люс (North Pole).
- Governmental and international organisations are usually spelt with capital letters throughout: Сою́з Советских Социалисти́ческих Респу́блик (USSR), Соеди́ненные Шта́ты Аме́рики (USA).
- 'To indicate the formal 'you' (**Вы**) in all its forms in correspondence (letters and emails) and official documents if the addressee is known: Благодарю́ Вас. (I thank you.) However, "вы" in all its forms is used in the lower case in newspapers, literary works, in advertising, in correspondence to a hypothetical or unknown addressee or multiple addressees.

Unlike in English, the following words are written with small (lower-case) letters:

- Nouns and the adjective Russian (ру́сский) describing nationality or inhabitants of cities and towns: Он – аме́риканец. (He is American.) Они́ петербур́жцы. (They are from St Petersburg.) Note, in contemporary Russian there is only one adjective Russian (ру́сский) that indicates Russian nationality.
- Adjectives describing country of origin of people or objects: Мы пьём инди́йский чай. (We drink Indian tea.)
- Days of the week and months: Он прие́хал в суббо́ту. (He arrived on Saturday.) У них о́тпуск в сентя́бре. (They will take a holiday in September.)
- The pronoun я (I): Вче́ра я был до́ма. (Yesterday I stayed at home.)

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Insert the appropriate letter:

1. Мой кни́г... (и/ы) 2. В сле́дующ...м (о/е) году́ 3. Где ле́ж...т (а/я) игру́шк... (и/ы)? 4. Они́ испа́нц... (и/ы). 5. Говори́ть о Большо́...м (о/е) теа́тре.

2. Divide the nouns into two columns. Put the nouns with a hard ending into the first column and those with a soft ending into the second:

стул, сло́ва́рь, окно́, Австра́лия, собра́ние, чай, врач, пого́да, психоло́гия, пло́щадь

2 Nouns: animate and inanimate nouns and gender

Level
1, 2

Nouns define and name material objects, living things, events and abstract concepts, for example, дом (house), добро́ (kindness), выборы́ (elections), челове́к (person). Nouns fall into two categories:

- Proper nouns (names): Москва́ (Moscow), Мари́я (Maria).
- Common nouns such as type or class: го́род (city), фами́лия (last name/surname).

Russian nouns have the following characteristics. For detailed information about these characteristics, see the sections indicated:

- Nouns do not take an article (👉 2.1).
- Nouns can be animate or inanimate (👉 2.2).
- Nouns are divided into three genders: masculine, feminine and neuter (👉 2.3).
- Most nouns have two number forms – singular and plural. A small group of nouns can be used only in either the singular or plural but not both (👉 3.1–3.6).
- All nouns, apart from a few exceptions, are declinable. This means nouns change their ending according to their grammatical role in the sentence, such as subject, object, description of location, expression of time etc. Nouns can be presented in six grammatical forms called cases. The six-case system is one of the core elements of Russian grammar. For the meaning and function of the six-case system and the principles of case formation (declension) 👉 4. For individual cases 👉 5–10.

Level
1, 2

2.1 Absence of articles

Unlike English, Russian has neither definite (*the*) nor indefinite (*a*) articles. When translating from English into Russian the articles are omitted. For example:

This is **a** book. Это кни́га.
The/a book is on **the** table. Кни́га на столе́.

Level
1, 2

2.2 Animate and inanimate nouns

The grammatical division of nouns into animate and inanimate categories is different in Russian when compared with English. It is important to understand this division for two practical reasons:

- The concept of animate/inanimate nouns affects the form of the direct object of the sentence, which is expressed by the accusative case (👉 6.2.1). In the accusative case, masculine animate and inanimate singular nouns take different endings (👉 4.2.1.1); and all animate and inanimate nouns in the plural take different endings (👉 4.3.1).

- The choice between **кто?** (who?) and **что?** (what?) depends on whether the noun is animate or inanimate. It is necessary to use **кто?** (who?) when asking about animate nouns and **что?** (what?) when asking about inanimate nouns.

In Russian, the following nouns are animate:

- People, except some collective nouns such as *толпа* (crowd), *народ* (people), *молодёжь* (youth), *армия* (army).
- All types of animals, general or individual, except micro-organisms: *микроб* (microbe), *вирус* (virus), *бактерия* (bacterium), and some collective nouns that describe animals: *скот* (cattle), *ста́я* (flock).
- Fictitious creatures, if they can act as ‘a human’, such as *вампи́р* (vampire), *чудо́вище* (monster), *зо́мби* (zombie), *русáлка* (mermaid).

The remaining nouns are inanimate.

Level
3

👁️ Curiously, the nouns *покойник* and *мертвец* (dead person) are animate, but the noun *труп* (corpse) is inanimate. Some nouns that can ‘imitate’ human activity, such as *робот* (robot), *ку́кла* (puppet/doll), *ферзь* (‘queen’ in chess, or any other chess figure), change their endings as animate nouns. However, they respond to the question of an inanimate noun **что?** (what?). In the case of animals, if they are considered as ‘food’ and not living beings, they decline as inanimate nouns. Sometimes both forms, animate and inanimate, are acceptable. For example:

Из реце́пта (an extract from a recipe):

Кальма́ры (accusative, inanimate) отварить, нарезать.	Boil the squid and then slice them.
Кальма́ров (accusative, animate) ва́рят в солёной воде́.	Squid are cooked in salt water.

2.3 Gender

Gender is one of the key points of Russian grammar, as noun declension and formation of plural nouns are determined by the noun gender. There are some additional factors that contribute to the formation of various grammatical noun forms: softness or hardness of the noun stem and some spelling rules (👉 1.3–1.4).

In a sentence, all the words that describe a noun agree in gender with the noun that they qualify (👉 11, 14, 15, 16.2.3).

Level
1, 2

2.3.1 Natural (biological) and grammatical gender

Russian nouns are divided into three genders: masculine, feminine and neuter. The gender of all Russian nouns describing people and animals is determined by their *natural* (biological) gender. The majority of these nouns have male/female gender pairs: *брат* (brother) – *сестра́* (sister); *муж* (husband) – *жена́* (wife); *кот* (tomcat) – *кошка́* (female cat); *бык* (bull) – *корова́* (cow) etc. The gender of all other nouns is considered as *grammatical* gender as opposed to *natural* (biological) gender. It is determined purely by the noun ending in the dictionary form. For example, nouns ending in a consonant in their dictionary form fall into the

category of masculine grammatical gender. Nouns ending in the vowels **-а/-я** in their dictionary form fall into the category of feminine grammatical gender. As the examples above show, the *biological* and *grammatical* gender of the majority of nouns coincide. However, there are some exceptions.

- Note that the natural and grammatical genders of a noun do not always coincide. If this is the case, the **natural (biological) gender of the noun prevails**. In Russian, several nouns denoting a male person, including Russian shortened male names and diminutive male names, have feminine endings **-а/-я**. These nouns fall into the category of masculine nouns, and agree with the masculine form of the adjective (11), but follow the pattern of feminine nouns when declined (4.2.2).

Male persons	Shortened male names	Diminutive male names
па́па (daddy)	Пе́тя (Petya)	Пе́тенька (Peten'ka)
де́душка (granddad) де́дя (uncle)	Са́ша (Sasha)	Са́шенька (Sashen'ka)
юно́ша (youth)	Ми́ша (Misha)	Ми́шенька (Mishen'ka)
му́жчина (man)	Во́ва (Vova)	Во́вочка (Vovochka)

- Some indeclinable nouns of foreign origin ending with **-е, -о, -у** are masculine, if they are animate and describe animals (2.3.7).

Level
3

The majority of nouns denoting animals have two different forms, male and female. Curiously, two commonly used nouns have only a feminine form: *соба́ка* (dog) and *обезья́на* (monkey). The masculine word *пе́с* (dog) is used mainly in idioms and when talking about a pet in popular speech. All nouns denoting young animals are masculine: *котёнок* (kitten), *щено́к* (puppy) etc. If it is necessary to indicate the gender of an animal, two additional words, *саме́ц* (male) or *са́мка* (female) are used. In popular speech, Russians often use the words *ма́льчик* (boy) or *де́вочка* (girl) when indicating the gender of pets.

Level
2

2.3.2 Gender of nouns denoting occupation

- Most nouns denoting occupations have **only a masculine form**:

строитель	builder	профессор	professor
плотник	carpenter	врач	doctor

- A few nouns denoting occupations have **only a feminine form**:
домохозяйка housewife *няня/сиделка* nanny/nurse

In these cases, the same noun is used to describe both male and female persons who hold these occupations. An adjective used in this construction must agree with the noun that names an occupation:

Он **известный** профессор. He is a famous professor.
 Она **известный** профессор. She is a famous professor.

- Several nouns denoting occupations use suffixes to make the feminine noun of the pair. The most common suffixes are **-к-, -анк-, -ниц-/-иц-, -чиц-, -щиц-, -ис-/-есс-**.

Male	Female
студѐнт (student)	студѐнтка
учѝтель (teacher)	учѝтельница
царь (tsar)	царѝца
перевѝдчик (translator)	перевѝдчица
продавѝц (a shop assistant)	продавѝщица
актѝр (actor)	актрѝса
поѝт (poet)	поэтѝсса

Level
1, 2

2.3.3 Inanimate masculine nouns

In Russian, the following inanimate nouns are considered masculine:

- All nouns that end with a consonant, for example:
 - стол table
 - чай tea
 - дом house
- Some nouns ending in **-ь**. Note that in Russian there are many nouns ending in **-ь** that are feminine nouns. Therefore, the gender of nouns ending with **-ь** must be checked in a dictionary. Here are some frequently occurring masculine nouns ending with **-ь**:
 - Months ending in **-ь**
 - A number of occupations (☞ 2.3.2)
 - Other commonly occurring nouns ending with **-ь** include путь (way), портфѝль (briefcase), словарь (dictionary), день (day), огѝнь (fire), уѓоль (coal), календарь (calendar), рубль (rouble), дождь (rain), корабль (ship).

Level
1, 2

2.3.4 Inanimate feminine nouns

In Russian, the following inanimate nouns are considered feminine:

- All inanimate nouns that end with vowels **-а/-я**, if they are not masculine (☞ 2.3.1):
 - кнѝга book
 - дерѝвня village
 - Россѝя Russia
- Many nouns with the soft sign **-ь** (the gender of nouns ending with **-ь** must be checked in a dictionary):
 - плѝщадь square
 - ѝбласть district

Level
1, 2

2.3.5 Inanimate and animate neuter nouns

In Russian, the following inanimate nouns are considered neuter:

- All inanimate nouns that end with the vowels **-о, -е, -ѝ**:
 - окнѝ window
 - пѝле field
 - ѝбщежѝтие hall of residence
 - ружьѝ gun

- Some indeclinable nouns of foreign origin ending with **-и, -у, -ю** (УЗ 2.3.7)
- Nouns that end with **-мя**:

время	time	стрёмя	stirrup
сёмя	seed	имя	name
бремя	burden	знамя	banner
плёмя	tribe	тёмя	crown (of head)
в́мя	udder	пла́мя	flame

Most Russian neuter nouns are inanimate. A few animate nouns ending with **-о, -ое, or -ее** denote a type or class of living beings. These are also considered neuter: **живо́тное** (animal), **насеко́мое** (insect), **млекопита́ющее** (mammal), which have adjectival declensions **лицо́** (person), **существо́** (creature). The noun **дитя́** (baby) is also considered neuter.

Level
3

2.3.6 Nouns of common gender

In Russian, there are several nouns ending in **-а/-я** that can function as masculine or feminine nouns. Usually they indicate personal characteristics or status: **умница́** (clever person), **неря́ха** (untidy person). For example:

Како́й он умница́ !	What a clever man he is!
Кака́я она́ умница́ !	What a clever woman she is!
Он прекра́сный колле́га .	He is a great colleague.
Она́ прекра́сная колле́га .	She is a great colleague.

Level
2, 3

2.3.7 Gender of indeclinable nouns of foreign origin and abbreviations

The majority of indeclinable nouns of foreign origin, including names, are:

- Masculine, if they are animate and describe animals: **кенгуру́** (kangaroo), **шимпанзе́** (chimpanzee). If it is necessary to indicate the gender of the individual animal, the additional word for male or female is used in this context: **саме́ц кенгуру́** (male kangaroo), **са́мка шимпанзе́** (female chimpanzee).
- Neuter, if they are inanimate: **метро́** (metro), **такси́** (taxi), **интервью́** (interview), **меню́** (menu). There are some exceptions. For example, **ко́фе** (coffee), **пена́льти** (penalty) and **торна́до** (tornado) are masculine nouns and **сала́ми** (salami) and **авеню́** (avenue) are feminine.
- Masculine or feminine, if they are animate, describing people. Their grammatical gender coincides with the natural (biological) gender of the person, regardless of the noun ending: **ста́рая ле́ди** (old lady) – feminine, **вели́кий Ве́рди** (the great Verdi) – masculine.

However, indeclinable nouns of foreign origin that name a geographical location (including rivers, mountains, cities etc.), titles of published materials (books, newspapers etc.) and some names of insects, birds or animals follow different rules. Their gender coincides with the gender of the Russian noun that describes the relevant class/type: **большо́й го́род** Тбили́си (masculine, because of the masculine gender of the noun **го́род**) – the big **city** of Tbilisi; **газе́та** «Таймс» (feminine, because of the feminine gender of the noun **газе́та**) – *The Times newspaper*; **му́ха** цеце́ (feminine, because of the feminine gender of the noun **му́ха**) – tsetse fly.

The grammatical gender of abbreviations is determined by the grammatical gender of the principal noun in the abbreviation. For example, **АЭС** – **а́томная**

электростанция (nuclear power station) is a feminine noun because the principal noun of this abbreviation, **электростанция** (power station), is feminine.

Level
1

Упражнения

1. Identify the nouns as either A (animate) or I (inanimate):

кот, семья, человек, яблоко, лошадь, вирус, окно, милиционер, папа, народ, чудовище, робот.

2. Divide the nouns into three columns, masculine, feminine and neuter:

окно, упражнение, Москва, Урал, комната, чай, время, человек, ярмарка, план, дело, январь, площадь, животное.

Level
1, 2

Обобщающее упражнение

For adjectives, 📖 11.1.

3. Identify the gender of each noun. Form phrases by combining the adjectives provided and the nouns.

Модель: трамвай – m, новый трамвай.

A. молодой: юноша, девушка, маэстро, млекопитающее, водопроводчик.

B. большой: Онтарио (озеро), такси, ООН (Организация Объединённых Наций).

C. интересный: хобби, концерт, заявление.

3 Nouns: number

Level
1, 2, 3

As in English, Russian nouns have two numbers: singular and plural.

The plural noun is formed by adding the appropriate ending to the singular form.

The plural noun ending is determined by **the noun gender, hardness or softness of the noun's stem and the spelling rules.**

To form any plural noun, take the following steps:

- If a noun ends with **a consonant other than й**, remove nothing. Such a singular noun has no ending.
- If a noun ends with **a vowel, ь or й**, remove it.
- What is left after removing the ending is **the stem** of the word.
- Decide whether the stem is **hard** or **soft** (👉 1.4).
- Check whether any **spelling rules** apply (👉 1.3).
- Add the appropriate ending.
- Note that some nouns are irregular and follow a special pattern.

Level
1, 2

3.1 Plural masculine and feminine nouns

Masculine and feminine nouns follow the same pattern:

	Masculine nouns with hard stem	Feminine nouns with hard stem	Masculine nouns with soft stem	Feminine nouns with soft stem	Masculine and feminine nouns that are affected by spelling rules
Singular	Noun ends in a consonant that is not affected by the spelling rules	Noun ends in -а and the stem of a noun ends in a consonant that is not affected by the spelling rules	Noun ends in -ь or -й	Noun ends in -я or -ь	Stem of the noun ends in -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -ч, or -щ and therefore is affected by a spelling rule (👉 1.3)
	стол	газета	словарь	деревня	карандаш / книга
Plural	-ы	-ы	-и	-и	-и
	столь	газеты	словари	деревни	карандаши / книги

Level
1, 2


3.2 Plural neuter nouns

Neuter nouns follow a pattern which differs from that of masculine and feminine nouns:

	Neuter nouns with hard stem	Neuter nouns with soft stem	Neuter nouns with soft stem
Singular	Noun ends in -о	Noun ends in -е	Noun ends in -ё
	окно́	мо́ре/общежи́тие	ружьё́
Plural	-а	-я	-я
	о́кна	мо́ря/общежи́тия	ру́жья

Level
2

3.3 Irregular plural nouns

 In Russian, there are many irregular plural nouns. Note that the list below is not exhaustive, but it does include some frequently occurring nouns.

- Some masculine nouns have plural ending **-á/-я́** instead of **-ы/-и**. Note that the stress moves to the last syllable in the plural:

лес (forest) – лесá	бе́рег (shore) – берега́
дом (house) – дома́	го́род (city) – города́
глаз (eye) – глаза́	по́езд (train) – поезда́
век (century) – века́	о́стров (island) – острова́
но́мер (number/hotel room) – номерá	вече́р (evening) – вечера́
профе́ссор (professor) – профессорá	учи́тель (teacher) – учителя́
па́спорт (passport) – паспортá	а́дрес (address) – адреса́
ди́ректор (director) – директорá	го́лос (voice) – голоса́
- Some neuter nouns have plural ending **-и** instead of **-а/-я**:


у́хо (ear) – у́ши	ко́лено (knee) – ко́лени
ве́ко (eyelid) – ве́ки	я́блоко (apple) – я́блоки
плечо́ (shoulder) – плéчи	
- Some masculine and neuter plural nouns end in **-ья** instead of **-ы/-и/-á**:

друг (friend) – друзья́	перо́ (feather) – перья́
брат (brother) – братья́	крыло́ (wing) – крылья́
стул (chair) – стулья́	лист (leaf) – листья́
де́рево (tree) – дере́вья	сын (son) – сыновья́
- Some masculine nouns have a different word altogether as their plural form:

челове́к (person) – лю́ди (people)	ребёнок (child) – де́ти (children)
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Level
2, 3

3.4 Plural nouns that follow special patterns

 Some nouns follow special patterns in plural. Note that the list below is not exhaustive, but it does include some frequently occurring nouns:

- Nouns in **-ин** that indicate a status or nationality lose the suffix **-ин** and can have various endings, **-е**, **-ы** or **-а**:

крестья́нин (peasant) – крестья́не	англича́нин (Englishman) – англича́не
гражда́нин (citizen) – гражда́не	болга́рин (Bulgarian) – болга́ры

татарин (Tatar man) – татары

хозяин (owner/master) – хозяйва

грузин (Georgian) – грузины

господин (Mr, Sir) – господá

- Nouns in **-онок/-ок/-ёнок** that indicate young animals lose the suffixes **-онок/-ок/-ёнок** and replace them with the suffixes **-ат/-ят**. They usually have the ending **-а**:

волчонок (wolf cub) – волчата

котёнок (kitten) – котята

щенок (puppy) – щенята/щенки

поросёнок (piglet) – поросята

- The nouns **мать** (mother) and **дочь** (daughter) have the suffix **-ер-** added to the stem before the feminine soft ending **-и**:

мать (mother) – матери

дочь (daughter) – дочери

- Neuter nouns ending in **-мя** (☞ 2.3.5) have the suffix **-ен-** added to the stem before the ending:

время (time) – времена́

имя (first name) – имена́

Level
2, 3

3.5 Nouns that have only a plural form

- Several nouns have only a plural form. Some of them indicate a pair (for example, 'a pair of trousers'). Note that the list below is not exhaustive, but it does include some frequently occurring nouns:

брюки

trousers

джинсы

jeans

очки́

spectacles

ножницы

scissors

родители

parents

- Other nouns that are used only in the plural:

деньги

money

похороны

funeral

весы́

scales

часы́

clock/watch

выборы

elections

сутки

twenty-four

hours

сливки

cream

ро́ды

childbirth

каникулы

student vacation

макаро́ны

pasta

Level
2, 3

3.6 Nouns that only have a singular form

Some nouns have only a singular form. Among them are:

Collective nouns	Abstract nouns
молодёжь (youth)	любо́вь (love)
ме́бель (furniture)	внимáние (attention)
посúда (crookery)	вес (weight)
оде́жда (clothes)	длинá (length)
Substances/Liquids:	Food (vegetables, berries)
желе́зо (iron)	лук (onions)
нефть (oil)	карто́фель (potatoes)
водá (water)	мали́на (raspberries)

The list above is not exhaustive, but it does include some frequently occurring nouns.

Level
1, 2, 3

3.7 Stress change

The position of the stress changes in the following plural nouns:

- In **two-syllable** plural neuter nouns the stress moves to the opposite syllable from its original position in the singular form:

окно́ (window) – о́кна

мо́ре (sea) – моря́

де́ло (business/matter) – дела́

- In **one- or two-syllable** plural masculine nouns, the stress usually moves from the stem to the ending:

сад (garden) – сады́

язы́к (tongue/language) – языки́

вече́р (evening) – вечера́

Level
1, 2

Упражнение

1. Give the plural of the following singular nouns:

лоша́дь, сад, кни́га, сестра́, брат, маши́на, соба́ка, преподава́тель, мо́ре, окно́, каранда́ш, англича́нин, го́род, упражне́ние, край.

Level
2

2. Replace:

A. The singular nouns by plural.

B. The plural nouns by singular.

A. Моде́ль: го́род – города́

дом, глаз, у́хо, я́блоко, ребёнок, гражда́нин, щено́к, мать, вре́мя.

B. Моде́ль: де́ти – ребёнок

друзья́, англича́не, порося́та, паспорта́, доче́ри, плече́и, учителя́, дере́вья, имена́.

Level
1, 2

Обобщающее упражнение

3. Replace the English plural nouns by Russian equivalents in the correct form.

Познакомьтесь с господи́ном Смирно́вым

Госпо́дин Смирно́в показыва́ет фотогра́фию своёй семье́ и объясня́ет, кто есть кто:

1. Вот сидят мой (**parents**), (**uncles**, **aunts**) и (**twin nephews**).
2. У них (**kittens**).
3. Рядом с ними – мой (**nieces**).
4. Слева стоят мой (**female cousins**).
5. Рядом с ними – их (**husbands**).
6. Они́ оба (**English**) и у них одинаковые (**names**).
7. Справа – мой родные (**brothers**) и их (**wives**).
8. А сзади стоят мой (**colleagues**) и (**friends**).



4 Nouns: the concept of cases and the principle of noun declension

Level
1, 2

4.1 Concept of cases

Russian belongs to a group of languages that have a well-developed system of declension of nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals. Other languages that have well-developed systems of declension include Latin, Greek, Finnish, German, Dutch and other Slavic languages.

Unlike English, word order in a Russian sentence is flexible and does not determine a word's function in a sentence (👉 31.2). In Russian, the form of the word, in particular its ending, is essential for the definition of the word's role in the sentence. There may also be prepositions governing nouns in a sentence. Prepositions are also important for helping us to understand the functions words play in a sentence.

The choice of ending depends on what grammatical role the word plays in a sentence: whether it acts as subject or object, or describes location, destination, timing, ownership etc. The endings help us to understand the relationship between the words in the sentence. In contemporary Russian, each noun, pronoun, adjective and numeral can have six different grammatical forms called cases. (There is a small number of indeclinable nouns, mainly of foreign origin; 👉 2.3.7.) Each case has various possible endings. The names of the Russian cases are as follows:

- Nominative
- Accusative
- Genitive
- Dative
- Instrumental
- Prepositional

The verb in a Russian sentence agrees with the subject of the sentence and changes its endings to agree with the subject. The subject of the sentence is usually a noun, personal pronoun or noun phrase. For discussion of the verb and its forms, 👉 16–25.

The examples below show how different cases (forms) of the noun **Москва́** (Moscow) convey the different grammatical roles of the noun **Москва́** in the sentence:

Москва́ – столица России.	Moscow is the capital of Russia.	The nominative case indicates the subject of the sentence.
Я люблю Москву́ .	I love Moscow .	The accusative case indicates the direct object of the sentence.

Это музеи Москвы́ .	Here are the museums of Moscow .	The genitive case indicates the origin of the museums.
Мы гуляем по Москвѣ .	We are walking around Moscow .	The dative case here indicates the route of the journey.
Россияне гордятся Москвой .	Russians are proud of Moscow .	The verb 'to be proud of' requires the instrumental case without a preposition.
Они́ живу́т в Москвѣ .	They live in Moscow .	The prepositional case used with the preposition в (in) indicates location.

4.1.1 Nominative case

The nominative case is that given as the dictionary form of nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals (👉 5).

Level
1, 2

4.1.2 Five *oblique* cases

The five cases (other than the nominative) are called the *oblique* cases. The accusative, genitive, dative and instrumental cases can be used with or without prepositions. The prepositional case must be used with a preposition. Each of the *oblique* cases can have several grammatical roles in a sentence. The *oblique* cases can denote:

- The object of a sentence (direct and indirect)
- Location (where)
- The start and end points of a movement (going to and coming from)
- The route of a journey (moving around, across, along etc.) and the distance
- Time (when, frequency and duration)
- Ownership and relationship (whose?)
- Quantity (how many? how much?)
- Size, shape, weight, length, age, cost
- Instrument of an action (by what? with what?)



Additionally, each of the *oblique* cases can have:

- Several verbs that require the particular case
- Several prepositions that are used with the particular case

All five cases can also be used in many idioms.

👁 The summary table shows that some grammatical roles of the *oblique* cases are unique and are served only by one case. Other roles, in particular those of indirect object, time, destination and location, can be expressed by more than one case, even by all five *oblique* cases. To choose the right case it is necessary to understand the context and to consider the use of the appropriate prepositions and verbs that might govern a noun in this context. The grammatical roles of each case

are dealt with in the appropriate chapter. This summary table gives an overview of the function of all five *oblique* cases:


Case's role in a sentence	Oblique case				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
Direct object (clarifies transitive verbs,  21.1.1)	√	√			
Indirect object (indicates 'a recipient', to whom an action is directed)			√		
Prepositional constructions (with various prepositions)	√	√	√	√	√
Location		√		√	√
The start and end points of a movement	√	√	√		
Movement along a surface		√	√		
Time	√	√	√	√	√
Ownership and relationship		√			
Quantity		√	√		
Weight, length, cost	√	√			
Age			√		
Instrument				√	
Impersonal sentences ( 30)			√		
Uses after certain verbs	√	√	√	√	√
Uses as a part of an idiom	√	√	√	√	√


Level
1, 2

4.2 Declension of nouns

This section explains the principles of the declension of nouns. Declension of adjectives, pronouns and numerals is explained in the following sections:

Declension of adjectives,  11.

Declension of pronouns,  14.

Declension of numerals,  15.

This section aims to cover the principles of noun declension and to give an overview of the sets of endings for all six cases. Each section that covers a particular case also provides a summary table of the case endings.

To decline any noun, take the following steps:

- If the dictionary form of a noun ends with a **vowel**, **-й**, or **-ь**, remove it.
- If a noun ends with a **consonant other than й**, remove nothing. Such a noun has no ending in the nominative.
- What is left after removing the ending is the **stem** of the word.
- Decide whether the stem is **hard or soft** (☞ 1.4).
- Finally, check whether any **spelling rules** apply (☞ 1.3).
- Add the appropriate ending according to the pattern that the noun follows.

Singular nouns follow **three declensions** (patterns), explained in the appropriate subsection: ☞ 4.2.1, 4.2.2 or 4.2.3. Each declension is determined by the noun gender and the dictionary form. Ending variants are determined by the noun gender, whether the stem is hard or soft, and the spelling rules. Each declension has:

- A set of hard endings
- A set of soft endings
- Soft ending variants for nouns that end in **-ий/-ие/-ия**
- A set of endings that is affected by spelling rules
- Several exceptions

Level
1, 2

4.2.1 The first declension: singular nouns

The first declension covers:




- All masculine nouns that end with a **consonant** and **-ь**, except the noun **пу́ть** (road/way).
- All neuter nouns, except nouns ending in **-мя** and the noun **дети́я** (baby).

4.2.1.1 Sample patterns for masculine singular nouns

Case	Hard endings: nouns ending with hard consonants that are not affected by the spelling rules	Soft endings: nouns ending with -ь or -й	Soft ending variant: nouns ending with -ий	Endings affected by the spelling rules: nouns ending with -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, -ц
N	стол/брат	словáрь/герóй	санatóрий/ Мефóдий	ме́сяц /врач
A (an.)	бра́та (as genitive)	геро́я (as genitive)	Мефо́дия (as genitive)	врача́ (as genitive)
A (inan.)	стол (as nominative)	словáрь (as nominative)	санatóрий (as nominative)	ме́сяц (as nominative)
G	-а стола́/бра́та	-я словаря́/геро́я	-я санатория́/ Мефодия́	-а ме́сяца/врача́

Case	Hard endings: nouns ending with hard consonants that are not affected by the spelling rules	Soft endings: nouns ending with -ь or -й	Soft ending variant: nouns ending with -ий	Endings affected by the spelling rules: nouns ending with -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, -ц
D	-у столу́/брату́	-ю словарю́/герю́	-ю санато́рию/ Мефо́дию	-у ме́сяцу/врачу́
I	-ом столо́м/брато́м	-ем (if unstressed), -ём (if stressed): словаре́м/ гербе́м	-ем санато́рием/ Мефо́дием	-ом (if stressed), -ем (if unstressed after -ж, -ш, -щ, -ч, -ц): ме́сяце́м/ врачо́м
P	-е столé/братé	-е словаре́/геро́е	-и санато́рии/ Мефо́дии	-е ме́сяце/враче́

Comments on the table

-  Masculine nouns in the accusative case follow two different patterns, one for animate and another for inanimate nouns. This rule does not apply to feminine or neuter nouns.
-  Several masculine nouns in the prepositional case have additional endings -y/-ю. The ending -y is used only when describing location (👉 10.1.1).
-  Several masculine nouns have alternative endings -y/-ю in the genitive case when describing the 'partitive' meaning (👉 7.2.2.4).

4.2.1.2 Sample patterns for neuter singular nouns

Note that the set of neuter noun endings is identical to the set of masculine nouns. Neuter nouns are not affected by the spelling rules:

Case	Hard endings: nouns ending with -о	Soft endings: nouns ending with -е/-ё	Soft ending variant: nouns ending with -ие
N	окно́	мо́ре/ружьё́	упра́жнение
A	окно́ (as nominative)	мо́ре/ружьё́ (as nominative)	упра́жнение (as nominative)
G	-а окна́	-я мо́ря/ружья́	-я упра́жнения
D	-у окну́	-ю мо́рю/ружью́	-ю упра́жнению

Case	Hard endings: nouns ending with -о	Soft endings: nouns ending with -е/-ѐ	Soft ending variant: nouns ending with -ие
I	-ом окно́ м	-ем (if unstressed), -ѐм (if stressed): мо́рем/ружьѐ м	-ем упражне́ ни ем
P	-е окне́	-е мо́ре/ружьѐ	-и упражне́ ни

Level
1, 2

4.2.2 The second declension: singular nouns

The second declension covers:

- All feminine nouns that end in **-а/-я/-ия**
- All masculine nouns that end in **-а/-я**
- All nouns of common gender

Sample patterns for **feminine**, **masculine** and **common gender** nouns ending with **-а/-я**:

Case	Hard endings: nouns ending with -а ; the stem of the noun ends in a consonant that is not affected by the spelling rules	Soft endings: nouns ending with -я	Soft ending variant: nouns ending with -ия	Endings affected by the spelling rules: nouns whose stem ends with -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, -ц
N	-а па́па/ма́ма/сирота́	-я дре́вня/дядя́	-ия Росси́я	-а кни́га
A	-у па́пу/ма́му/сироту́	-ю дре́вню/ дядю́	-ю Росси́ю	-у кни́гу
G	-ы па́пы/ма́мы/сироты́	-и дре́вни/дяди́	-и Росси́и	и кни́ги -ы (only after -ц)
D	-е па́пе/ма́ме/сироте́	-е дре́вне/дяде́	-и Росси́и	-е кни́ге
I	-ой па́пой/ма́мой/ сирото́й	-ей дре́вней/ дяде́й	-ей Росси́ей	-ой кни́гой -ей (only if unstressed after -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ and -ц)
P	-е па́пе/ма́ме/сироте́	-е дре́вне/дяде́	-и Росси́и	-е кни́ге

Level
1, 2

4.2.3 The third declension: singular nouns

The third declension covers

- all feminine nouns that end with **-ь**

Sample patterns for **feminine nouns** ending in **-ь**. These nouns follow the pattern of nouns with soft endings:

Case	Soft endings: nouns ending with -ь
N	площадь/мать/дочь
A	площадь/мать/дочь (as nominative)
G	площади/матери/дочери
D	площади/матери/дочери
I	площадью/матерью/дочерью
P	площади/матери/дочери

Comments on the table

👁️ The two feminine nouns **мать** (mother) and **дочь** (daughter) have the suffix **-ер-** added to the stem throughout the declension.

👁️ Neuter nouns ending in **-мя** (👉 2.3.5), the neuter noun **дитя́** (baby) and the masculine noun **пу́ть** (road, way) follow their own patterns, which are similar to the third declension, except for the variations in the instrumental case:

Case	Neuter nouns ending in -мя	The noun пу́ть	The noun дитя́
N	время	пу́ть	дитя́
A	время (as nominative)	пу́ть (as nominative)	дитя́ (as nominative)
G	времени	пути́	дитя́ти
D	времени	пути́	дитя́ти
I	временем	путём	дитя́тей
P	времени	пути́	дитя́ти

Level
1, 2

4.3 Declension of plural nouns

For the formation of plural nouns, 👉 3.

4.3.1 Overview

All plural nouns follow the same pattern in the dative, instrumental and prepositional cases. In the genitive case, feminine and neuter nouns follow similar

patterns and masculine nouns follow a different pattern. Plural animate nouns in the accusative case follow the pattern of the genitive case. Plural inanimate nouns in the accusative case follow the pattern of the nominative case.

Sample patterns for **plural nouns** in all cases except the genitive:

Case	Hard endings	Soft endings	Endings affected by the spelling rules
	Masculine nouns ending with a hard consonant except -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -ч and -щ . Feminine and masculine nouns ending with -а . Neuter nouns ending with -о .	Masculine nouns ending with -й or -ь . Feminine nouns ending with -я or -ь . Neuter nouns ending with -е/-ё .	All nouns whose stem ends with -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -ч and -щ (mainly masculine and feminine nouns).
N	-ы/-а столы́/студёнты/па́пы ко́мнаты/племя́нницы/ слова́	-и/-я словари́/геро́и/ деревни́/тёти́/моря́	-и врачи́/кни́ги
A (an.)	студёнтов (as genitive) племя́нниц (as genitive) пап (as genitive)	геро́ев (as genitive) тётей́/тётъ (as genitive)	враче́й (as genitive)
A (inan.)	столы́ (as nominative) ко́мнаты (as nominative) сло́ва (as nominative)	словари́ (as nominative) деревни́ (as nominative) моря́ (as nominative)	кни́ги (as nominative)
D	-ам столáм/студёнтам/па́пам ко́мнатам/племя́нницам/ сло́вам	-ям словаря́м/геро́ям/ деревня́м/тётя́м/ моря́м	-ам врача́м/кни́гам
I	-ами столáми/студёнтами/ па́пами ко́мнатами/ племя́нницами/ сло́вами	-ями словаря́ми/ геро́ями/ деревня́ми/тётя́ми/ моря́ми	-ами врача́ми/кни́гами
P	-ах столáх/студёнтах/па́пах ко́мнатах/племя́нницах/ сло́вах	-ях словаря́х/геро́ях/ деревня́х/тётя́х/ моря́х	-ах врача́х/кни́гах

Level
2, 3

4.3.2 Formation of plural genitive nouns

4.3.2.1 Formation of masculine plural genitive nouns

Plural masculine nouns in the genitive case, except those that end with **-а/-я**, can have the following endings: **-ов/-ев/-ёв/-ей**. These variations are determined by the nouns' dictionary forms.

Soft endings		Special ending	Hard endings
Nouns ending in -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, or -ь	Nouns ending in -й/-ий	Nouns ending in -ц	Nouns ending in any consonants, except -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, -ц, -й or -ь
врач/карандаш/ словарь	герой/слой/ санаторий	месяц/молодец	стол/дом
-ей врач ^{ей} / карандаш ^{ей} / словар ^{ей}	-ев (if unstressed): геро ^{ев} / санатори ^{ев} -ёв (if stressed): сло ^{ёв}	-ев (if unstressed): месяц ^{ев} -ов (if stressed): молодц ^{ов}	-ов стол ^{ов} /дом ^{ов}

👁️ **There are some exceptions to the pattern above.** Note that the list below is not exhaustive, but it does include some frequently occurring nouns:

Nominative singular	Genitive plural
брат (brother)	бра ^{тьев}
стул (chair)	сту ^{льев}
лист (leaf)	ли ^{стьев}
друг (friend)	друз ^{ей}
сын (son)	сыно ^{вей}
ребёнок (child)	дет ^{ей}
человек (person)	чело ^{век} /люде ^й
раз (one time)	ра ^з
сапог (boot)	сапо ^г
солдат (soldier)	солда ^т
глаз (eye)	гла ^з


👁️ The noun **человек** (person) has two forms in the genitive plural (👁️ 7.2.2.1).


👁️ 4.3.2.2 Formation of genitive plural of masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-а/-я**, feminine nouns ending in **-ь** and neuter nouns ending in **-е/-ё**

All plural feminine and neuter nouns, masculine nouns that end with **-а/-я** and common gender nouns in the genitive case can have the following endings: ‘zero’ ending or **-ей**:

Hard endings	Soft endings		
Masculine nouns ending in -а . Feminine nouns ending in -а . Neuter nouns ending in -о . Common gender nouns ending in -а .	Feminine nouns ending in -ия and -ья (if unstressed). Neuter nouns ending in -ие and -ье .	Feminine nouns ending in -я .	Neuter nouns ending in -е/-ё . Feminine nouns ending in -ь and -ья (if stressed).
дэдушка/газэ́та/ слово́/колле́га	а́рмия/колду́нья (witch)/упражне́ние/ ожере́лье (necklace)	спа́льня/ ва́фля	по́ле/ружьё/ пло́щадь/се́мья
‘zero’ ending: де́душек/газе́т/слово́/ колле́г	‘zero’ endings but the end of the stem changes to -ий : а́рми́й/колду́ни́й/ упражне́ни́й/ ожере́ли́й	‘zero’ ending: спа́лен. Some nouns have -ь added to the ending: ва́фель	-ей : поле́й/ру́жей/ площаде́й/ се́мей

Comments on the table

- ‘Zero’ endings mean that nouns lose the ending of their dictionary form.
- If the noun stem ends in **two or more consonants**, so-called ‘fleeing’ vowels (**-о** or **-е**) are inserted between those consonants to ease pronunciation. For more information,  4.5.

 Although it is possible to advise on how to choose between the two ‘fleeing’ vowels, there are many exceptions that do not fit into the following rule:

- The letter **-о-** is usually inserted between a consonant (except **ж, ш, ч, й**) and the consonant **к**: оши́бка – оши́бок (mistakes), ма́рка – ма́рок (stamp). Exceptions: и́скра – и́скр (spark), бу́ква – букв (letters).
- The letter **-е-** is usually inserted between **ж, ш, ч** and the consonant **к**: ло́жка – ло́жек (spoons), де́вушка – де́вушек (girls), па́лочка – па́лочек (diminutive of stick).
- The letter **-е-** is usually inserted between the consonants **-сл-, -фл-, -сн-, -вн-**: число́ – чисе́л (numbers, dates), десна́ – де́сен (gums).
- The letter **-е-** usually replaces the letters **-ь-** and **-й-**: пи́сьмо – пи́сем; сва́дьба – сва́деб (wedding), ле́йка – ле́ек (watering-can). Exceptions: про́сьба – про́сьб (request), война́ – во́йн (war).
- The letter **-е-** is usually inserted between the two last consonants in many feminine nouns ending with **-я**: ви́шня – ви́шен (cherry), земля́ – земе́ль (land). Exception: ку́хня – ку́хонь (kitchen).
- The letter **-е-** is inserted in some nouns before or after the consonant **-р-**: сестра́ – сесте́р (sister), серга́ – сере́г (earrings), кочерга́/кочере́г (poker).

- The fleeting vowels are not usually inserted between two consonants, if the stem of a noun ends in the pairs formed from the consonants: **б, в, л, м, н, п, р, ж, з**: **ба́ржа** – **барж** (barge), **волна́** – **волн** (waves), **изба́** – **изб** (peasant hut) etc.

👁 The following nouns have genitive plural endings that differ from the common pattern:

- Masculine nouns **юноша** (youth) and **дядя** (uncle), feminine nouns **тётя** (aunt), **доля** (part, share), **свеча́** (candle) have the ending **-ей** instead of the ‘zero’ ending: **юношей**, **дядей**, **тётей**, **долей**, **свечей**. Note the alternative form of the noun **тётя-теть** is common.
- Feminine nouns ending with **-ня** do not usually have **ь** in the genitive plural except **ба́рышня** – **ба́рышень** (old-fashioned word for ‘young lady’), **деревня́** – **дереве́нь** (village), **ку́хня** – **ку́хонь** (kitchen), **я́блоня** – **я́блонь** (apple tree), **ня́ня** – **нянь** (nurse/child minder).
- Neuter nouns **низо́вье** (lower reaches of a river), **пла́тье** (dress), **у́стье** (mouth of a river) end in **-ев**: **низо́вьев**, **пла́тьев**, **у́стьев**.

👁 4.3.3 Genitive plural of nouns that have only a plural form

Nouns that have only a plural form follow various patterns. The list below is not exhaustive, but it does include some frequently occurring nouns.

- Some of them have the ‘zero’ ending:

Nominative plural	Genitive plural
брю́ки (trousers)	брюк
но́жницы (scissors)	но́жниц
де́ньги (money)	де́нег
су́тки (twenty-four hours)	су́ток
сли́вки (cream)	сли́вок
кани́кулы (student vacation)	кани́кул
по́хороны (funeral)	похоро́н
макаро́ны (pasta)	макаро́н

- Some have the hard ending **-ов**:

Nominative plural	Genitive plural
джи́нсы (jeans)	джи́нсов
очки́ (spectacles)	очко́в
веси́ (scales)	весо́в
часы́ (clock/watch)	часо́в
вы́боры (election/s)	вы́боров

- Some have the soft ending **-ей**:

Nominative plural	Genitive plural
дѣти	детѣй

Level
3

4.3.4 Nouns that follow special patterns in plurals

For the declension of regular plural nouns, see 4.3.1.

There are some plural nouns that follow special patterns:

- Nouns ending in **-ин** that indicate a status or nationality: татáрин
- Nouns ending in **-онок/-ѣнок** that indicate young animals: котѣнок

They have irregular plural nominative (see 3.4), accusative and genitive forms. For example:

Case	Plural nouns ending in -ин : татáрин – татáры, англичáнин – англичáне	Plural nouns ending in -онок/-ѣнок : щенóк – щеня́та	Noun хозяйн – хозяйева	Noun господн – господá
N	татáры/англичáне	щеня́та	хозяйева	господá
A	татáр/англичáн	щеня́т	хозяйев	госпóд
G	татáр/англичáн	щеня́т	хозяйев	госпóд
D	татáрам/англичáнам	щеня́там	хозяйевам	господáм
I	татáрами/ англичáнами	щеня́тами	хозяйевами	господáми
P	татáрах/англичáнах	щеня́тах	хозяйевах	господáх

Other nouns that follow special patterns include:

- The nouns **чѣрт** (devil), **сосѣд** (neighbour), **ýхо** (ear) and **óко** (old word for eye) have **hard singular endings** and follow the regular pattern of first declension masculine and neuter nouns with hard endings (see 4.2.1.1). However, they have **soft plural endings**.
- The nouns **чýдо** (miracle) and **нѣбо** (sky/heaven) have the additional suffix **-ес-** in the plural and keep it throughout the declension.
- The nouns **дѣти** (children) and **лю́ди** (people) are plural nouns and follow the soft plural pattern. Note the ending **-ьми** in the instrumental case of the nouns **дѣти** and **лю́ди**.

Case	Examples of plural nouns that follow special patterns						
N	чѣрти	сосѣди	ýши	óчи	чудесá	дѣти	лю́ди
A	чертѣй	сосѣдей	ýши	óчи	чудесá	детѣй	людѣй

Case	Examples of plural nouns that follow special patterns						
G	чертѐй	сосѐдей	ушѐй	очѐй	чудѐс	детѐй	людѐй
D	чертѝм	сосѐдѝм	ушѝм	очѝм	чудесѝм	дѐтям	людѝм
I	чертѝми	сосѐдѝми	ушѝми	очѝми	чудесѝми	дѐтьми	людѝми
P	чертѝх	сосѐдѝх	ушѝх	очѝх	чудесѝх	дѐтях	людѝх

Level
2, 3

4.4 Declension of proper names

4.4.1 Declension of Russian first names, patronymics and place names

Russian first names (full form), patronymics and place names are declined as other nouns. They follow the noun patterns described above: 📖 4.2.1–4.2.3 and 4.3.

Case	Masculine first name/place name	Feminine first name/place name	Masculine patronymic	Feminine patronymic
N	Борѝс/Андрѐй/ Нѝвгород	Варвѝра/Марѝя/ Москвѝа	Петрѝвич	Петрѝвна
A	Борѝса/Андрѐя (animate, as genitive) Нѝвгород (inanimate, as nominative)	-у/-ю Варвѝру/Марѝю/ Москвѝу	-а Петрѝвича	-у Петрѝвну
G	-а/-я Борѝса/Андрѐя/ Нѝвгорода	-ы/-и Варвѝры/Марѝи/ Москвѝы	-а Петрѝвича	-ы Петрѝвны
D	-у/-ю Борѝсу/Андрѐю/ Нѝвгороду	-е/-и Варвѝре/Марѝи/ Москвѝе	-у Петрѝвичу	-е Петрѝвне
I	-ом/-ем Борѝсом/Андрѐем/ Нѝвгородом	-ой/-ей Варвѝрой/ Марѝей/Москвѝой	-ем Петрѝвичем	-ой Петрѝвной
P	-е Борѝсе/Андрѐе/ Нѝвгороде	-е/-и Варвѝре/Марѝи/ Москвѝе	-е Петрѝвиче	-е Петрѝвне

4.4.2 Declension of Russian surnames

- Russian singular masculine surnames ending with **-ов/-ев/-ин/-ич** decline like first declension nouns. The form of the instrumental case is an exception to the rule and has an adjective ending.
- Russian singular masculine surnames ending with **-ский**, singular feminine surnames ending with **-ова/-ева/-ина/-ая/-ская** and the surnames in plural ending with **-вы/-ые/-ские** decline like adjectives. The feminine surname in the accusative case is an exception to the rule and has a noun ending.

Case	Example of masculine surname ending with -ов/-ев/-ин/-ич	Example of masculine surname ending with -ский	Example of feminine surname ending with -ова/-ева/-ина/-ая/-ская	Example of surnames in plural ending with -вы/-ые/-ские
N	Лéрмонтов	Достоéвский	Панóва	Некрасóвы
A	-а Лéрмонтова (animate, as genitive)	-ого Достоéвского	-у Панóву	-ых Некрасóвых
G	-а Лéрмонтова	-ого Достоéвского	-ой Панóвой	-ых Некрасóвых
D	-у Лéрмонтову	-ому Достоéвскому	-ой Панóвой	-ым Некрасóвым
I	-ым Лéрмонтовым	-им Достоéвским	-ой Панóвой	-ыми Некрасóвыми
P	-е Лéрмонтове	-ом Достоéвском	-ой Панóвой	-ых Некрасóвых

Russian surnames ending in **-ских** or **-о** do not decline: Пóльских, Шевчéнко, Петрéнко etc.

4.4.3 Declension of foreign proper names

Foreign names, place names and titles of books, films etc. are declined as in Russian, if they fit the Russian gender system. However, if they do not fit the pattern they do not decline.

For information on noun gender, including names,  2.3.

For example, the name Sherlock Holmes (**Шéрлок Хóлмс**) is declinable because both the first name and the surname fit the pattern of Russian male names: читáть о Шéрлоке Хóлмсе (to read about Sherlock Holmes). Contrast this with Jane Eyre (**Джéйн Эйр**): читáть о Джéйн Эйр (to read about Jane Eyre). This feminine name ends in a consonant and therefore does not fit the pattern of Russian female names.

4.4.4 Declension of abbreviations

For information on abbreviation gender,  2.3.7.

The grammatical gender of abbreviations is determined by the grammatical gender of the principal noun in the abbreviation. Usually only masculine gender abbreviations ending in a consonant decline. They follow the pattern of the first declension. For example:

- СПИД (AIDS) – болéть СПИДом (to have AIDS)
- Газпрóм (Gazprom – Russian energy company) – дохóды Газпрóма (Gazprom's profit)

4.5 The 'fleeting' vowels

Some words have so-called 'fleeting' vowels in their stems. The term 'fleeting' describes the phenomenon whereby a vowel is not present in all forms of the word. The fleeting vowels can appear in nouns, adjectives and verbs. However, they are especially common in nouns. For example:

- Some masculine nouns contain the fleeting vowels **-o** or **-e/-ë** in the final syllable. The fleeting vowel is dropped in all cases except the nominative, if the noun is animate. Inanimate nouns lose their fleeting vowels in the four cases other than the nominative and accusative (for the declension of masculine animate and inanimate nouns, § 4.2.1). This rule affects in particular the majority of masculine nouns ending with **-ец** and **-ок/-ёк** and several nouns ending with **-ор/-ёр**, **-ол/-ёл**, **-ей** and **-ь**.
- Some monosyllabic masculine nouns – **лёд** (ice), **рот** (mouth), **сон** (sleep), **день** (day), **пень** (stump) – have the fleeting vowels **-o/-e/-ë** in their root. The fleeting vowels **-o/-e/-ë** are dropped in all cases other than nominative and accusative. Note that the letter **ë** changes into the letter **ь** in the root of the noun **лёд** in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
- Some feminine nouns ending with **-ошь**, **-ожь** or **-овь** have the fleeting vowel **-o** in the final syllable. The vowel **-o** is dropped in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
- Some nouns have the fleeting vowels **-o** or **-e** only in the genitive plural case. If the stem of a noun ends in **two or more consonants**, **-o** or **-e** are inserted between them to ease pronunciation. For an explanation, § 4.3.2.
- The plurals of the nouns mentioned in these bullet points lose their fleeting vowels in all six cases, including the nominative case.

Examples of declension of nouns with fleeting vowels:

Case	Singular nouns		
	Examples of stems with a fleeting vowel in the final syllable	Examples of stems with a fleeting vowel in the noun root	Examples of some feminine nouns ending in -ошь , -ожь or -овь with the fleeting vowel -o
N	отéц/рыíнок	лëд/день/рот	ложь/цёрковь
A	отцá/рыíнок	лëд/день/рот	ложь/цёрковь
G	отцá/рыíнка	льда/дня/рта	лжи/цёркви
D	отцú/рыíнку	льду/дню/рту	лжи/цёркви
I	отцóm/рыíнком	льдом/днëм/ртом	лжью/цёрковью
P	отцé/рыíнке	льде/дне/рте	лжи/цёркви

Case	Plural nouns
N	отцы/рынки/льды/дни/рты/цёркви
A	отцов/рынки/льды/дни/рты/цёркви
G	отцов/рынков/льдов/дней/ртов/церквей
D	отцам/рынкам/льдам/дням/ртам/церквям
I	отцами/рынками/льдами/днями/ртами/церквями
P	отцах/рынках/льдах/днях/ртах/церквях

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

Identify the number and case of the nouns in bold: put the letters S or Pl to indicate the number and the letters N, A, G, D, I or P to indicate the case.



1. **Господин Смирнов** рассказывает о **Москве**.
2. **Господин Смирнов** родился и вырос в **Москве**. 3. Сегодня он с **удовольствием** показывает своим зарубежным **коллегам** **Москву**. 4. Начинают они **знакомство с городом с Кремля**. 5. **Господин Смирнов** рассказывает своим **гостям историю города**. 6. Он говорит, что **Кремль** был надёжной **крепостью** на **холмах**, недалеко от **реки и дорог**. 7. К 15-ому **веку** **Москва** стала **столицей** русского **государства**. 8. До 1917-ого **года** в **Москве** было 450 **церквей**. 9. К **счастью**, некоторые из этих **церквей** сохранились. 10. **Гости господина Смирнова** интересуются **историей и искусством** и хотят обойти все **музеи города**. 11. К **сожалению**, это невозможно! 12. Они согласились с **предложением** **господина Смирнова** пообедать в его любимом **кафе «Ёлки-Палки»** и за **обедом и кружкой пива** обсудить, какие **достопримечательности** они смогут посмотреть за один **день**.

Level
1, 2

5 Nouns: nominative case

For the concept of the six-case system and the principles of noun declension, 📖 4. The singular nominative case is the *dictionary form* of all declinable parts of speech: nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals. The nominative case is not governed by any prepositions. However, in a very few idioms, nouns in the nominative case can appear after the preposition **в** (to) or the particle **за** (such) (📖 5.3.1).

The nominative case can have singular and plural numbers. For information on the plural nominative case of nouns, 📖 3.

The nominative case has several roles in a sentence. It can indicate the core elements of the sentence, i.e. the subject or the predicate. The nominative case can also be used as part of some idioms, when making lists, giving names or addressing a person directly. This chapter discusses these roles.

Level
1, 2

5.1 Using the nominative case as the subject of a sentence

The main grammatical role of the nominative case is to indicate the subject of the sentence. The subject is one of the core elements of a sentence; it explains whom/ what the sentence is about. The subject answers the questions **кто?** (who?) or **что?** (what?). For example:

- **Господин Смирнов** (subject) **работает** (predicate). **Mr Smirnoff** is working.
- **Пенсионеры** (subject) **не работают** (predicate). **Retired people** do not work.
- **Цены** (subject) **были снижены** (predicate). **Prices** were reduced.
- **Стол** (subject) **свободен** (predicate). **The table** is free.

The second core element of a sentence is the predicate (verb or verbal phrase).

The predicate can describe what the subject does (the first two examples given above) or what is done to the subject by someone or something (the third and the fourth examples given above). In a sentence, the predicate must agree with the subject. Present and future tense verbs agree with the subject in person and number. Past tense verbs, short-form participles and short-form adjectives agree with the subject in number and gender (if in the singular form).

Level
1, 2

👁 5.1.1 Using the nominative case as subject in constructions describing possession, ownership, absence or presence

Some English and Russian sentence structures do not fully correspond. In particular, constructions that describe possession, ownership, absence or presence are different. Their word order and position of the subject of the sentence in the

nominative case differ. Translation into/from English can convey the meaning of the sentence, but not its structure:


- **Constructions that describe possession or ownership:** У Мари́и есть **маши́на** (subject in the nominative case). Maria has **a car**. У дете́й есть **игру́шки** (subject in the nominative case). The children have **some toys**. These Russian sentences are equivalents of the English constructions ‘one has got something/someone’. In a Russian sentence, the indicated ‘possession’ is the subject of the sentence and in the nominative case, and the ‘owner’ is in the genitive case (👉 7.3.1).
- **Constructions that describe the presence of someone or something:** В но́мере есть все **удоб́ства** (subject in the nominative case). All facilities are there in the hotel room. Изви́ните, где здесь **па́спортный контро́ль?** (subject in the nominative case). Excuse me, where is the passport control here? These Russian sentences are equivalent to the English constructions ‘there are/is someone/something/somewhere’. In Russian, the usual position of the subject in this type of sentence is at the end of the sentence. The special form of **есть** (to be) is the Russian equivalent of the English expression ‘there is/there are’.

Level
2

👁 5.1.2 Using the nominative case as the subject in sentences describing likes, dislikes or necessity

Russian sentences that describe likes, dislikes or necessity may cause some difficulties when translating from/into English. This type of Russian sentence is equivalent to the English constructions ‘one likes someone/something’ or ‘one needs someone/something’. However, English and Russian sentence structures do not correspond. In Russian, in this type of sentence, the described ‘person’ who ‘likes or needs’ something is not the grammatical subject of the sentence, but an indirect object in the dative case. The ‘subject’ of his/her ‘likes or needs’ is the grammatical subject of the sentence in the nominative case (👉 8.2.3 and 30). For example:


Russian sentence	English sentence	Literal translation into English
Мари́и (indirect object in the dative case) нра́вится фильм (subject in the nominative case).	Maria likes the film .	‘ The film pleases Maria/ appeals to Maria.’
Господи́ну Смирно́ву (indirect object in the dative case) не по́нра́вилось Ва́ше замеча́ние (subject in the nominative case).	Mr Smirnoff did not like your comment .	‘ Your comment displeased Mr Smirnoff / did not appeal to Mr Smirnoff.’
Ме́стному сове́ту (indirect object in the dative case) нужны́ де́ньги (subject in the nominative case).	The local council needs money .	‘ Money is needed to the local council.’
Господи́ну Смирно́ву (indirect object in the dative case) не ну́жен но́вый ноутбу́к (subject in the nominative case).	Mr Smirnoff does not need a new laptop .	‘ A new laptop is not needed to Mr Smirnoff.’

If the like or need takes the form of ‘*doing something*’, an impersonal sentence is used. An impersonal sentence has no grammatical subject in the nominative case. The core element of an impersonal sentence is a verb **нравиться/понравиться** (like) or an adverb **надо/нужно** (need), followed by an infinitive. The described ‘*person*’ who ‘*likes or needs to do something*’ is the indirect object of the sentence in the dative case (for impersonal sentences,  30). For example:

Russian sentence	English sentence	Literal translation into English
Студентам (indirect object in the dative case) нравится говорить по-ру́ски.	Students like speaking Russian.	‘Speaking Russian pleases students .’
Бизнесмену́ (indirect object in the dative case) на́до подписа́ть контра́кт.	The businessman needs to sign a contract.	‘It is necessary to the businessman to sign a contract.’

Level
2

5.1.3 Using the nominative as the subject of a sentence without a predicate

There is one fundamental difference between English and Russian sentences. A Russian sentence does not need to have both core elements of a sentence – subject and predicate. A sentence can have either just a subject or just a predicate to be considered and function as a proper sentence and not a fragment ( 31.1).

Sentences that contain just a subject are frequently used in poetry and lists. For example:

Ночь. У́лица. Фона́рь. Апте́ка.
Бессмы́сленный и тусклый **свет.**
(Блок)

Night, street, lamp, chemist,
A dull and meaningless light.

Шёпот, робкое дыха́нье,
Трели соловья́,
Серебро́ и колыха́нье
Сонного ручья́.
(Фет)

Whispers, timid breathing,
Trill of the nightingale,
Silver and swaying
Of the sleepy creek.

Телевизио́нная програ́мма переда́ч:
18.00 «**Челове́к и зако́н**»
19.30 «**Брат**», **фильм**
21.00 **Информацио́нная програ́мма** «**Вре́мя**»

TV schedule:
‘Man and the Law’
‘Brother’ (film)
News programme ‘Time’

Level
1, 2

5.2 Using the nominative case as the predicate

The nominative case can be used as an essential part of the compound predicate (verbal phrase) that contains the verbal link **быть** (to be) and a noun in the nominative case. The noun of the predicate usually denotes quality, status, type or class of the subject of the sentence. In Russian, **быть** (to be) is normally omitted in the present tense. In the present tense, both the subject and predicate, in this type

of sentence, are in the nominative case. If both the subject and part of the predicate are nouns, a dash takes the place of the omitted **быть** (to be):

Господин Смирнов (subject) – бизнесмен (predicate).	Mr Smirnoff is a businessman.
Его жена (subject) – красавица и умница (predicate).	His wife is beautiful and clever.
Глобальное потепление (subject) – научный факт (predicate).	Global warming is a scientific fact.
Это робот (predicate).	This is a robot.

For **быть** (to be), 📖 16.2.

In the past and future tenses, **быть** (to be) cannot be omitted as the verbal link of the compound predicate. **Быть** (to be) is present in sentences and agrees with the subject of the sentence in number and gender:

Его жена (subject) была (feminine singular form, past tense) красавица и умница (predicate).	His wife was a beautiful and clever person.
---	--

However, in the future tense, the noun that forms the essential part of the predicate is usually used in the instrumental case:

Господин Смирнов (subj.) будет бизнесменом (predic.; the noun is in the instrumental case).	Mr Smirnoff will be/will become a businessman.
--	---

Level
2, 3

In the past tense, the noun that forms the essential part of the predicate can be used either in the nominative case or instrumental case to convey two different ideas.

- The noun in the nominative case indicates the permanent nature of the described quality, status, type, group etc.
- The noun in the instrumental case indicates the temporary nature of the described quality, status, type, group etc.

Often the choice of the case depends on a speaker's interpretation. For example:

Лев Толстой был великий писатель (noun in nominative case emphasises permanent quality).	Leo Tolstoy was a great writer (meaning 'of all time').
Лев Толстой был великим писателем (noun in instrumental case emphasises temporary quality).	Leo Tolstoy was a great writer (meaning 'of his time').

For the instrumental case, 📖 9.2.4.

Level
1

5.3 Other uses of the nominative case

In a sentence, the nominative case can have roles other than indicating the subject or predicate of a sentence. The nominative case can be used:

- To indicate the proper name of people or animals in the constructions **Как Вас зовут?/Меня зовут...** (What is your name?/My name is...):

Меня зовут Мария .	My name is Maria .
Студента зовут Иван .	The student's name is/the student is called Ivan .
Котá зовут Барсик .	The cat's name is/the cat is called Barsik .

- To indicate the proper name of an inanimate object (city, street, shop) in the construction **Как называется ...?** (What is it called?):

Как называется этот **гóрод**?

What is this **city** called?

Гóрод называется **Нóвгород**.

The city is called **Novgorod**.

For more on these constructions, 📖 6.2.2.

Level
2, 3

- 👁 To indicate apposition to a name within a generic class:

Туристы слóшали óперу (generic class)	The tourists saw the opera
« Снегурочка » (apposition to a name of a generic class in the nominative case).	<i>The Snow-Maiden</i> .
Давай встретимся на стáнции метрó (generic class) « Лубя́нка » (apposition to a name of a generic class in the nominative case).	Let's meet at Lubianka station.
- However, if the noun that indicates the generic class is omitted, the apposition to this noun becomes an independent part of the sentence, and declines according to its grammatical role in the sentence:

Туристы слóшали « Снегурочку » (direct object in the accusative case).	The tourists listened to <i>The Snow-Maiden</i> .
Давай встретимся на « Лубя́нке » (location, prepositional case).	Let's meet at Lubianka .
- As a direct address to someone or something:

Дорога́я Ната́лия Серге́евна!	Dear Natalia Sergeevna!
Ой, Вань , смотри, какие клоуны! (Высоцкий)	Oh, Van' , look, what clowns!
О великий и могучий, ру́сский язы́к! (Тургéнев)	O great and powerful Russian tongue!
- In the comparative construction introduced by the conjunction **чем** (than) (📖 12.3):

Фру́кты и ово́щи полéзнее, чем торты́ и печенье́ (nominative).	Fruit and vegetables are healthier than cakes and cookies.
--	--

If **чем** (than) is omitted, the noun in the comparative construction is used in the genitive case (for more on these constructions, 📖 7.2.4):

Фру́кты и ово́щи полéзнее торто́в и печенья́ (genitive).	Fruit and vegetables are healthier than cakes and biscuits.
--	---
- In the generalising construction introduced by the conjunction **как** (such as):

Такие живóтные, как сибирский тигр и снежный леопáрд , находят́ся под угрóзой вымирáния.	Animals such as Siberian tigers and snow leopards are under the threat of extinction.
--	--
- The nominative case is used after the cardinal number **один/одна/одно́** (one) and after any compound cardinal numbers that end in **один/одна/одно́** (one): **один рубль** (one rouble), **двадцать один год** (twenty-one years), **тридцать одна́** книга́ (thirty-one books).

For numbers, including the gender of 'one', 📖 15.

For the use of cases after different cardinal numbers, 📖 7.2.2.3.

Level
3

5.3.1 Using the nominative case in idioms

Exclamations that are introduced by the particle **что** (what) and the particle **за** (such) are common. They are followed by a noun in the nominative case:

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Что за невезу́ха! | Such (what) a misfortune! |
| Что э́то за чепуха́! | Such (what) nonsense! |
| Что он за сотру́дник! | What kind of a worker is he! |

In the examples, 'за' is a part of the exclamation 'что за!' (such/what) and does not govern the following noun in the nominative case.

The plural form of an animate noun can appear in a form that is identical to the nominative case governed by the preposition **в** (to). These idioms convey the meaning of joining a group or class of people. The most frequently occurring idioms of this type are:

- **идти́/ходить в го́сти** (to visit someone): Вчера́ мы ходи́ли **в го́сти** к на́шим друзья́м. (Yesterday we visited our friends.)
- **баллотироваться в депута́ты** (standing as MPs): Пять кандида́тов баллотирова́ются **в депута́ты** Госду́мы от па́ртии «Зелёных». (Five candidates from the Green Party are standing as MPs.)

Level
1

Упражне́ния

1. Translate into Russian:

1. Vera is a teacher.
2. *Harry Potter* is a book.
3. The newspaper is on the table.
4. My father is called Sasha.
5. The airport is called Pulkovo.

Level
2, 3

2. Translate into Russian:

1. 21 windows, 101 flats.
2. Computers are more expensive than books.
3. Animals such as tigers and leopards are on the brink of extinction.
4. We saw the opera *Tosca*.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

3. Something has gone wrong with Mr Smirnoff's application form. Match the answers to the questions.



Господи́н Смирно́в заполня́ет анкету: пе́рвая часть – ли́чные да́нные

Вопро́сы	Отвёты
1. Фа́миллия, и́мя, о́тчество	1. Не жена́т
2. Год, числó и ме́сто рождéния	2. Кроссво́рды, лы́жи, волейбо́л
3. На́циона́льность	3. Смирно́в Алекса́ндр Дми́триевич
4. Обра́зова́ние, специа́льность	4. Ло́ндонская шко́ла эконо́мики, Магистрату́ра 2004–2005

Вопросы	Ответы
5. Учёная стéпень	5. 03.12.1982. Москва́
6. Стажиро́вки. Повыше́ние квалифика́ции	6. Моско́вский госуда́рственный университет: 1999–2004, специа́льность: инженер-программи́ст
7. Семéйное положéние	7. Англи́йский, неме́цкий
8. Зна́ние иностран́ных языко́в	8. Ру́сский
9. Интере́сы, увлече́ния	9. Не имею́

6 Nouns: accusative case

For the concept of the six-case system and the principles of noun declension, see 4.

The accusative case is one of the six Russian cases. In a sentence or phrase, the accusative case has several roles. It can be used with or without a preposition. This chapter provides a summary of noun endings in the accusative case and explains its grammatical roles.

Level 1, 2 6.1 Summary table of noun endings in the accusative case

Masculine animate nouns	Hard endings (ending in a consonant, except -й) and endings affected by a spelling rule (see 1.3)	-а Same as genitive (see 7.1)
	Soft endings	-я Same as genitive (see 7.1)
All masculine inanimate nouns	Same as nominative (no change)	
All neuter nouns	Same as nominative (no change)	
Feminine nouns	Hard endings: nouns ending in -а	-у
	Soft endings: nouns ending in -я	-ю
	Soft endings: nouns ending in -ь	Same as nominative (no change)
All plural nouns	Animate	Same as genitive (see 7.1)
	Inanimate	Same as nominative (no change)

Comments on the table

- The accusative case is the only case in which endings are affected by the concept of animate/inanimate nouns (see 2.2). Animate singular masculine nouns take the same endings as masculine singular nouns in the genitive case. Inanimate singular masculine nouns do not change. Singular neuter and feminine nouns are not affected by the concept of animate/inanimate nouns.

- All plural animate nouns take the same endings as the genitive case. All rules and ending variations applied to the genitive case are valid for the accusative case. Plural inanimate nouns are the same as the nominative plural.
- 👁️ Some nouns have so-called ‘fleeing’ vowels *-o/-e/-ë* in the final syllable in any case other than nominative singular: accusative singular: *отец – отца* (father) (📖 4.5).
- For hard and soft endings and the spelling rules, 📖 1.3–1.4.

6.2 Using the accusative case without a preposition

Level
1, 2

6.2.1 The main role of the accusative case without a preposition

In a sentence, a noun or pronoun in the accusative case indicates the direct object of the sentence. The direct object explains the aim of the action. For example:

- Саша **любит рок-музыку** (direct object). (Sasha **loves rock music**.) The direct object of the sentence, **рок-музыку** (rock-music), explains the aim of the action **любит** (loves): **Что любит Саша? What** does Sasha love?
- Дети **едят мороженое** (direct object). (The children **are eating ice cream**.) The direct object of the sentence, **мороженое** (ice cream), explains the aim of the action **едят** (are eating): **Что едят дети? What are** the children **eating?**

A direct object follows a verb that does not require a preposition to govern the following noun (a transitive verb) (📖 21). The question words used to describe a direct object are: **что?** (what?) for inanimate nouns, and **кого?** (whom?) for animate nouns.

👁️ Russian and English verbs do not fully correspond on either transitivity or the use of prepositions that govern nouns. For example:

играть в футбол
слушать радио

to **play football**
to **listen to** the radio

👁️ Russian sentence word order is flexible (📖 31.2). The subject of the sentence can appear at the end of the sentence and the object at the beginning of the sentence before the verb:

Профессор (subject) **пишет статью** (object). The professor writes an article.

Статью (object) **пишет профессор** (subject). It is a professor who is writing an article.

Level
1

6.2.2 Using the accusative case without a preposition when giving a proper name

The accusative case without a preposition is used to give a proper name to a person or animal:

Russian expression	English equivalent	Literal translation into English
Как зовут ребёнка?	What is the child's name?/What is the child called?	How (do they) call child?
Ребёнка зовут Маша.	The child's name is/the child is called Masha.	Child they call Masha.
Как зовут котá?	What is the cat's name?/ What is the cat called?	How (do they) call cat?
Котá зовут Бáрсик.	The cat's name is/the cat is called Barsik.	Cat they call Barsik.
Как Вас зовут? (For the personal pronoun forms in the six cases, 📖 14.)	What is your name?/ What are you called?	How (do they) call you?
Меня зовут Тánя.	My name is /I am called Tanya.	Me they call Tanya.

Level
2, 3

6.2.3 Using the accusative case without a preposition in time expressions

The accusative case without preposition is used to express time “how long”:

- To emphasise the length of an action after the pronoun **весь** (whole) and the adjective **цѐлый** (whole). For example:

Как дóлго/Скóлько врѐмени он болѐл?

Он болѐл всю недѐлю/цѐлую недѐлю.

Как дóлго/Скóлько врѐмени они

рабóтают?

Они рабóтают цѐлый

вѐчер.

For how long was he ill?

He was ill **for a whole week**.

For how long are they working?

They are working **for the whole evening**.

👁️ Note the absence of the preposition in these Russian time expressions.

👁️ If the adjective **цѐлый** (whole) is used in the plural, in an expression of time, both the adjective and the following noun are used in the instrumental case without a preposition: цѐлыми вечерáми (for entire evenings), цѐлыми днѝями (for entire days).

For forms of the pronoun **весь** (whole), 📖 14.6; for adjectives, 📖 11.

- To indicate the precise duration of an action: **Скóлько врѐмени?/Как дóлго?** (How long for). For example:

Как дóлго/Скóлько врѐмени они

изучáли граммáтику?

Они изучáли граммáтику год.

For how long did they study grammar?

They studied grammar **for a year**.

Как долго/Сколько времени
дети играли?
Дети играли два часа.

For how long did the
children play?
The children played for
two hours.

☞ Only imperfective verbs are used in this construction: 📖 20.4.2. For the concept of verbal aspect, 📖 20. For the use of these constructions in the future tense, 📖 20.5.1.

☞ If the expression of time contains a number, the number is in the accusative case. The noun that follows is used in the nominative singular, genitive singular or genitive plural, depending on the number (📖 7.2.2.3)

- To emphasise the frequency of an action after the adjective **каждый** (every). For example:

Как часто они смотрят телевизор? How often do they watch TV?
Они смотрят телевизор **каждый вечер**. They watch TV every evening.

The expression of time with **каждый** can be replaced with a noun in the dative plural with the preposition **по** (on) when describing days of the week and parts of the day:

каждый четверг	every Thursday
по четверга́м	on Thursdays
каждый ве́чер	every evening
по вечера́м	in the evenings

The noun **день** (day) is an exception to this rule and is not used in the plural dative case.

- With the word **назад** (ago)/**тому назад** (ago)

неделю тому назад /неделю назад	a week ago
год тому назад /год назад	a year ago

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Put the nouns in brackets into the appropriate form:

1. Вáня слýшает (óпера).
2. На ры́нке мо́жно купи́ть (ры́ба, хлеб, фрúкты).
3. Они да́вно не ви́дели (друг).
4. Ги́д встреча́ет (тури́сты).
5. Как зову́т (соба́ка)?

Level
2, 3

2. Answer the questions using the following time expressions: **неделю назад**, **весь ме́сяц**, **целое утро**, **каждый день**.

1. Как ча́сто ты гуля́ешь в па́рке?
2. Ко́гда Вы прилетели́ в Москвú?
3. Как до́лго Андре́й ждал повыше́ния зарпла́ты?
4. Как до́лго хиру́рги опери́ровали больно́го?

Level
2, 3

6.3 Using the accusative case with a preposition

The accusative case can be used with several prepositions. The table summarises the prepositions that can govern the accusative case and explains the context in which the accusative case with a preposition is used:

Context	Question asked	Preposition used	Examples
To indicate the end point of the movement (destination)	кудá? (where to?)	в (to/into) на (to/on to) под (under) за (beyond/behind)	👉 6.3.1
To indicate the route of a journey, a movement against something or through some obstruction	как (how?)	чэрез (across/over/through) о (against) сквозь (through)	👉 6.3.1
In time expressions	когда? (when?)	в (at/on) на (at/on/for) чэрез (within/in/every other day etc.) спустя́ (after) по (up to)	👉 6.2.3
In prepositional constructions after a number of verbs, in some idioms and phrases	various	на (for/at/on) за (for) про (about) в (in) чэрез (by some means)	👉 6.3.3

6.3.1 Using the accusative case with verbs of motion and other verbs describing movements

Level 1, 2 Nouns in all cases, except the nominative case, can describe various movements. However, the accusative case is used most frequently in this context. The accusative case, with the prepositions listed in the table above, indicate:

- Level 2, 3
- The end point of the movement: **в** (to), **на** (to), **под** (under), **за** (behind)
 - The route of a journey: **чэрез** (across, over, through)
 - Movement against something: **о** (against)
 - Movement through some obstructions: **сквозь** (through)

The fourteen *verbs of motion* are mainly used with the accusative case when describing the end point of the movement (destination) or the route of a journey:

идти́ в магази́н	to go to a shop
ехать на рабо́ту	to go to work
лезть под сто́л	to get under the table
заехать за уго́л	to go round the corner
перейти́ чэрез у́лицу	to cross the street

For the verbs of motion, 📖 24 and 25.



In Russian, there are many verbs, other than the fourteen verbs of motion, which describe movement. If the verb describes the end point of the movement, movement against something or movement through obstructions it requires the accusative

case. The most frequently occurring verbs that describe movement (other than verbs of motion) are listed below:

класть/положить (в, на, под, за)	to put
ста́вить/поставить (в, на, под, за)	to place (in a standing position)
вешать/повесить (в, на, под, за)	to hang
поднима́ться/подня́ться (в, на, под, за)	to go up
спуска́ться/спусти́ться (в, на, под, за)	to go down
броса́ть/бро́сить (в, на, под, за, через)	to throw
уда́рять(ся)/уда́рить(ся) (о)	to knock/to hit/to strike
пробира́ться/пробра́ться (че́рез, сквозь)	to force one's way
сади́ться/сесть (в, на, под, за)	to sit down/to take a train, bus (any means of transport)

Level
1, 2


6.3.1.1 Using the prepositions **в** and **на** with the accusative case when describing various movements

 The two Russian prepositions **в** and **на** are translated into English as the preposition *to*. The use of the prepositions **в** and **на** in the accusative case is based on the same principle as the use of the same prepositions in the prepositional case ( 10.2.1).

The vowel **о** is added to the preposition **в** to ease pronunciation if the preposition is attached to a noun starting with two or more consonants and one of these consonants is **в** or **ф**. For example, **во двор** (to a yard/quad). The vowel **о** is added to the preposition **в** to ease pronunciation if the preposition is attached to a noun starting with consonant **в** or **ф** followed by the soft sign. For example, **во Вьетнам** (to Vietnam), **во фьорд** (to a fiord/fjord).

The summary table explains the use of **в** and **на** with the accusative case when describing various movements:

The preposition в (to/into) is used to indicate:	The preposition на (on/on to) is used to indicate:
Moving inside: положить рúчку в сýмку (to put a pen into a bag), войти́ть в лифт (to get into a lift).	Moving on to a surface: положить рúчку на стол (to put a pen onto the table), спусти́ться на зéмлю (to lower oneself to the ground).
Moving into a building or into any enclosed space, such as woods, a park, a yard: войти́ть в зда́ние (to enter the building), э́хать в лес (to go to the woods), прийти́ в парк (to arrive at the park).	Moving to the outdoors, to places such as the street, square, avenue, junction, field, road, path, motorway: вы́йти на у́лицу (to go out on to the street), вы́ехать на шо́ссе (to come out on to the motorway).
Moving to places that denote geographical locations such as а континéнт (continent), го́род (city/town), дере́вня (village), райо́н (district): прилетéть в Москвú (to arrive in Moscow), приплы́ть в А́фрику (to arrive by ship in Africa).	Moving to places that are located on the shore/bank of the river, lake, sea, ocean: прийти́ на бе́рег (to arrive at the shore), прилетéть на Байка́л (to arrive by plane at Lake Baikal).

Joining a group: вступать в партию (to join the party), поступать в университет/ в школу (to start at university/to start at school).	Moving to places denoting the points of the compass: на север (to the north), на юг (to the south), на восток (to the east), на запад (to the west).
Also: подниматься в горы (to climb the mountains/to go up into the mountains), выходить в море (to go to the sea).	Attending an event: идти на оперу (to go to the opera), ехать на выставку (to go to an exhibition).
 Exceptions (moving to the following destinations): на вокзал (to the railway station), на станцию (to the station), на почту (to the post office), на фабрику/ на завод (to the factory), на стадион (to the stadium), на рынок (to the market), на дачу (to the country house), на/в кухню (to the kitchen), на этаж (to a floor), на флот (to the navy), на Урал (to the Urals), на Кавказ (to the Caucasus), на Родину (to the Motherland).	

 Use of the prepositions **в** and **на** follows the same principles in the accusative and prepositional cases:  10.2.1.

For prepositions used with verbs of motion,  25.7.

Level
1,2,3

Summarising text



Господин Смирнов едет в Самару	Mr Smirnoff is going to Samara
Господин Смирнов едет на конференцию в Самару . Он приехал на вокзал , перешёл через площадь и вышел на платформу . Был час пик, и он долго пробирался сквозь толпу на платформе. Наконец, он сел в поезд , вошёл в купе , положил ноутбук на столик , поставил чемодан под столик , и повесил пальто на крючок . В купе было очень тесно, и господин Смирнов ударился головой о полку . Ну, ничего! Могло быть и хуже! Наконец, он сел за столик и включил свой ноутбук. Поезд отправился в Самару , а господин Смирнов начал работать.	Mr Smirnoff is going to Samara for a conference . He arrived at the train station , crossed the square and went on to the platform . It was rush hour and for a long time he was forcing his way through the crowd on the platform. Finally, he got on the train , entered a compartment , put his laptop on the table , put his suitcase under the table , and hung his coat on a hook . The compartment was very cramped, and he knocked his head against a shelf . Never mind! It could have been worse! Finally, he sat down at the table and turned on his laptop. The train departed for Samara , and Mr Smirnoff began working.

Level
1, 2

6.3.2 Using the accusative case in time expressions

Nouns in all cases can be used in time expressions. The choice of the case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun. The accusative

case is used to indicate days of the week. The preposition **в** (on) governs nouns in the accusative case:

Дни недели (Days of the week)	Когда? (When?)
понедельник	в понедельник
вторник	во вторник
среда	в среду
четверг	в четверг
пятница	в пятницу
суббота	в субботу
воскресенье	в воскресенье

Level
2, 3

The accusative case is also used in the following time expressions:

- To point to a part of the day, or a particular day, month or year (with the preposition **в**):

в ту ночь	that night
в тот год	that year
в полночь	at midnight
в полдень	at midday
в новогоднюю ночь	on New Year's Eve
в то зимнее утро	on that winter morning
- To indicate a holiday or an event (with the preposition **на**):

на Новый год	at New Year
на Рождество	at Christmas
на мой день рождения	on my birthday
на праздник	on a public holiday
- After the prepositions **через** (within/in/every other day, week etc.) and **спустя** (after):

через неделю	in a week
через день	every other day
спустя год	after a year
- After the preposition **по** (up to):

с четверга по субботу	from Thursday up to Saturday
------------------------------	------------------------------
- To indicate the precise duration of an action: **За сколько времени?** (How long?). The shorter question, **За сколько?**, is used in popular speech. For example:

За сколько времени они построили дом?	How long did it take them to build the house?
Они построили дом за месяц .	It took them a month to build the house.
За сколько времени учёный написал доклад?	How long did it take the scientist to write the paper?
Учёный написал доклад за пять часов .	It took the scientist five hours to write the paper.

👁️ Note that usually perfective verbs are used in this time construction with the preposition **за** (for). For a detailed explanation, 📖 20.4.2; for verbal aspect, 📖 20.

☞ If the time expression contains a number in the accusative case, the noun that follows can be used in the nominative singular, genitive singular or genitive plural, depending on the number: Он рабóтал двáдцáть о́дин (accusative) час (nominative singular), мы рабóтали двá (accusative) часá (genitive singular), а о́ни рабóтали пя́ть (accusative) часóв (genitive plural). I worked for twenty-one hours, we worked for two hours, they worked for five hours. (☞ 7.2.2.3)

- ☞ To indicate the precise duration of an action in which the result of the action can be reversed: **На ско́лько вре́мени?** (How long for?). The shorter question, **На ско́лько?**, is used in popular speech. (For a detailed explanation, ☞ 20.4.2; for verbal aspect, ☞ 20.) For example:

На ско́лько вре́мени/На ско́лько
студéнты бра́ли кнй́ги в библиотéке?

Студéнты бра́ли кнй́ги в библиотéке
на ме́сяц.

На ско́лько вре́мени/На ско́лько о́ни
вы́шли из до́ма?
О́ни вы́шли из до́ма **на де́сять ми́ну́т.**

For how long did the
students borrow the books from
the library?

The students borrowed the
books from the library **for a**
month.

For how long did they leave the
house?

They left the house **for ten**
minutes.

☞ If the time expression contains a number in the accusative case, the noun that follows can be used in the genitive singular or genitive plural, depending on the number. (☞ 7.2.2.3).

Level
2, 3

6.3.3 Using the accusative case in prepositional constructions

The accusative case of a noun can be used with the following prepositions:

- **Про** (about): **про когó?** (about whom?), **про что?** (about what?). The preposition **про** is common in popular speech and poetry. The verbs **говóрить** (to speak), **мечтáть** (to dream), **дúмать** (to think), **петь** (to sing) etc. often take a noun in the accusative case with the preposition **про**. For example:

Спой нам, вéтер, **про**
дй́кие гóры,
Про глубóкие тáйны морéй,

Про птй́чьи разговóры,
Про сй́ние простóры
Про смéлых и большй́х людéй!
(Лебедев-Кумач)

Sing to us, wind, about the wild
mountains,
About the deep mysteries of
the seas,
About bird calls,
About the blue expanse
About brave and great people!

The preposition **о** (about) is equivalent to the preposition **про**. The preposition **о** is more commonly used than the preposition **про** and is used with a noun or pronoun in the prepositional case.

For the prepositional case and the use of the preposition **о**, ☞ 10 and 10.3.

- **За** (for): **за когó?** (to whom?) **за что?** (to what?). The preposition **за** is an essential part of many popular Russian toasts:

За здорóвье!
За мир и дрúжбу!
За хозяйку!
За гóстеприймных хозяйéв!

(To) your health!
(To) peace and friendship!
(To) the hostess!
(To) the hospitable hosts!

- **За** (on behalf of someone): делать что-то за когó? (to do something on behalf of whom?): Господин Смирнов согласился работать **за больного коллегу**. (Mr Smirnoff has agreed to work for his sick colleague.)
- **На** (for): на когó? (for whom?), на что? (for what?):

стóлик на двоих	a table for two
копíть дéньги на поéздку	to save up for a trip
на дóбрую пáмьять	for good memories
- **Через** (by some means):

Как они общáются? –	How do they communicate? –
Они общáются через переводчика .	They communicate through an interpreter .
Как он нашёл рáботу? – Он нашёл	How did he find a job? –
рáботу через интернёт .	He found a job through the Internet .

Level
2, 3

6.4 Verbs that require the accusative case with a preposition

In Russian, several verbs require the accusative case with a preposition.



As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the accusative case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. Also, note that the use of prepositions may differ in Russian and English. A (nonexhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the accusative case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same preposition and case: for example, играть в футбол (to play football), игра́ в футбол (the game of football), игра́я в футбол (playing football).

- Verbs followed by the preposition **в**. The majority of the verbs suggest involvement:

Verbs	Examples
вéрить/повéрить во что?/в когó? (to believe in what/in whom?)	вéрить в чúдо (to believe in a miracle)
влюблáться/влюбíться во что?/в когó? (to fall in love with what/with whom?)	влюбíться в пρίнца (to fall in love with a prince)
игрáть/сыгрáть во что? (в игру́) (to play what?) (a game)	игрáть в футбол (to play football), игрáть в бинго (to play bingo), игрáть в лотерéю (to play the Lottery), игрáть в кúклы (to play with dolls), игрáть в игру́шки (to play with toys)

Verbs	Examples
вступать/вступить во что? (в организацию) (to enter what?) (an organisation)	вступить в партию «Зелёная Россия» (to enter the Russian Green party)
поступать/поступить куда? (в образовательное учреждение) (to enter/to start what?) (an educational institution)	поступить в университет (to start at university), поступить в школу (to start at school)
одеваться/одеться/быть одётым во что? (to get dressed in what?)	одеться в джинсы и куртку (to get dressed in jeans and a jacket)
вмешиваться/вмешаться во что? (to get involved in what?)	вмешаться в разговор (to get involved in (interrupt) the conversation), вмешаться в драку (to get involved in a fight)
идти/ходить (and any verbal forms derived from the verbs of motion meaning 'moving to') куда? (to go where?) идти в гости к кому? (to visit whom?)	приехать в гости к родителям (to visit parents), идти в гости к другу (to visit a friend)

- Verbs followed by the preposition **на**. These verbs have various meanings:

Verbs	Examples
надёяться/понадёяться на кого? на что? (to hope for, to rely on whom? on what?)	надёяться на друга (to rely on a friend), надёяться на везение и удачу (to hope for luck and success)
рассчитывать на кого? на что? (to rely on whom? on what?)	рассчитывать на коллегу (to rely on a colleague)
жаловаться/пожаловаться на кого? на что? кому? куда? (to complain about what? about whom? to whom? where?)	пожаловаться на соседа в полицию (to complain to the police about a neighbour), пожаловаться на боль врачу (complain about the pain to a doctor)
влиять/повлиять на кого? на что? (to influence whom? what?)	влиять на сына (influence one's son), повлиять на решение (influence the decision)
смотреть/посмотреть на кого? на что? (to look at whom? at what?)	смотреть на картину (to look at the picture)
сердиться/рассердиться на кого? на что? (to be angry/to get cross at/with whom? at/with what?)	рассердиться на начальника (to get cross with the boss)

- Verbs followed by the preposition **за**. The majority of the verbs suggest the meaning of reaction to one's actions:

Verbs	Examples
благодарить/поблагодарить когó? за что? (to thank whom? for what?)	поблагодарить сотрудников за работу (to thank the staff for their work)
наказывать/наказать когó? за что? (to punish/to penalise whom? for what?)	наказать преступника за преступление (to punish the criminal for the crime)
хвалить/похвалить когó? за что? (to praise whom? for what?)	хвалить детей за хорошее поведение (to praise children for good behaviour)
наградать/наградить когó? чем? за что? (to decorate/to reward/to award whom? with what? for what?)	наградить солдата медалью за отвагу (to decorate a soldier with a medal for bravery), наградить сотрудников премией за отличную работу (to reward the staff with a bonus for a good performance at work)
ругать/отругать когó? за что? (to scold whom? for what?)	ругать подростка за прогулы (to scold a teenager for truancy)
критиковать/раскритиковать когó? за что? (to criticise whom? for what?)	критиковать правительство за реформу (to criticise the government for the reform)
выходить/выйти замуж за когó? (to get married to whom? [female only]); 👉 the comments below	выйти замуж за кинозвезду (to get married to a movie star)

Comments on the table

👁 In Russian, there are two expressions that mean *to get married*, one for a man and the other for a woman. The expression **выходить/выйти замуж за когó?** (followed by the accusative case) indicates that it is a woman who gets married. The expression **жениться на ком?** (followed by the prepositional case) indicates that it is a man who gets married.

Level

3

6.5 Using the accusative case with a preposition in idioms

There are several idioms where a noun in the accusative case with a preposition is its core element. For example:

Око за око, зуб за зуб.

An eye for an eye (tooth for a tooth).

Сыт по горло.

I am full up (stuffed to the gills).

Влюбиться по уши.

To fall in love (to be head over heels in love).

Как бог на душу положит.

To do something without a proper plan or preparation.

Жить душа в душу.

To live in perfect harmony.

Нашла коса на камень.

A clash of conflicting personalities.

Как в воду глядел.

To predict something with a high level of accuracy.

Как **об** стéнку горóх.

It is impossible to get through to someone.

Не **в** бровь, а **в** глаз.

Spot on.

Не удáрить пáлец **о** пáлец.

To do nothing.

Не удáрить лицóм **в** грязь.

Not to get bogged down.

Упражнёния

Level

1, 2

1. Insert **в** or **на** as appropriate.

1. Положите журналы ... стол, поставьте книги ... полку.
2. Моя сестра поступила ... университет.
3. Рабочие идут ... работу.
4. Летом семья едет ... деревню.
5. Пётр вошёл ... лифт.

Level

2, 3

2. Insert the appropriate preposition.

1. Кот спрятался ... угол.
2. Начальник поблагодарил сотрудников ... работу.
3. Мария надеется ... помощь друга.
4. Давайте выпьем ... хозяйку дома!
5. Свет не проходит ... стекло.
6. Почему курица перешла ... дорогу?
7. Предприниматель взял кредит в банке ... год.
8. Саша любит играть ... гольф.
9. Спортсмен вмешался ... драку.
10. ... полночь начинается фейерверк.

Level

2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

3. Put the words in brackets into the correct form.



Воскресный обед

1. Сегодня воскресенье. Господин Смирнов и его подруга Ирина решили приготовить вкусный (обед), но они не хотят тратить много времени на (приготовление) блюд. 2. Вот какие (рецепты) им удалось найти на сайте «Вкусно и быстро».

Борщ

3. Отварить (говядина) или (свинина), нарезать и отварить (картошка).
 4. Нарезать и потушить (свёкла, морковь, капуста, лук).
 5. Добавить томатную (паста), (соль, перец) по вкусу. Варить 10–15 минут.
 - Салат «Оливье»
 6. (Картофель), (морковь) и (яйца) отварить, нарезать.
 7. (Огурцы) и (лук) нарезать.
 8. Добавить зелёный (горошек).
 9. Соединить все (ингредиенты), добавить (майонез и соль) по вкусу.
- Приятного аппетита!

7 Nouns: genitive case

For the concept of the six-case system and the principles of noun declension, 📖 4. The genitive case is one of the six Russian cases. In a sentence or a phrase, the genitive has several roles. It can be used with or without a preposition. This chapter provides a summary of noun endings in the genitive case and explains its grammatical roles.

Level
1, 2

7.1 Summary tables of noun endings in the genitive case

7.1.1 Singular nouns

Masculine and neuter nouns	Hard stem (masculine nouns ending in a hard consonant, neuter nouns ending in -о) and stem ending with -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -щ, -ц	-а
	Soft stem (masculine nouns ending in -й and -ь , neuter nouns ending in -е/ё)	-я
Feminine nouns	Hard stem (feminine nouns ending in -а)	-ы
	Soft stem (feminine nouns ending in -я and -ь) and stem ending in -г, -к, -х, -ж, -ш, -щ, -ч	-и

Level
2, 3

7.1.2 Plural nouns

👁 The genitive case is the only case that has several different endings and several exceptions.

For information on the formation of plural nouns in the genitive case and the list of exceptions, 📖 4.3.2.

Masculine nouns	All nouns except those ending with -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, -й, -ь , and stressed ending after -ц	-ов
	Nouns ending with -ж, -ш, -ч, -щ, -ь	-ей
	Nouns ending with -й	-ев (if unstressed) -ёв (if stressed)
	Nouns with unstressed ending after -ц	-ев
Neuter nouns	Nouns ending with -о	'zero' ending
	Nouns ending with -ие	'zero' ending (stem changes to -ий)
	Nouns ending with -е/ё	-ей

Feminine nouns	All nouns except those ending with -ь	'zero' ending
	Nouns ending with -ь	-ей
	Nouns ending with -ия	'zero' ending (stem changes to -ий)

Comments on the tables

- Some nouns have so-called 'fleeting' vowels **-o/-e/-ë** in the final syllable of any case other than nominative singular: отец – отцá (father), пирожок – пирожкá (pie) etc. For the fleeting vowels, 📖 4.5.
- For hard and soft endings and the spelling rules, 📖 1.3 and 1.4.

7.2 Using the genitive case without a preposition

7.2.1 The main role of the genitive case without a preposition

In Russian, a noun in the genitive case is used after another noun in possessive constructions or constructions that describe the relationship between two objects. Genitive case constructions are the Russian equivalent of English possessive constructions such as *one's book* or *a cup of tea*. For example:

English possessive construction	Russian equivalent (the second noun in each phrase is in the genitive case)
a bowl of soup	тарелка супа
a glass of wine	бокал вина
a mug of milk	кружка молока
a group of students	группа студенто в
a student's room	комната студента
a neighbour's house	дом соседа

👁 The Russian genitive construction and the English possessive constructions do not fully correspond. Word order differs in Russian and English for possessive constructions. In Russian, the noun in the genitive case always **follows the noun that it describes**. Some Russian genitive constructions can be translated into English by using an adjective.

A noun in the genitive case can indicate different types of relationship between two nouns. A noun in the genitive case can indicate:

- Level 1, 2
- Ownership:** куртка Миши (Misha's jacket), машина отца (father's car), словарь школьника (pupil's dictionary) etc. The noun in the genitive case answers the question **чей?/чья?/чьё?/чьи?** (whose?).
 - Relationships between members of a group** (family relations, relations inside a group of people or animals):

сестра Виктора	Victor's sister
мать мальчика	the boy's mother
лидер группы	leader of the group

Level
2, 3

- | | |
|--|--|
| секретáрь пáртии
отря́ды примáтов | secretary of the party
groups of primates |
| ● Relationships between the whole and the part: | |
| облóжка кнй́ги
ру́чка двéри
экран компьýтера | the cover of the book/the book cover
the door's handle/the door handle
the computer's screen/the computer screen |
| мотóр машй́ны | the car's engine/the car engine |
| ● Content: | |
| буты́лка кока-кóлы
корóбка конфéт
букéт цветóв
стакáн воды́ | bottle of Coca-Cola
box of sweets
bouquet of flowers
glass of water |
| ● An animate or inanimate object whose quality or property is described: | |
| свет луны́
шум мóря
богáтства Сибй́ри
любóвь мáтери
поддéржка друзéй
наро́ды Росси́и
растй́тельность тýндры | moonlight
noise of the sea
richness of Siberia
mother's love
friends' support
peoples of Russia
flora of the tundra |
| ● Objectives of an action: | |
| изучéние рýсского языкá
закры́тие фестй́вля
проведéние репети́ции
уро́к мýзыки | study of the Russian language
closure of the festival
conducting of a rehearsal
music lesson |
| ● The agent of an action: | |
| выступлéние юморй́ста
аплодисмéнты зрй́телей
заявлéние правй́тельства | performance by a comedian
audience applause
announcement by the government |
| ● The person or event in whose honour a place or establishment was named: | |
| стан́ция «Плóщадь Револýции»
парк й́мени М. Гóрького | Revolution Square station
Gorky Park, literally 'the park
named after Gorky' |
| Москóвский госудáрственный
университéт
й́мени М. В. Ломонóсова
музей-кварти́ра Ф. М. Достое́вского
плóщадь Льва Толстóго | Moscow M. V. Lomonosov State
University,
literally 'the Moscow State University
named after Lomonosov'
the Dostoevsky Museum
Tolstoy Square |
- 👁 The dative case is used when describing monuments erected in someone's honour (👉 8.2.1).

Level
1, 2, 3

Other constructions can express the idea of 'possession'. These constructions can contain:

Level
1, 2

- A noun and a possessive pronoun that describes the noun: *моя́ собáка* (my dog), *его́ дом* (his house), *её́ друг* (her friend), *наш началь́ник* (our boss). For possessive pronouns, 👉 14.4.

- Level 3
- A noun and a possessive adjective that describes the noun. Possessive adjectives are formed by using the suffixes **-ин**, **-ов** or **-ий**. For example:

бабушка	бабушкин	бабушкины сказки	granny's tales
отец	отцов	отцов наказ	father's instruction
медведь	медвежий	медвежья берлога	the bear's den
тёнок	телячий	телячья кожа	calf skin

👁 The use of the suffix **-ий** is often complicated by internal changes in the stem and by the replacement of **и** by **ь** in all forms other than the masculine.

- Level 3
- 👁 Possessive adjectives are formed from only a limited number of nouns. The possessive adjectives can be replaced by nouns in the genitive case, if they are derived from the same root:

Possessive adjectives	Genitive case constructions	English
бабушкины сказки	сказки бабушки	granny's tales
отцов наказ	наказ отца	father's instruction
медвежья берлога	берлога медведя	the bear's den
лисий след	след лисы	the fox's footprint

Some possessive adjectives become proverbs and are used in figures of speech. For example:

ахиллэсова пятá	Achilles' heel
дамóклов меч	the Sword of Damocles
крокодиловы слёзы	crocodile tears
медвежий угол	godforsaken place
медвежья услугá	well-meant action having the opposite effect

Level 2, 3

7.2.2 Other roles of the genitive case without a preposition: the genitive of quantity

The genitive case can describe quantity, both precise and indefinite.

7.2.2.1 Using the genitive case to indicate an indefinite quantity

To indicate an indefinite quantity, a noun in the genitive case follows the words:

- **мнóго** (many/much/a lot)
- **немнóго** (not many/not much)
- **мáло** (few/little)
- **немáло** (quite a few/not a little/a considerable amount)
- **скóлько** (how much/how many)
- **стóлько** (so many/so much)
- **нэсколькó** (a few/several).

These words are usually described as indefinite numerals (👉 15).

Скóлько **люде́й** (genitive case), As many opinions as people.
 сто́лько и **мне́ний** (genitive case)

👁️ The question word **скóлько** is used in dative case constructions to indicate age: **Скóлько Вам лет? Скóлько лет ребёнку?** 👉 8.2.2.

If the noun in the genitive case is a countable noun, it is always used in the plural after the words listed above. For example:

- **мнóго** книг (a lot of books)
- **не́сколько** музéев (several museums)
- **сто́лько** пра́вил (so many rules).

If the noun in the genitive case is an uncountable abstract noun or a noun that does not have a plural number, it is always used in the singular after the words listed above. For example:

- **ма́ло** внима́ния (little attention)
- **сто́лько** интере́са (so much interest)
- **мнóго** любви́ (a lot of love)
- «**Мнóго** шу́ма из ничегó» (*Much Ado About Nothing*).

For nouns that do not have a plural form, 👉 3.6.

👁️ The nouns **челове́к** (person) and **лю́ди** (persons/people) are used after numbers in the following way:

- The noun **челове́к** in all its forms is a countable noun. It is used with any definite number, with the word **не́сколько** (several) and with the question word **скóлько** (how many): **Скóлько челове́к в ва́шей гру́ппе?** (How many people/persons are in your group?). **В на́шей гру́ппе пять челове́к.** (There are five people/persons in our group). The noun **челове́к** declines as a masculine noun ending in a hard consonant, except one irregular form of the genitive plural: **Здесь пять челове́к** (genitive plural of the word **челове́к**). (Here are five persons.)
- The noun **лю́ди** (persons/people) is uncountable. The regular genitive plural of the noun **лю́ди** is used after the question word **скóлько** (how much), **мнóго** (many/much/a lot), **немнóго** (quite many/not much), **ма́ло** (few/little), **немáло** (quite a few/not a little/a considerable amount):
 - **мнóго люде́й** (a lot of people).
 - The noun **лю́ди** (people) is also used in phrases if they contain collective numbers **дво́е** (a group of two), **трё́е** (a group of three), **че́тверо** (a group of four) etc.: **Нам меша́ли трё́е мо́лодых люде́й** (A group of three young people were bothering us).
 - However, in literature and poetry the use of definite numbers with the noun **лю́ди** is common: **Мысль о́ двух лю́дях**, спасённых им, бу́дет жить в сердца́х. (The thought of two people that were saved by him will live in our hearts. (Паусто́вский)).
- In popular speech, the noun **наро́д** (people/folk) in the singular genitive form often replaces the noun **лю́ди** (people).

мнóго наро́ду	a lot of people/a lot of folk
ма́ло наро́ду	a few people/a few folk
немнóго наро́ду	a few people/a few folk

- Note the special ending **-y** in **наро́ду**.

Level
2, 3

7.2.2.2 Using the genitive case after words indicating measurement

The singular genitive case is used to indicate a part of the whole object after words indicating measurement, such as *чѐтверть* (quarter), *половина* (half), *треть* (third part), *часть* (part), *кусóк* (a piece):

<i>чѐтверть бутылки</i>	quarter of a bottle
<i>половина яблока</i>	half an apple
<i>треть круга</i>	a third of the circle
<i>часть урока</i>	part of the lesson
<i>кусóк тóрта</i>	piece of cake

👁 The prefix **пол-** is the shorter form of **половина** and is common in popular speech: **полкило** (half a kilogram), **полметра** (half a metre), **полчасá** (half an hour), **полгода** (half a year), **поллитра** (half a litre), **пол-России** (half of Russia), **пол-яблока** (half an apple). If the noun starts with the consonant **л**, a capital letter or a vowel, the prefix **пол-** and the following noun are separated by a hyphen. The spelling of the word **поллитра** is an exception to the rule. The prefix **пол-** can be attached only to a noun in the singular genitive form.

Без поллитры не разберѐшься! (Without a pint I cannot tell) – a popular Russian proverb/joke that means ‘a person cannot understand something really difficult unless they consume half a litre of vodka’.

Level
2, 3

👁 7.2.2.3 Using the genitive case after numbers

For numerals, their types and declension and gender of the numbers ‘one’ and ‘two’, 🗨 15; 15.3.1, for the nominative case, 🗨 5.

The genitive singular is used after the cardinal numbers ‘two’, ‘three’ and ‘four’, after any compound cardinal numbers that ends in any of these numbers and after the word *оба/обе* (both). For example:

два бутербрóда	two sandwiches
три лѐкции	three lectures
чѐтыре улицы	four streets
оба глáза	both eyes
двáдцать две недѐли	twenty-two weeks
сто три рублѝ	one hundred and three roubles
шѐстьдѐсят чѐтыре гóда	sixty-four years
обе рукѝ	both hands

The genitive plural is used after all the cardinal numbers except ‘one’, ‘two’, ‘three’ and ‘four’ or compound numbers that end in ‘one’, ‘two’, ‘three’ or ‘four’.

The genitive plural is also used after the collective numbers *двóе* (‘group of’ two), *трóе* (‘group of’ three), *чѐтверо* (‘group of’ four), *пѝтеро* (‘group of’ five). For example:

пѝть домóв	five houses
двенáдцать яйц	twelve eggs
трѝдцать яблoк	thirty apples
двóе брáтьев	two (‘group of’ two) brothers
сто лет	a hundred years
ты́сяча рублѝ	a thousand roubles
двáдцать пѝть дóлларoв	twenty-five dollars
сѐмерo котѝт	seven (‘group of’ seven) kittens

The nominative case is used after **один/одна/одно** (one) and after any compound numbers that end in **один/одна/одно** (one): **один рубль** (one rouble), **двадцать один год** (twenty-one years), **тридцать одна книга** (thirty-one books).

Level
3

7.2.2.4 Other roles of the genitive case without a preposition: the 'partitive' genitive

The singular genitive case can indicate part of a whole substance or liquid. The Russian constructions, where the genitive case is used to describe part of the whole, are equivalent to English constructions with the words *some, more of something, a bit of something*. For example:

Хотите воды ?	Would you like some water ?
Налейте вина , пожалуйста.	Pour some wine , please.
Можно ещё чая ?	May I have more tea ?
Отрежьте пирогá , пожалуйста.	Could you please cut me some cake ?
Они купили хлеба и сыра .	They bought some bread and cheese .

Conversely, the accusative case is used to describe the whole substance or liquid. For example:

Мы любим шоколад .	We love chocolate.
Передайте соль , пожалуйста.	Please pass me the salt.

Some masculine nouns that denote a substance or liquid have alternative genitive singular endings **-у/-ю** instead of the regular endings **-а/-я** when they are used to indicate part of the whole. They are usually used after the following verbs:

наливátь/налítь	to pour	покупáть/купítь	to buy
рэзátь/нарэзátь	to cut/to slice	давáть/дátь	to give
пítь/выпítь	to drink	хотéть/захотéть	to want
есть/съесть	to eat	брáть/взять	to take

Some common nouns that are used to convey the 'partitive' meaning with **-у/-ю** are:


сáхар – сáхару	sugar	суп – сýпу	soup
мёд – мёду	honey	чай – чáю	tea
ко́ньяк – ко́ньякú	cognac	сыр – сы́ру	cheese
шоко́лад – шоко́ладу	chocolate	виногра́д – виногра́ду	grapes
лук – лу́ку	onions	пе́рец – пе́рцу	pepper
творо́г – творо́гу	cottage cheese	кипято́к – кипятку́	boiled water
рис – ри́су	rice	ше́лк – ше́лку	silk
бензи́н – бензи́ну	petrol	кероси́н – кероси́ну	paraffin

The masculine nouns listed above have the same alternative endings **-у/-ю**:

- When indicating precise quantity rather than content, such as буты́лка (bottle), коро́бка (box), па́чка (package), ба́нка (jar), ми́ска (bowl), тарéлка (plate), кру́жка (mug), стакáн (glass), ча́шка (cup) of something: коро́бка шоко́ладу, па́чка творо́гу, па́чка ри́су, кру́жка кипятку́. For the use of the genitive case to indicate content, ➡ 7.2.1.
- In some idioms, usually with a preposition.

Level
2, 3

7.2.3 Other roles of the genitive case without a preposition: the genitive in time expressions

For the ordinal numerals, their declension and the principle of agreement with the nouns that they qualify,  15, 15.3.1.

7.2.3.1 The date



The genitive case without a preposition is used to indicate the precise date:

Какое сегодня число?	What is the date today?
Сегодня седьмое января .	Today is the 7th of January.
Когда русские отмечают Рождество?	When do Russians celebrate Christmas?
Русские отмечают Рождество седьмого января .	Russians celebrate Christmas on the 7th of January.
Какого числа Вы едете в Москву?	On what date are you going to Moscow?
Я еду в Москву пятого июля .	I am going to Moscow on the 5th of July.

Comments on the examples above:

- To answer the question **Какое сегодня число?** (What is the date today?) in the present, past or future the following construction is used. There is no preposition. The date itself is expressed by the ordinal number in the neuter singular form in the nominative case. The ordinal numbers function as adjectives and, therefore, agree in gender, number and case with the noun that they qualify. When an ordinal number indicates the date, it agrees in gender, number and case with the singular neuter noun **число** (date) in the nominative case. The following nouns that indicate the month and the year are in the singular genitive case.

Какое сегодня число?	What is the date today?
Сегодня второе сентября две тысячи одиннадцатого года .	Today is the 2nd of September 2011.
Какое вчера было число?	What was the date yesterday?
Вчера было первое сентября две тысячи одиннадцатого года .	Yesterday was the 1st of September 2011.
Какое завтра будет число?	What will the date be tomorrow?
Завтра будет третье сентября две тысячи одиннадцатого года .	Tomorrow will be the 3rd of September 2011.

- To indicate the date of an event and to answer the question **Когда?/Какого числа?** (When?/On what date?) a different construction is used. There is no preposition and the ordinal number that denotes the date and the following month and year are all in the genitive singular.
-  The month and year are used in the genitive singular only if they form part of the date. If the month or year is used independently, it is in the prepositional case:  10.3.1.

7.2.3.2 Clock time

In popular speech, the genitive case without a preposition is used when telling the time. The following rule applies when indicating ‘minutes past the hour’ in the first half of the clock:

дéсять минúт пёрвого	ten past twelve
двáдцать пять минúт девятого	twenty-five past eight
чéтверть двенáдцатого	quarter past eleven
половина вторóго	half past one

👁 The first two examples above have the following structure: the cardinal numeral in the nominative case is followed by the noun **минúта** in the genitive plural. The number indicates the minutes. The ordinal numeral in the genitive singular masculine concludes the phrase. Literally, the Russian phrase means ‘how many minutes from out of the following hour have passed’. The ordinal number qualifies the noun **час** (hour) and agrees with it in gender, number and case. The last two examples show that when the words **чéтверть** (quarter) and **половина** (half) are used in a time expression, they are also followed by the ordinal number in the genitive singular masculine form.

For the declension of cardinal and ordinal numbers, 📖 15.1.3, 15.2.2; for more on time expressions, and for the exact hours, 📖 15.4.

Level
2, 3

7.2.4 Other roles of the genitive case without a preposition: genitive of comparison

The genitive case without a preposition is used in comparative constructions when comparing quality, quantity or measurement of two objects. A comparative adjective or adverb describes how two objects differ. The noun or personal pronoun with which the subject of the sentence is compared is used in the genitive case. The conjunction **чем (than)** is omitted in this construction. For example:

Виктор молóже Петра́ (genitive).	Victor is younger than Peter.
Тигр сильнéе кóшки (genitive).	A tiger is stronger than a cat.
Машина́ дорóже велосипéда (genitive).	A car is more expensive than a bicycle.
Тест бúдет лéгче экзáмена (genitive).	The test will be easier than the exam.
Ябло́ки бы́ли дешéвле апельси́нов (genitive).	The apples were cheaper than the oranges.

Быть (to be) is omitted in the present tense, but is used in the past and future tenses.

For comparative adjectives and adverbs, 📖 12 and 13 respectively; for the use of **быть** (to be), 📖 16.2.

👁 Note, if the conjunction **чем (than)** is not omitted from the comparative construction, the noun or personal pronoun with which the subject of the sentence is compared is used in the nominative case (📖 5.3):

Виктор молóже, чем Пётр .	Victor is younger than Peter.
Тигр сильнéе, чем кóшка .	A tiger is stronger than a cat.

Машина дороже, чем велосипед .	A car is more expensive than a bicycle.
Тест будет легче, чем экзамен .	The test will be easier than the exam.
Яблоки были дешевле, чем апельсины .	The apples were cheaper than the oranges.

Level
1, 2, 3

7.2.5 Other roles of the genitive case without a preposition: the genitive in negative constructions

Level
1, 2

The genitive case is used in constructions that describe the absence of someone or something in the present, past or future:

Level
2, 3

В городе нет музеев .	There are no museums in the city.
Директора не было на работе.	The director was not at work.
В меню не будет рыбы .	There will be no fish on the menu.

Level
1, 2, 3

These Russian sentences are equivalent to the English constructions ‘*there are no/there is no someone/something somewhere*’. Note that these negative Russian constructions have no subject and are classified as *impersonal sentences*. For impersonal sentences and the negative construction with the genitive case, see 30 and 30.5 respectively.

In a Russian negative construction, the noun that indicates the absent object is in the genitive case. It can be used in both the singular and plural.

Negative genitive constructions have no subject; therefore, the predicate of the sentence (the verb) does not have a subject with which it can agree. Unchangeable verbal forms therefore express the predicate of the sentence. They are the negative word **нет** (there is no/there are no) in the present tense and the negative forms of the verb **быть** (to be) in the past and the future tenses. In the past tense, the singular neuter form **не было** (there was no/there were no) is used. In the future tense the 3rd person singular form **не будет** (there will be no) is used. Note that **нет**, **не было** and **не будет** are the Russian equivalents of the English expressions *there is no/there was no/there will be no*.

For the affirmative construction that describes the presence of someone or something, see 5.1.1.

👁 The construction that describes an object’s absence is similar to the negative possessive construction: see 7.3.1.2.

Level
2, 3

7.2.6 Verbs that require the genitive case without a preposition

Several verbs require the genitive case without a preposition.

👁 As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the genitive case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. A (non-exhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the genitive case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects

are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same case: for example

желать счастья	to wish happiness
желание счастья	desire for happiness
желая счастья	wishing happiness
пожелавший счастья	who wished happiness
желающий счастья	who wishes happiness

Verbs	Examples
желать/пожелать кому? чего? (to wish to whom? what?)	желать родителям здоровья и счастья (to wish one's parents health and happiness)
достигать/достигнуть/достичь чего? (to achieve what?)	достигнуть цели (to achieve the goal)
добиваться/добиться чего? (to strive for/to achieve what?)	добиться успеха (to achieve success)
заслуживать/заслужить чего? (to deserve what?)	заслужить награды (to deserve the reward/award/prize)
жаждать чего? (to crave what?)	жаждать славы (to crave glory)
бояться чего? (to be afraid of what?)	бояться высоты (to be afraid of heights)
пугаться/испугаться чего? (to be frightened of what?)	испугаться темноты (to be frightened of the dark)
избегать/избежать кого? чего? (to avoid whom? what?)	избегать конкурента (to avoid the competitor), избегать встречи (to avoid the meeting)

Level
2, 3

7.2.7 The genitive case without a preposition in some greetings and idioms

For the declension of adjectives, see 11.

In some common greetings, the verb **желать** (to wish), which requires the genitive case, is omitted. The phrases with the omitted verb **желать** become idioms:

Счастливого пути!	Have a nice trip!
Спокойной ночи!	Good night!
Приятного аппетита!	Bon appetit!
Счастливого Нового года!	Happy New Year!
Мягкой посадки!	Have a safe landing!
Удачи!	Good luck!
Успеха/успехов!	(I/we etc. wish you) success!

When writing holiday greetings the verb **желать** (to wish) is **not** omitted and takes an object in the genitive case. The person to whom the greetings are addressed is in the dative case: 📖 8.

Russians usually start their holiday greetings using the verb **поздравлять** (to congratulate) followed by the preposition **с** (with) and the noun in the instrumental case: 📖 9.3. The traditional wishes introduced by the verb **желать** (to wish) complete the greetings. For example:

Дорогая Мария!	Dear Maria,
Поздравляю тебя с Рождеством!	I wish you a Merry Christmas!
Желаю тебе счастья, здоровья	I wish you happiness, health
и радости.	and joy.
Вероника	Veronica

Examples of card greetings:

И от души тебе желаем	From the bottom of the heart we wish you
Здоровья, счастья, долгих лет ...	Health, happiness, long life.
Желаем счастья и здоровья,	We wish you happiness and health,
Желаем бодрости и сил ...	We wish you to be in good spirits and have strength.

Note that the adjectives and the pronoun **весь** in the genitive case are also used in the above greetings. For adjectives declension 📖 11.1. For the declension of **весь** 📖 14.6.1

Level
1

Упражнения

1. Put the noun in brackets into the correct form:

1. Это машина (Натáша).
2. Это велосипед (брат).
3. Это клетка (попугáй).
4. Это кошка (подру́га).
5. Это берег (мóре).

Level
1

2. Answer the questions using negative sentences:

Модель: В городе есть парк? – Нет, в городе нет парка.

1. В доме есть лифт?
2. На улице есть аптека?
3. У бизнесмена есть компьютер?
4. У Виктора есть подру́га?
5. В комнате есть телевизор?

Level
2, 3

3. Put the nouns in brackets into the correct form:

1. Сколько (человек) посетит выставку?
2. В Сибири нашли много (газ, нефть, уголь).
3. В городе 2 (парк), 3 (музей) и 44 (гостиница).
4. 100 000 (рубли) и 40 (копейка).
5. В корзине пачка (сигареты), коробка (конфеты) и банка (мёд).
6. Хотите (чай)?
7. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, полкило (сахар), литр (молоко) и буханку (хлеб).

Level
2, 3

4. Use the dates/times given to answer the questions in words:

A. Какое сегодня число?

a. 3.X.2011. **b.** 1.XII.1984.

B. Когда это произошло?

a. 31.II.1978. **b.** 13.VI.2000

C. Сколько сейчас времени? (Use the 12-hour clock.)

a. 10.15. **b.** 9.05. **c.** 6.30. **d.** 4.25.

Level
2, 3

5. Form greetings using the vocabulary provided:

путь, ночь, посадка, аппетит, Рождество, весь, счастливый, спокойный, хороший, мягкий, добрый, приятный

7.3 Using the genitive case with a preposition

7.3.1 The main grammatical role of the genitive case with prepositions: possessive constructions

The main grammatical role of the genitive case with a preposition is to indicate ownership in possessive constructions.

Level
1, 2

7.3.1.1 Russian affirmative possessive constructions

The Russian possessive affirmative constructions with the preposition *у* followed by the genitive case are equivalent to the English possessive constructions *one has/has got something or someone*. For example:

У Петра́ (genitive) **есть** машина (nominative).

Peter has/has got a car.

У родителей (genitive) **есть** сад (nominative).

Our parents have/have got a garden.

☞ The examples above show that the structure of Russian possessive constructions differs from English ones. The structure of this construction can be described only in a figurative sense. The Russian possessive construction always starts with the preposition *у*, which cannot be translated into English. *У* is followed by a noun/personal pronoun in the genitive case that indicates 'a possessor'. The noun/personal pronoun indicating 'a possession' is the subject of the sentence and is used in the nominative case.

☞ In Russian possessive constructions, **быть** (to be) is used as the Russian equivalent of the English verb *to have*. In the present tense, **быть** is normally omitted from Russian sentences (☞ 16.2). However, in a possessive construction, in the present tense, **есть**, a special unchangeable form of **быть**, is used. In the past and future tenses, **быть** is not omitted from the sentence and must agree with the subject of the sentence. In the past tense, **быть** agrees with the subject of the sentence in gender and number. In the future tense, **быть** agrees with the subject of the sentence in number and person. For example:

У Марии **есть** книга.

Maria has/has got a book.

У Марии **был** экзамен.

Maria had an exam.

У Марии **будут** лекции.

Maria will have lectures.

Level
2, 3

In the past and future tenses, **быть** (to be) can be replaced with verbs that have a similar meaning. For example:

Russian sentence	English sentence	Literal translation into English
У пациента появилась надежда.	The patient has hope.	'Hope appeared to the patient.'
У господина Смирнова возник план.	Mr Smirnoff has a plan.	'A plan occurred to Mr Smirnoff.'

Both subject and object in possessive constructions can be animate or inanimate:

У театра (inanimate) **большое** будущее (inanimate).

The theatre has a great future.

У мальчика (animate) **есть** кот (animate).

The boy has a cat.

У мальчика (animate) **есть** барабан (inanimate).

The boy has a drum.

For omission of the verb **есть** 📖 7.3.1.3

Level
1, 2, 3

7.3.1.2 Russian negative possessive constructions

Russian negative possessive constructions using the preposition *y* followed by the genitive case are equivalent to the English possessive constructions *one does not have/has not got something or someone*. For example:

Level
1, 2

У Петра (genitive) **нет** машины (genitive).

Peter does not have/has not got a car.

У родителей (genitive) **нет** сада (genitive).

Our parents do not have/have not got a garden.

👁 The examples above show that the structure of Russian negative possessive constructions differs from both the English negative possessive constructions and the Russian affirmative possessive constructions (📖 7.3.1.1). As with the Russian affirmative possessive construction, the Russian negative possessive construction starts with the preposition *y*, which cannot be translated into English and which governs a noun or personal pronoun in the genitive case indicating 'a possessor'. However, in the negative possessive construction, the noun that indicates the '*possession*' is the object of the sentence and is used in the genitive case. Thus, there is no subject in the nominative case in Russian negative, possessive constructions and this type of Russian sentence is therefore *impersonal* (for impersonal sentences, 📖 30).

Level
2, 3

👁 As negative genitive constructions have no subject, the predicate of the sentence (the verb) does not have a subject with which to agree. Unchangeable verbal forms express the predicate of the sentence. These are the negative word **нет** (there is no/there are no) in the present tense and the negative forms of **быть** (to be) in the past

and future tenses. In the past tense, the singular neuter form **не́ было** (there was no/ there were no) is used. In the future tense the 3rd person singular form **не́ будет** (there will be no) is used. **Нет, не́ было** and **не́ будет** are the Russian equivalents of the English expressions *do not have/did not have/will not have*. For example:

У Ма́рии нет кнѳги.	Maria does not have/has not got a book.
У Ма́рии не́ было экзѳмена.	Maria did not have/has not had an exam.
У Ма́рии не́ будет лекѳий.	Maria will not have lectures.

👁 In Russian, the negative possessive construction is similar to the construction that describes an object's absence: 📖 7.2.5.

7.3.1.3 Omission of the verb **есть** (to have, to be) in affirmative possessive constructions and constructions that indicate presence

For constructions that indicate presence 📖 5.1.1

For affirmative possessive constructions 📖 7.3.1.1

Level
2, 3

In the present tense, the verb **есть** is usually omitted from possessive affirmative constructions or constructions that indicate presence when they describe:

● **Appearance, personality, mood or health condition:**

У ба́бушки седые во́лосы .	Grandmother has got grey hair.
У Са́ши прекрасный ха́рактер.	Sasha has a nice personality.
У де́душки доброе се́рдце.	Grandfather is a kind person.
У ма́тери всегда́ хоро́шее на́строение.	Mother is always in high spirits.
У Ма́ши грипп .	Masha has flu.

👁 In Russian, unlike English, questions/comments about **настроение** (mood/spirit) are common:

Как настроение ?	Are you in good spirits today?
У Ма́рии се́годня плохо́е на́строение.	Maria feels down/low today.

● **A scheduled event: пра́здники** (holidays), **встрѳчи** (meetings), **экзѳмены** (examinations):

У студѳнтов лекѳии по понеде́льникам .	The students have lectures on Mondays.
У бизне́смена встрѳча в час .	The businessman has a meeting at 1 o'clock.
У ма́мы де́нь ро́ждения в ма́е .	Mother has her birthday in May.

● **Weather conditions:**

На у́лице дождь .	It is raining outside
Се́годня си́льный ве́тер .	It is very windy today.

👁 In Russian, the verb of motion **идти́** (to go), in a figurative sense, replaces the verb **есть** (to be) when talking about rain or snow: **дождь идёт** (it is raining), **снег идёт** (it is snowing). For more information, 📖 24.7.

● **Descriptions of inseparable parts of an object:** экра́н ко́мпью́тера (computer screen), по́толок, стѳны, о́кна, по́л в ко́мнате (ceiling, walls, windows, the floor in a room):

В ко́мнате большо́е о́кно .	There is a big window in the room.
У ноутбу́ка ма́ленький экра́н.	The laptop has a small screen.

● **When the construction emphasises quality or quantity rather than ‘ownership’ or ‘relationship’:**

У Марии прекрасная семья.	Maria has a nice family.
У друзей разные интересы.	The friends have different interests.
У ребёнка большие способности.	The child is very able.
У Бориса интересная работа.	Boris has an interesting job.
У Елены три сестры и два брата.	Helen has three sisters and two brothers.

👁 **Есть** is not omitted from the possessive affirmative construction and construction indicating presence when a speaker needs to emphasise the fact of possession or presence:

У ребёнка есть способности к музыке?	Does the child have a gift for music? Yes, he does.
Да. У ребёнка есть способности.	Is Veronica allergic to this medicine?
У Вероники есть аллергия на это лекарство?	Yes, she is.
Да, есть.	Extract from the description: ‘Wanted by the police’ The criminal is a tall, big man.
Из объявления «Их разыскивает милиция»:	Special features: He has a scar on his right cheek.
Преступник – высокий полный мужчина.	
Особые приметы: есть шрам на правой щеке.	





👁 The verb **будет** (to be) in the future tense can also be omitted in the situations described above. The verb **был, -а, -о, -и** (to be) in the past tense cannot be omitted. None of **нет, не было, не будет** (to be) can be omitted in negative possessive constructions or constructions that describe absence.

Level
2, 3

7.3.2 Using the genitive case with prepositions

The genitive case can be used with many prepositions. The preposition **у** is the most common as it forms an essential part of Russian possessive constructions (👁 7.3.1). Other prepositions that are most frequently used with the genitive case are listed in the summary table below. The list is not exhaustive, but it does cover the most common prepositions:

Context	Location	Moving from and to	Expression of time	Prepositional constructions
The question that the noun answers	где? (where?)	откуда? (from where?), куда? (to where?), где? (where?)	когда? (when?)	various, depending on context

Context	Location	Moving from and to	Expression of time	Prepositional constructions
Preposition used	напроти́в (opposite) от (from): от is used after adverbs недалеко́ (not far away) далеко́ (far way) вблизи́ (near by) сле́ва (on the left) спра́ва (on the right) о́коло/вóзле/у (near/near by) у (at one's place) вокруг (around) вдо́ль (along) впередí (in front of) позади́/сза́ди (behind) средí/посредí (in the middle of) внутри́ (inside)	из/с/от (from) до (to) ми́мо (past) из-за́ (from behind/beyond) из-пóд (from under) вдо́ль (along)	без (to) до (before/until) пóсле (after) во вре́мя (during/at) с ... до (from ... to)	без (without) для (for whom/for what) из-за́ (because of) из-пóд (purpose of container) кро́ме (except/besides) проти́в/от (against) от (from/for) ввиду́ (in view of) вме́сто (instead of) вне (beyond/outside of) ра́ди (for the sake of)
Examples	 7.3.2.1	 7.3.2.2	 7.3.2.3	 7.3.2.4

Comments on the table

- Nouns in three cases (genitive, instrumental and prepositional) can be used to indicate location. The choice of case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.
- Nouns in four cases (accusative, genitive, dative and instrumental) can describe unidirectional movements. The choice of case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.
- Nouns in all cases except the nominative can be used in time expressions. The choice of case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.

7.3.2.1 Using prepositions with the genitive case in the description of location

Several prepositions are used with the genitive case to indicate precise location. The verb **находи́ться** (located/situated) and the short-form participle **располо́жен -а, -о, -ы** (to be located/to be situated) are often used in these descriptions. The text below gives the context of when the most common prepositions with the genitive are used.



Сообщение господина Смирнова его деловым партнёрам об университетском городке, где будет проходить конференция	Mr Smirnoff's e-mail to his business partners about the university campus where the conference will be held:
<p>Конференция будет проходить в Московском государственном университете им. М. В. Ломоносова (МГУ). МГУ находится около станции метро «Университет». Возле станции метро есть киоски, где продают книги и газеты. У киосков всегда много народу. Не очень далеко от университета расположены Дётский музыкальный театр и цирк. К сожалению, ваша гостиница находится далеко от МГУ. Но для гостей конференции будет ходить маршрутное такси («маршрутка»). МГУ – это очень большой студенческий город. Главное здание университета находится посреди студенческого городка. Регистрация делегатов конференции будет проходить внутри главного здания – памятник М. В. Ломоносову. Вокруг памятника – красивый сквер. Вдоль дорожек в сквере стоят скамейки, где любят сидеть студенты. Позади памятника – Ломоносовский проспект и библиотека. Слева от памятника находится физический факультет, справа от памятника – химический факультет. Там будут проходить семинары. В последний день конференции вы также сможете побывать в гостях у ректора.</p>	<p>The conference will be held at the Lomonosov Moscow State University (MGU). MGU is located near 'University' metro station. Near the station there are some kiosks where books and newspapers are sold. By the kiosks there are always a lot of people. Not very far away from the university are the Children's Music Theatre and circus. Unfortunately, your hotel is far away from MGU. However, for guests of the conference there will be a shuttle bus. MGU is a very big campus. The main building is in the middle of the campus. Delegate registration will be held inside the main building. The Lomonosov monument is opposite the main building. Around the monument is a beautiful public garden. Along the paths in the garden there are benches where students like to sit. Behind the monument are the library and Lomonosov Avenue. The physics department is on the left of the monument. The chemistry department is on the right. The seminars will be held there. On the last day of the conference, you can visit the Principal (or 'Rector' in the USA) at his private residence.</p>

Level
2, 3

7.3.2.2 Using the genitive case with verbs of motion and other verbs describing movement

Nouns in all cases, except the nominative case, can describe various movements. The genitive case, with the prepositions listed in the table (☞ 7.3.2), indicates:

- The start point of the movement: **из/с/от** (from), **из-за** (from behind/beyond), **из-под** (from under)
- The end point of the movement: **до** (to)
- The route of the journey: **мимо** (past), **вдоль** (along)

The fourteen *verbs of motion* are mainly used with the genitive case when describing the start and end point of a movement or the route of a journey:

выйти из автобуса	to get off the bus
уйти с работы	to leave a job
уехать от родителей	to leave one's parents
выехать из-за угла	to drive round from behind the corner
вылезти из-под стола	to get out from under the table
доехать до Красной площади	to reach Red Square
дойти до лифта	to reach the lift
пройти мимо магазина	to go past the shop

For the verbs of motion, ➡ 24 and 25.

In Russian, there are many verbs other than fourteen verbs of motion that can describe various movements. Some of them require the genitive case with the prepositions listed at the beginning of this section. The most frequently occurring verbs that describe movement (other than the verbs of motion) are listed below:

добираться/добраться до	to reach (to)
выбрасывать/выбросить из	to throw out from
бросать/бросить мимо	to throw past
возвращаться/вернуться из/от/с	to return from
вставать/встать с	to get up from
вставать/встать из-за	to get up from behind
получать/получить что от кого	to receive something from someone

The following questions are common when asking for directions:

Как добраться до ...?	How can I reach... (general question)?
Как доехать до ...?	How can I reach a place by means of transport?
Как дойти до ...?	How can I reach a place by foot?

The English preposition *from* can be translated into Russian using three different prepositions, **из**, **с** and **от**, when describing unidirectional movement. Translation of the preposition *from* depends on the indication of the start point of the movement:

		Examples
The preposition из is used	if the start point of a movement is a location that can be described by the prepositional case with the preposition в (in/at): building, enclosed location or a geographical location etc.	быть в доме (to be inside the house) – уйти из дома (to leave a house) жить в России (to live in Russia) – уехать из России (to leave Russia)
The preposition с is used	if the start point of the movement is a location that can be described by the prepositional case with the preposition на (on/at): being at an event, open space location etc.	быть на уроке (to be at the lesson) – уйти с урока (to leave the lesson) отдыхать на море (to relax by the seashore) – уехать с моря (to leave the seashore)

		Examples
The preposition от is used	if the start point of the movement is a location that can be described by the genitive case with the preposition у (near/by). От is also used when describing movement from one's place or receiving something from someone.	стоять у киоска (to stand next to the kiosk) – отойти от киоска (to move away from the kiosk) быть у врача (to visit the doctor) – уйти от врача (to leave the doctor's office)

On using the prepositions **в** and **на** with the prepositional case, 📖 10.2.1.

For use of prepositions with the verbs of motion and other verbs describing movement, 📖 25.7.

Level
2, 3

7.3.2.3 Using the genitive case with prepositions in time expressions

The genitive case is used with prepositions in some time expressions that:

- Indicate time before, after or during an event:

до обе́да	before lunch
после обе́да	after lunch
во вре́мя обе́да	during/at lunch
- Mark the beginning and end of a time period (using the clock, parts of the day, weeks, years or seasons):

с де́вятí до ше́стí	from 9 to 6 o'clock
с у́тра до ве́чера	from morning to evening
с весны́ до о́сени	from spring to autumn
- Mark the beginning and end of a time period using the words **нача́ло**, **конце́ц** or in expressions of age and some idioms:

от нача́ла до конца́	from beginning to end
от двух до пяти́	from two to five years of age
от зарпла́ты до зарпла́ты	from payday to payday

👁 The preposition **пе́ред** (before) followed by the instrumental case is often used as a synonym of the preposition **до** (before): 📖 9.3.

- The genitive case is used with the preposition **без** (without) when telling the time in popular speech. This construction is used when indicating 'minutes to the hour' in the second half of the clock:

без де́сятí пять	ten to five
без два́дцатí пяти́ де́вять	twenty-five to nine
без че́тверти двена́дцать	quarter to twelve

👁 The examples above have the following structure: the preposition governs the cardinal number in the genitive case. The number indicates the minutes. The cardinal number in the nominative indicates the hour and concludes the phrase.

For the declension of cardinal numbers and time expressions, 📖 15.1 and 15.3.

Level
2, 3

7.3.2.4 Using the genitive case in prepositional constructions

☞ The preposition **для** (for whom/what for) followed by an animate noun or personal pronoun in the genitive case is similar to the construction using the dative case without a preposition:

Genitive	Dative	Translation
подáрок для ма́мы	подáрок ма́ме	a present for/to mother
э́то для Вас	э́то Ва́м	it is for you
игру́шка для сы́на	игру́шка сы́ну	a toy for/to the son

Inanimate nouns in this construction are usually used with the preposition **для** followed by the genitive case: для рабо́ты (for the work), для де́ла (for business), для це́ли (for the purpose).

☞ The preposition **из-за́** (because of) followed by a noun or personal pronoun in the genitive case can be replaced by a subordinate clause introduced by the conjunction **потому́ что** (because). Note, the position of the stress changes the meaning of this preposition. The preposition **из-за** (from beyond) is used to indicate location. In this case the stress falls on both, the first syllable of the preposition and on the noun as appropriate:

Из-за ле́са, **из-за** гор. From beyond the forest, from beyond the mountains
(Children's nursery rhymes).

Genitive	Subordinate clause introduced by потому́ что	Translation
Мы не гуля́ем из-за дождя́.	Мы не гуля́ем потому́, что и́дёт дождь.	We are not walking because of the rain/ because it is raining.
Из-за ссо́ры с дру́гом я не поше́л на вечеринку́.	Я не поше́л на вечеринку́ потому́, что я поссóрился с дру́гом.	I did not go to the party because of a quarrel/ because I had a quarrel with my friend.

The preposition **без** (without) followed by the genitive case is often used in opposition to the preposition **с** (with) followed by the instrumental case:

В кафе́:

Официáнт: Вы бу́дете чай **с** мо́локом **и** са́харом?

Клиéнт: Чай **без** мо́лока́ **и** **без** са́хара, но **с** лимóном, пожа́луйста.

In the café

Waiter: Will you take **milk and sugar** with your tea?

Client: Tea without **milk and sugar** but with **lemon**.

The prepositions **из-под** (purpose of a container), **кро́ме** (except, besides), **вместо** (instead of) and **проти́в/от** (against) are common in popular speech:

буты́лка **из-под** мо́лока́

ба́нка **из-под** ме́да

все, **кро́ме** Ви́ктора

всё, **кро́ме** то́рта

вместо профе́ссора

milk bottle

honey jar

everybody except Victor

everything except the cake

instead of the professor

вместо урока	instead of the lesson
вакцина против гриппа	flu vaccine
лекарство от простуды	medicine for a cold
двигаться против течения	to move against the current
ключ от квартиры	key to the flat

The prepositions **ввиду** (in view of), **вне** (beyond/outside of) and **ради** (for the sake of) are common in writing:

ввиду изменений в расписании	owing to changes to the schedule
ради славы и денег	for the sake of glory and money
... эта ночь для меня вне закона this night for me is outside the law.
Я пишу – по ночам больше тем.	I write more at night. (Высоцкий)

Two prepositions **от ... до** (from ... to) convey the idea of distance between two places:

от Москвы до Петербурга	from Moscow to St Petersburg
от Земли до Луны	from the Earth to the Moon

Level
2, 3

7.3.3 Verbs that require the genitive case with a preposition

Several verbs require the genitive case with a preposition. The preposition **от** is the most frequently occurring preposition that governs a noun in the genitive case after the verb.

👁 As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the genitive case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. Also, note that the use of prepositions may differ in Russian and English. A (nonexhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the genitive case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same preposition and case. For example: **защищать от врагов** (to defend from enemies), **защита от ветра** (protection from wind), and **защитив от клеветы** (having protected from slander).

Verbs	Examples
защищать/защитить кого? что? от кого? от чего? (to defend/to protect whom? what? from whom? from what?)	защищать планету от загрязнения (to protect the planet from pollution)
заслонять/заслонить кого? что? от кого? от чего? (to shield/to cover whom? what? from whom? from what?)	заслонить ребёнка от ветра (to shield the child from the wind)
отказываться/отказаться от чего? (to refuse, to decline what?)	отказаться от помощи (to refuse help)
освобождать/освободить кого? что? от кого? от чего? (to free whom? what? from whom? from what?)	освобождать заложников от террористов (to free hostages from terrorists)

Verbs	Examples
освободѣться /освободиться от когó? от чегó? (to free oneself from whom? from what?)	освободиться от опеки/от зависимости (to free oneself from guardianship/from addiction)
прятать/спрятать что? когó? от чегó? от когó? (to hide what? whom? from what? from whom?)	прятать еду от хищников в норé (to hide food from predators in a burrow)
прятаться/спрятаться от когó? от чегó? (to hide from whom? from what?)	прятаться от дождя под навéсом (to shelter from the rain under the awning)
лечить/вылечить когó? (что?) от чегó? (to treat medically whom? what? from what?)	лечить пациента от инсúльта (to treat a patient for stroke)
лечиться/вылечиться/излечиться от чегó? (to receive medical treatment impf. for what? to recover pf. from what?)	вылечиться от СПИДа (to recover from AIDS)

The preposition *y* is frequently used to govern, usually, an animate noun in the genitive case, when the noun describes the source of information or any material things. The preposition *y* appears after the following verbs: **спрашивать/спросить** (to ask (a question)), **просить/попросить** (to request/to ask for), **занимать/занять, брать/взять, одаживать/одолжить** (to borrow): **спросить у Нины** (to ask Nina).

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Replace the affirmative constructions with negative ones:

Модель: У Петра́ есть деньги – У Петра́ нет денег.

- У Мари́и сейча́с каникулы.
- У Ви́ктора есть рабо́та.
- У друзе́й есть вре́мя.
- У ба́бушки есть до́мик в дере́вне.
- У бизне́сме́на есть при́быль.
- У Никола́я есть вну́ки.

Level
2, 3

2. Give a negative answer:

- Сего́дня бу́дет матч?
- В стране́ бы́ли вы́боры президéнта?
- У профсою́зов (trade unions) есть подде́ржка в Росси́и?
- У писа́теля есть сю́жет для но́вого рома́на?
- У заво́да бу́дут зака́зы на това́ры?

Level
2, 3

3. Insert the verb «есть» if appropriate:

- У моде́ли всегда́ краси́вая причёска.
- У студéнта сло́варь?
- На у́лице си́льный ве́тер.
- У Петра́ трудо́дный ха́рактер.

5. У моёй сестры́ грипп.
6. У мамы́ сегодня́ плохое настро́ение.

Level
2, 3

4. Use the correct preposition:

1. Мы спрятались ... вётра.
2. Пассажи́ры отказались ... по́мощи.
3. Больно́й вы́лечился ... СПИДа.
4. Пожа́рные спасли́ люде́й ... гибели.
5. Мойте ру́ки ... и ... обе́да.
6. Библиоте́ка откры́та ... девя́ти ... четырёх.
7. Мы плавём ... течёния.
8. Ви́ктор прочита́л кни́гу ... нача́ла ... конца́.
9. Он отказáлся ... приглаше́ния ...ссора́ с дру́гом.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

5. Put the words in brackets into the genitive case. Add prepositions, if appropriate.



1. Подру́га (господи́н Смирно́в) пло́хо себя́ чу́вствует.
2. Господи́н Смирно́в сегодня́ опозда́л на рабо́ту (боле́знь) своёй (подру́га Ири́на).
3. Вече́ром (Ири́на) подня́лась температу́ра.
4. Утром (Ири́на) появи́лся ка́шель и на́сморк.
5. Потом (Ири́на) заболело́ го́рло.
6. Снача́ла господи́н Смирно́в купи́л лека́рство (ка́шель и на́сморк).
7. Потом он пригото́вил (Ири́на) за́втрак.
8. Она́ выпила (чай) (са́хар и молоко́) и съела́ два (я́блоко).
9. Потом им пришло́сь вы́звать врача́.
10. Они́ жда́ли врача́ (обе́д).
11. Врач пришёл, сде́лал Ири́не уко́л (температу́ра) и сказа́л, что (Ири́на) грипп.
12. Ей приде́тся лежа́ть (коне́ц) (неде́ля).

8 Nouns: dative case

For the concept of the six-case system and the principles of noun declension, 📖 4. The dative case is one of the six Russian cases. In a sentence or phrase, the dative case has several roles. It can be used with or without a preposition. This chapter provides a summary of noun endings in the dative case and explains its grammatical roles.

Level
1, 2

8.1 Summary table of noun endings in the dative case

Singular masculine and neuter nouns	Hard stem and stem ending with г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ц	-у
	Soft stem	-ю
Singular feminine nouns	All nouns except those ending in -ия and -ь	-е
	Nouns ending in -ия and -ь	-и
Plural nouns	Hard stem and stem ending with г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, ц	-ам
	Soft stem	-ям

- Some nouns have so-called ‘fleeing’ vowels **-о/-е/-ë** in the final syllable in any case other than nominative singular: **пирожок** – **пирожку** (pie), **отец** – **отцу** (father) etc. The nouns **мать** (mother) and **дочь** (daughter) have the suffix **-еп** inserted in all cases but the accusative: **матери**, **дочери**. The change **ë** to **ь** occurs in the noun **лёд/льду** (ice): **по льду** (on ice). For the fleeing vowels, 📖 4.5
- For hard and soft endings and the spelling rules, 📖 1.3 and 1.4.

8.2 Using the dative case without a preposition

Level
1, 2

8.2.1 The main role of the dative case without a preposition

In a sentence, a noun or pronoun in the dative case indicates an indirect object, ‘an addressee’ or ‘a recipient’, to whom an action is directed. ‘An addressee’ or ‘a recipient’ can be animate or inanimate. A noun or pronoun in the dative case answers the question **кому?** (to whom?/ for whom?) or **чему?** (to/for what?). In a sentence, a noun/pronoun in the dative case frequently accompanies a noun in the accusative case that indicates a direct object. The common structure of a sentence that contains the subject and both direct and indirect object is as follows:

Кто – де́лает – что – кому́ ИЛИ Кто – де́лает – кому́ – что	Who (subject) – does (verb) – what (direct object) – to whom (indirect object, addressee) OR Who (subject) – does (verb) – to whom (indirect object, addressee) – what (direct object)
Ма́рия пи́шет письмо́ (accusative, direct object) Петру́ (dative, addressee).	Maria writes a letter to Peter .
Ма́рия пи́шет Петру́ (dative, addressee) письмо́ (accusative, direct object).	Maria writes Peter a letter .
До́чь покупáет подáрок (accusative, direct object) ма́тери (dative, addressee).	The daughter buys a present for her mother .
До́чь покупáет ма́тери (dative, addressee) подáрок (accusative, direct object).	The daughter buys her mother a present .

👁 In Russian, there is no equivalent of the English preposition *to* to indicate the addressee of an action.

The dative case is used to indicate an addressee in the following expressions:

- **In correspondence.** For example, the name, title and position of the person to whom a letter or e-mail is addressed are in the dative case: господи́ну президе́нту (to Mr President), господи́ну Смирно́ву (to Mr Smirnoff), профе́сору Фёдорову (to Professor Fyodorov), Дже́ймсу Бо́нду (to James Bond).
- **When describing monuments** erected in someone's honour. Names, titles and professions of the honoured persons are in the dative case: па́мятник космона́вту Ю́рию Гага́рину (the monument to the cosmonaut Yuri Gagarin), па́мятник Пу́шкину (Pushkin's monument). 👁 Note the genitive case is used when describing the person or the event in whose honour a place or an establishment was named (👉 7.2.1).
- **With nouns derived from verbs that require the dative case** (👉 8.2.4): отве́т дру́гу (answer to a friend), посы́лка студе́нту (parcel to a student), соо́бщение дире́ктору (e-mail to a director), по́мощь ветера́нам (help to veterans), сове́т де́вушке (advice to a girl).

Level
1, 2

8.2.2 Other meanings of the dative case without a preposition: stating age

The dative case without a preposition is used to convey age. An age expression has the following structure:

- A noun indicating a person/inanimate object, whose age is stated, is in the dative case.

If a cardinal numeral is followed by the noun **год** (year), the form of the noun **год** depends on the last figure in the numeral. For example:

Ско́лько лет ма́льчику, де́вочке, близнеца́м? How old is/are the boy/girl/twins?
 Ма́льчику (dative) пять лет (genitive plural). The boy is 5 years old.

Дёвочке (dative) два го́да (genitive singular).

The girl is two years old.

Близнеца́м (dative) год (nominative).

The twins are one year old.

For the use of cases after numbers, 📖 15.3.

Level
2, 3

8.2.3 Using the dative case without a preposition in impersonal constructions

For the concept, types and use of impersonal sentences, 📖 30. 📖 30.3 for information on the use of:

- the verb **нравиться/понравиться** (to like)
- short-form adjectives **нужен, нужна, нужны́** (need)
- modal words **надо** (need), **можно** (permitted), **нельзя́** (forbidden) etc., with the dative case

Russian *impersonal* sentences do not have a subject. They have only one core element, a predicate, and describe a state or action that occurs as if without external forces: **Холодно.** (It is cold.) **Интересно.** (It is interesting.)

However, if the context of an impersonal sentence requires explaining who experiences a certain condition, this information is usually conveyed by a noun or personal pronoun in the dative case:

- **Марии́** холодно. (**Maria** is cold (literally: it is cold for Maria).)
- **Виктору́** интересно. (**Victor** is interested (literally: it is interesting for Victor).)

A noun or personal pronoun in the dative case functions as ‘the addressee’ to whom the action is directed. The noun/pronoun in the dative case answers the question **кому́?** (to whom?).

Level
2, 3

8.2.4 Verbs that require a noun in the dative case without a preposition

In Russian, several verbs require a noun in the dative case as their indirect object.

👁️ As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the dative case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. A (nonexhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the dative case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same case. For example:

сообщить́ дру́гу

to inform a friend

сообщение́ дру́гу

a message to a friend

сообщив дру́гу

having spoken to a friend

Verbs indicating communication	Examples
говори́ть/сказа́ть кому́? о чём? (to say to whom? about what?)	сказа́ть дру́гу о приглаше́нии (to tell a friend about an invitation)
расска́зывать/рассказа́ть кому́? о чём? (to tell whom? about what?)	рассказа́ть полице́йскому о происше́ствии (to tell a policeman about the incident)
сообща́ть/сообщи́ть кому́? о чём? (to inform whom? about what?)	сообщи́ть студéнтам об экза́мене (to inform students about an examination)
объявля́ть/объяви́ть кому́? о чём? (to announce to whom? about what?)	объяви́ть депутáтам о заседа́нии (to announce a meeting to MPs)
напомина́ть/напо́мнить кому́? о чём? (to remind whom? about what?)	напо́мнить шко́льникам о сочи́нении (to remind the pupils about an essay)
писа́ть/написа́ть кому́? о чём? (to write to whom? about what?)	писа́ть ба́бушке о вну́ке (to write to a grandmother about her grandchild)
чита́ть/прочита́ть кому́? о чём?/что? (to read to whom? what?/about what?)	чита́ть де́тям сказа́нку (to read children a fairy tale)
отвеча́ть/отвэ́тить кому́? на что? (to answer whom? what?)	отвэ́тить дру́гу на писа́мó (to answer a friend's letter)
объясня́ть/объясни́ть кому́? что? (to explain to whom? what?)	объясни́ть сотру́дникам пра́вила (to explain the rules to staff)
совета́вать/посовета́вать кому́? что де́лать? (to advise whom? to do what?)	совета́вать знако́мым посмотре́ть го́род (to advise acquaintances to see a city)
звони́ть/позвони́ть кому́? (to call, to ring whom?)	позвони́ть секретарю́ (to call the secretary)
меша́ть/помеша́ть кому́? (to disturb whom?/to prevent someone doing something)	меша́ть бра́ту слу́шать му́зыку (to prevent one's brother from listening to music)

Verbs indicating emotions, beliefs, likes and dislikes	Examples
вэ́рить/повэ́рить кому́? чему́? (to believe whom? what?)	повэ́рить сплётням (to believe rumours)
ра́доваться/обра́доваться кому́? чему́? (to be happy for whom? about what?)	ра́доваться новостя́м (to be happy to hear the news)
удивля́ться/удиви́ться кому́? чему́? (to be surprised by whom? by what?)	удиви́ться звонку́ (to be surprised by the phone call)

Verbs indicating emotions, beliefs, likes and dislikes	Examples
нравиться/понравиться (to like whom? what? = who? what? to please someone/ something)'	бизнесмэну нравится договор (the businessman likes the agreement/the agreement pleases the businessman)
сочувствовать/посочувствовать кому? чему? (to sympathise with whom? with what?)	сочувствовать Вашей утра́те (to sympathise with your loss)
доверять/доверить кому? чему? (to trust whom? what?)	доверять другу (to trust a friend)
завидовать/позавидовать кому? чему? (to envy whom? what?)	завидовать сопернику (to envy a competitor)
льстить/польстить кому? (to flatter whom?)	льстить начальнику (to flatter a boss)
угрожать кому? чему? (to threaten whom?)	угрожать офицеру (to threaten an officer)

Verbs describing selling, passing on to, giving etc.	Examples
готовить/приготовить что? кому? (to prepare, to cook what? for whom?)	готовить ужин гостя́м (to cook dinner for the guests)
давать/дать что? кому? (to give what? to whom?)	дать книгу библиотека́рю (to give a book to the librarian)
дарить/подарить что? кому? (to give as a present what? to whom?)	подарить компью́тер сы́ну (to give a computer (as a present) to a son)
сдавать/сдать что? кому? (to be examined by whom? or to submit what? to whom?)	сдавать экза́мен комиссии (to be examined by a committee), сдавать сочи́нение преподава́телю (to submit an essay to a tutor/instructor)
продавать/продать что? кому? (to sell what? to whom?)	продавать цветы́ покупа́телям (to sell flowers to the customers)
посылать/послать что? кому? (to send what? to whom?)	послать посылку ро́дителям (to send a parcel to one's parents)
отдавать/отдать что? кому? (to return what? to whom?)	отдать долг ба́нку (to pay off the loan to the bank)

Verbs describing selling, passing on to, giving etc.	Examples
передава́ть/передать что? кому́? (to pass what? to whom?)	переда́йте Мари́и приве́т (pass my regards to Maria)
покупа́ть/купить что? кому́? (to buy what? for whom?)	купить подарки ро́дственникам (to buy presents for relatives)
предлага́ть/предложить что? кому́? (to offer/to propose what? to whom?)	предлага́ть това́р клие́нтам (to offer the goods to the clients)
пока́зывать/показа́ть что? кому́? (to show what? to whom?)	показа́ть сувени́ры тури́стам (to show the souvenirs to the tourists)

Verbs describing assistance, rules, learning	Examples
помога́ть/помо́чь кому́? (to help whom?)	помога́ть сосе́ду (to help a neighbour)
соде́йствовать/соде́йствовать кому́? чему́? (to co-operate with whom? with what?)	соде́йствовать устано́влению ми́ра (to co-operate with the peace process)
принадлежа́ть кому́? (to belong to whom?)	принадлежа́ть госуда́рству (to belong to the state)
препятствова́ть/воспрепятствова́ть кому́? чему́? (to hinder what? whom?)	препятствова́ть проведе́нию рефо́рм (to hinder the reforms)
запреща́ть/запрети́ть кому́? что де́лать? (to forbid whom? to do what?)	запрети́ть де́тям купа́ться в о́зере (to forbid children to swim in a lake)
позволя́ть/позво́лить кому́? что де́лать? (to allow whom? to do what?)	позво́лить сотру́днику рабо́тать до́ма (to allow a member of staff to work from home)
разреша́ть/разрешить кому́? что де́лать? (to allow whom? to do what?)	разрешить мужчи́не кури́ть сига́ры (to allow the man to smoke a cigar)
сле́довать/последова́ть чему́? (to follow what?)	сле́довать сове́ту (to follow advice)
обуча́ть/обучи́ть кого́? чему́? (to teach whom? what?)	обуча́ть студе́нта пла́ванию (to teach a student swimming)
учи́ть/научи́ть кого́? чему́? (to teach whom? what?/to do what?)	научи́ть прия́теля заба́вным сло́вам (to teach a friend amusing words)

8.2.5 Using adjectives that require a noun in the dative case without a preposition

A few short- and long-form adjectives require a noun in the dative case as their indirect object. They must be memorised:

благодарен (благодарна, благодарны)/ благодарный (-ая, -ое, -ые) кому? чему? за что? (to be grateful to whom? to what? what for?)	Мы благодарны друзьям за помощь. We are grateful to our friends for their help.
верен (верна, верны)/верный (-ая, -ое, -ые) кому? чему? (to be faithful to whom? to what?)	Они верны принципам и традициям . They are faithful to their principles and traditions.
рад (рада, рады) кому? чему? (to be glad/happy about what? about whom?)	Дети рады подаркам . Children are happy to receive presents.
знаком (знакома, знакомо знакомы)/ знакомый (-ая, -ое, -ые) что? кто? кому? (what? who? to be familiar to whom? to what?)	Студентам знакомы правила. The rules are familiar to the students.
известен (известна, известно известны)/ известный (-ая, -ое, -ые) что? кто? кому? (what? who? to be known to whom? to what?)	Жителям известны местные традиции. Local traditions are known to people.
подобен (подобна, подобно подобны)/ подобный (-ая, -ое, -ые) кому? чему? (as/like/similar to whom? to what?): mainly used in poetry and literature	Между тучами и морем гордо реет Буревестник, чёрной молнии подобный (Горький). Between the clouds and the sea proudly soars the stormy petrel, like a streak of black lightning.

Comment on the table

- The short and long forms of the adjective **знакомый** can be used with the preposition **с** and the instrumental case as well: Студенты (nominative) **знакомы с правилами** (instrumental). (The students are familiar with the rules.)

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Put the nouns in brackets into the correct form.

1. Сергей обещал (Натáша) больше не курить.
2. Профессор посоветовал (студенты) прочитать статью.
3. Ира купила (брат) билеты на матч.
4. Мáша послала сообщение (друзья).
5. Это памятник (Юрий Гагáрин).
6. Сколько лет (преподаватель)?
7. (Ребёнок) 3 года.

Level
2, 3

2. Put the nouns in brackets into the correct form.

1. Мы сочувствуем (горе) друзéй.
2. Судья напомнил (свидетели) об ответственности.


3. Переда́йте (ро́дственники) мой се́рдечный приве́т.
4. А́ктёр раздава́л (покло́нники) свои авто́графы.
5. Бездо́мные ра́ды ва́шей (по́мощь).
6. Э́та тео́рия знако́ма (иссле́дователи).

Level

1, 2, 3

8.3 Using the dative case with a preposition

The dative case can be used with several prepositions. The table summarises the prepositions that can appear in the dative case and indicates the context in which they are used:

Context	The question that the noun answers	Preposition used	Examples
In time expressions	когда́? (when?)	по (on) + dative plural; к (by/ towards)	по суббо́там (on Saturdays), по вечера́м (in the evenings), к среде́ (by Wednesday), к утру́ (by/towards morning)
To indicate movement towards a place	куда́? (where to?)	к (towards); навстре́чу (towards)	подъе́хать к ста́нции (to approach the station), подо́йти к до́му (to approach home), иди́ навстре́чу ве́тру (to go into the wind)
To indicate a person who is visited	к кому́? (to whom?)	к (to a person or his/her place)	иди́ к врачу́ (to go to see a doctor), е́хать к друзья́м (to visit friends)
To describe movement along a surface or to emphasise the multidirectional nature of a movement	где? (where?)	по (along/ around)	бежа́ть по у́лице (to run along a street), пла́ть по волна́м (to swim through the waves), ходи́ть по ко́мнате (walk around the room), вози́ть ко́го-либо по го́роду (to drive someone around a city)
In idioms and phrases (for the most frequently occurring phrases  8.3.1)	various	благодаря́ (thanks to); вопреки́ (despite); по (by/in/on/due to); согласно́ (in accordance with)	благодаря́ усилiáм (thanks to effort), вопреки́ прогно́зам (despite the prognoses), говори́ть по телефо́ну (to talk on the phone), передава́ть по ра́дио (to broadcast), согласо́но согласо́нию (in accordance with an agreement)

Comments on the table

- Nouns in all cases, except the nominative, can be used in time expressions. The choice of the case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.
- Nouns in three cases (accusative, genitive and dative) can describe the end point of a journey. The choice of case depends on the verb of motion's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.
- For verbs of motion, 📖 24–25; for a summary of prepositions used with verbs of motion, 📖 25.7.
- Nouns in the dative and genitive cases can describe movement along a surface or emphasise the multidirectional nature of a movement. The choice of case depends on the verb of motion's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.

Level
2, 3

8.3.1 Using the dative case with a preposition in idioms and phrases

Nouns in the dative case appear in several idioms/phrases. The use of prepositions differs in Russian and English. The (nonexhaustive) lists given below cover the most frequently occurring verbs, and should be memorised.

The dative case with the preposition *по* (on, in, by, over, according to) is used in phrases to indicate:

- **Means of communication:** сообщать/сообщить (to inform), передавать/передать (to transmit), выступать/выступить (to perform) **по радио** (on radio)/**по телевизору** (on TV), слушать/послушать **по радио** (to listen to the radio), смотреть /посмотреть **по телевизору** (to watch TV), находить/найти (to find) **по интернету** (on the Internet), говорить (to speak), разговаривать (to speak), звонить/позвонить (to call) **по телефону** (by phone), посылать/послать, отправлять/отправить (to send) **по почте** (by post), **по электронной почте** (by e-mail).
- **Course of action:** заходить/зайти (to call on), звонить/позвонить (to call) **по делу/по делам** (on business):

Вы просто так зашли или по делу ?	Have you called on me without any reason or on business?
Пропустить урок по болезни .	To miss a lesson due to illness.
- **Subject of learning:** лекция (lecture), урок (lesson), курс (course), экзамен (examination), тест (test), учебник (textbook) **по предмету** (on the subject): урок **по истории** (history lesson), учебник **по русскому языку** (Russian textbook).
- **Expertise:** специалист **по лингвистике** (linguistics specialist), **по профессии** они строители (they are builders by profession).
- **Some rules:** ехать **по расписанию** (to go according to schedule), работать **по правилам** (to work according to the rules).
- **Distribution of objects to a number of people:** Всем сестрам **по серьгам** (пословица). (A pair of earrings to each sister: proverb, meaning a fair distribution.) For the use of numerals with cases, 📖 15.3.

The dative case with the preposition **к** (for) is used:

- **To indicate feelings:** страсть **к поэзии** (passion for poetry), любовь **к семье** (love for family), доверие **к друзьям** (trust in friends), презрение **к врагам** (contempt for enemies), слабость **к красоте** (weakness for beauty), интерес **к русскому языку** (interest in Russian).
- **In idioms:** **к счастью** (fortunately), **к сожалению** (unfortunately), **к моему стыду** (to my shame), **к моему удивлению** (to my surprise).

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Put the nouns in brackets into the dative case. Add prepositions as appropriate.

1. Специалист (лингвистика) прочитал лекцию.
2. Интерес (языки) растёт среди молодёжи.
3. Мне надо заехать (приятель) по дороге домой.
4. (Счастье) я сдала экзамен!
5. (Сожаление) спасателям не удалось спасти людей.
6. Они занимаются на тренажёрах (пятница).
7. Аспирант позвонил профессору (дело).
8. (Утро) пенсионеры бегают (пляж).

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

1. Put the words in brackets into the correct form. Add a preposition, if appropriate.



Господин Смирнов покупает подарки

1. Дни рождения всех родственников в семье господина Смирнова в декабре, поэтому он должен готовиться (праздники), а он так не любит бегать (магазины).
2. (Господин Смирнов) надо купить подарки (родители, дяди, тёти, племянники-близнецы, племянницы), двоюродным (сёстры), их (мужья), (братья) и их (жены).
3. Он думает, что купить своей большой (семья).
4. Его (племянницы и племянники) только два года.
5. Они будут рады (игрушки).
6. (Счастье) господин Смирнов услышал рекламу (радио) о распродаже книг (история) и альбомов (искусство).
7. Эти подарки понравятся его (братья и сёстры).
8. Но что подарить другим (родственники)?
9. (Господин Смирнов) нужна помощь его подруги Ирины.
10. Он обязательно послушает её (совет).

9 Nouns: instrumental case

For the concept of the six-case system and the principles of noun declension, see 4. The instrumental case is one of the six Russian cases. In a sentence or a phrase, the instrumental case has several roles. It can be used with or without a preposition. This chapter provides a summary of noun endings in the instrumental case and explains its grammatical roles.

Level
1, 2

9.1 Summary table of noun endings in the instrumental case

Singular masculine and neuter nouns	hard stem	-ОМ
	soft stem	-ЕМ (unstressed) -ЁМ (stressed)
	stem ending with ж, ш, ч, щ, ц	-ОМ (stressed)
	stem ending with ж, ш, ч, щ, ц	-ЕМ (unstressed)
Singular feminine nouns	hard stem	-ОЙ
	soft stem	-ЕЙ (unstressed) -ЁЙ (stressed)
	special ending for nouns ending with -Ь	-ЬЮ
Plural nouns	hard stem	-АМИ
	soft stem	-ЯМИ

- Some nouns have so-called ‘fleeing’ vowels **о/е/ё** in the final syllable in any case other than nominative singular: **день** – **днём** (day), **отец** – **отцом** (father) etc. The nouns **мать** (mother) and **дочь** (daughter) have the suffix **-ер-** inserted in all cases but the accusative: **матерью**, **дочерью**. Changes **ё/ь** occurs in the noun **лёд/льдом** (ice): **чай со льдом** (iced tea) etc. For the fleeing vowels, see 4.5.
- For hard and soft endings and the spelling rules, see 1.3 and 1.4.

Level
2

9.1.1 Irregular noun endings

The plural instrumental case has one additional soft ending, **-ьми**:

- The following feminine nouns with a dictionary form ending in **-ь** have alternative endings **-ями/-ьми**: **лошадьями/лошадьми** (horses), **дверьями/дверьми** (doors), **костьями/костьми** (bones), **плетьями/плетьми** (whips). The ending **-ьми** is common in popular speech.

- The nouns **дочь** (daughter), **люди** (people) and **дети** (children) have the ending **-ьми** instead of **-ями**: **дочерьми, людьми, детьми**.

9.2 Using the instrumental case without a preposition

Level
1, 2

9.2.1 The main role of the instrumental case

The main role of the instrumental case without a preposition is to indicate *the means of an action* or *the manner of an action*. Nouns in the instrumental case, in this context, answer the question **чем?** (with what?) or **как?** (how?). For example:

- Писать **ручкой** (to write with a pen), есть **ложкой** (to eat with a spoon), лечить **гипнозом** (to treat by hypnosis), разрезать **лазером** (to cut with a laser).
- Говорить **шепотом** (to whisper), продавать **десятками** (to sell by tens), считать **сотнями** (to count by hundreds).
- Тройка мчится **стрелой** (The troika is racing like an arrow). Often the noun in the instrumental case can be replaced by a phrase containing the word **словно/как** (like) and a noun in the nominative case: Тройка мчится **как/словно стрелá** (The troika is racing like an arrow).
- Ехать **автобусом** (to go by bus), лететь **самолётом** (to go by plane). The prepositional case with the preposition **на** (by) is used more often than the instrumental case to convey the same idea: ехать **на автобусе** (to go by bus), лететь **на самолёте** (to go by plane) (📖 10.3.2).

👁 In Russian, there is no equivalent of the English prepositions *by/with* in a phrase/sentence that describes the means or manner of an action.

Level
1, 2

9.2.2 Other meanings of the instrumental case without a preposition

The instrumental case without a preposition is used to denote parts of the day and seasons. The noun in the instrumental case answers the question **когда?** (when?):

Nominative	Instrumental
зимá (winter)	зимой (in the winter)
весна́ (spring)	весной (in the spring)
лётó (summer)	лётóм (in the summer)
óсень (autumn)	óсенью (in the autumn)
ýтро (morning)	ýтром (in the morning)
день (day/afternoon)	днём (in the afternoon)
вечер (evening)	вечером (in the evening)
ночь (night)	ночьó (in the night)

In the plural, the dative case with the preposition **по** (by) can replace the instrumental case without a preposition to convey the same idea (📖 8.3). For example:

- не спать **ночáми** (instrumental) or не спать **по ночáм** (dative) – not to sleep for nights (on end)
- рабóтать **вечерáми** (instrumental) or рабóтать **по вечерáм** (dative) – to work in the evenings

Level
2, 3

The instrumental case without a preposition is also used to denote:

- **The route of a journey:** пройти **по** **по́лем** (to go across the field), прое́хать **дворáми** (to go through the yards). The dative case with the preposition **по** (by/along) and the accusative case with the preposition **че́рез** (across) can replace the instrumental case without a preposition to convey the same idea (☞ 8.3 and 6.3.1, respectively). For example:

пройти́ **по** **по́лю** (dative, to go across the field)/пройти́ **че́рез** **по́ле** (accusative, to go across the field)

прое́хать **по** **дворáм** (dative, to go through the yards)/прое́хать **че́рез** **дворы́** (accusative, to go through the yards).

- **Comparison:** **ча́сом** **ра́ньше** (an hour earlier), **днё́м** **по́зже** (a day later). The accusative case with the preposition **на** can replace the instrumental case without a preposition to convey the same idea (☞ 6.3.2). For example: **на** **ча́с** **ра́ньше** (an hour early), **на** **де́нь** **по́зже** (a day later).
- **Measurements:** **высо́той** (in height, inanimate nouns), **ро́стом** (in height, people or animals), **длино́й** (in length), **ширино́й** (in width/breadth), **толщи́ной** (in thickness/depth), **глубино́й** (in depth, of lake, of pool etc): **высо́той** **5** **ме́тров** (5 metres in height), **глубино́й** **1** **киломе́тр** (1 kilometre in depth).

Level
2, 3

9.2.3 Using the instrumental case without a preposition in passive or impersonal constructions

For the passive voice, ☞ 21.3; for impersonal sentences, ☞ 30.

The instrumental case without a preposition indicates a person or a natural phenomenon that is responsible for the action in passive and impersonal constructions. Nouns in the instrumental case, in this context, answer the question **кем?** (by whom?) or **чем?** (with/by what?). For example:

Ромáн был напи́сан **мо́дным** **писа́телем**. The novel was written **by a fashionable writer**.

Все дома́ разру́шены **урага́ном**. All the houses were destroyed **by the hurricane**.

Лу́га зали́ло **водо́й**. The meadows are flooded **with water**.

Level
2, 3

9.2.4 Using the instrumental case without a preposition as a predicate

A noun in the instrumental case without a preposition can serve as a core element of a compound predicate (a verbal phrase) when describing quality, status, type or class:

Они́ **бу́дут** **космона́втами**. They **will be astronauts**.

Ельцин **был** **пе́рвым** **президе́нтом** **Росси́йской** **Федера́ции**. Yeltsin **was the first President** of the Russian Federation

In the examples above, the noun in the instrumental case is part of the predicate and qualifies the subject of the sentences. **быть** (to be) is the verb-link and connects the noun in the instrumental case and the subject of the sentence. **Быть** can only be used in the past or future tenses. The noun in the instrumental case, in this context, emphasises *the temporary nature* of the described quality, status, type or class:

Гага́рин **был** **пе́рвым** **космона́втом**. Gagarin was the first astronaut.

Они́ **бу́дут** **музыка́нтами**. They are going to be musicians.

👁 In this context, a noun in the instrumental case can be replaced with a noun in the nominative case. Conversely, the noun in the nominative case emphasises *the permanent nature* of the described quality, status, type or class:

Она **была настоящая красавица**. She was a real beauty.

Толстой **был великий писатель**. Tolstoy was a great writer.

In the present tense, the verb-link **быть** (to be) is omitted and the noun which qualifies the subject of the sentence is used in the nominative case:

Она **настоящая красавица**. She is a real beauty.

Толстой – **великий писатель**. Tolstoy is a great writer.

For the use of the nominative case in this context, 📖 5.2; information on **быть** (to be), 📖 16.2.

Besides **быть**, several verbs can serve as a verb-link between the subject of the sentence and the core element of a predicate in the instrumental case without a preposition. They are:

- **являться** (to be, used in formal writing)
Москва **является** крупнейшим мегаполисом России. Moscow is the biggest megalopolis (metropolis) of Russia.
- **становиться / стать** (to become)
Они **стали** прекрасными специалистами. They became excellent specialists.
- **считаться** (to be considered)
Он **считается** хорошим хирургом. He is considered to be a good surgeon.
- **называться/назваться** (to be called)
Напиток из хлеба **называется** квасом. The drink made from bread is called *kvas*.
- **оставаться/остаться** (to remain as)
Она **осталась** красавицей и в старости. She remained a beauty in her old age.
- **оказываться/оказаться** (to turn out to be)
Он **оказался** настоящим другом. He turned out to be a real friend.
- **казаться/показаться** (to seem/appear)
Тень **показалась** нам чудовищем. The shadow seemed to us a monster.

Level
2, 3

9.2.5 Short-form adjectives that require a noun in the instrumental case without a preposition

There are several short-form adjectives that require a noun in the instrumental case without a preposition. The list of the most frequently occurring adjectives that take the instrumental case must be memorised:

болен, больна, больны чем? (to be ill with what?)	Она больна ангиной . She is ill with tonsillitis.
занят, знята, заняты чем? (to be busy with what?)	Они заняты делом . They are busy with their business.
доволен, довольна, довольны кем? чем? (to be happy with what? with whom?)	Профессор доволен докладом . The professor is happy with his paper.

извѣстен, извѣстна, извѣстны чем?(to be known by what? by whom?)	Крым извѣстен винами . Crimea is famous for its wines.
богáт, богáта, богáты чем? (to be rich in what?)	Сибíрь богáта нефтью . Siberia is rich in oil.
бѣден, бѣднá, бѣдны́ чем? (to be poor in what?)	Тундра бѣднá растительностью . The tundra has poor vegetation.

Level
2, 3

9.2.6 Verbs that require a noun in the instrumental case without a preposition

There are several verbs that require a noun in the instrumental case without a preposition.

👁️ As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the instrumental case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. A (non-exhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the instrumental case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same case: for example

увлекáться спóртом	to be keen on sport
увлечѣние спóртом	passion for sport
увлечѣнный спóртом	keen on sport
увлекáясь спóртом	being keen on sport

Verbs indicating profession, position or rank	Examples
рабóтать кем? где? (to work as what? where?)	Она́ рабóтает учíteлем в школе. She works as a teacher at a school.
служíть кем? где? (to serve as what? age?)	Он служит генерáлом в Министѣрстве. He serves as a general in the Ministry.
выбирáть/выб́рать, избирáть/изб́рать когó? кем? кудá? (to elect whom? as what? to where?)	Их изб́рали депутáтами в Думу. They were elected as MPs to the Duma.
назначáть/назнáчить когó? кем? (to appoint whom? as what?)	Егó назнáчили дирéктором . He was appointed as a director.

Verbs indicating interests or occupation	Examples
интересовáться/заинтересовáться чем? кем? (to be interested in what? in whom?)	Он́и интересу́ются политикой . They are interested in politics.
увлекáться/увлѣчься чем? кем? (to be keen on what? on whom?)	Мы увлекáемся истóрией . We are keen on history.
занимáться/заня́ться/позанимáться чем? (to be engaged in/to be occupied with what?)	Он́и занимáются спóртом . They do sport.

Verbs describing physical or emotional state	Examples
восхищаться/восхититься кем? чем? (to be enchanted by whom? by what?)	Туристы восхищаются Байкалом . Tourists are enchanted by Baikal.
восторгаться кем? чем? (to be delighted by whom? by what?)	Они восторгаются новым фильмом . They are delighted by the new film.
любоваться/полюбоваться/ залюбоваться кем? чем? (to admire whom? what?)	Они любуются прекрасным видом . They admire the beautiful view.
наслаждаться/насладиться чем? (to enjoy/to take pleasure in what?)	Мы наслаждаемся изысканным вкусом . We enjoy the delicate taste.
гордиться/возгордиться кем? чем? (to be proud of whom? of what?)	Мать гордится успехами детей. Mother is proud of the success of her children.
возмущаться/возмутиться кем? чем? (to be indignant at whom? with what?)	Учитель возмущается плохим поведением школьника. The teacher is indignant with the pupil's poor behaviour.
болеть/заболеть чем? (to be ill with what?)	Они болеют гриппом . They are ill with flu.
жертвовать/пожертвовать кем? чем? (to sacrifice whom? what?)	Герой пожертвовал жизнью . The hero has sacrificed his life.
рисковать/риснуть чем? (to take a risk with what?)	Пожарные рискуют жизнью . Firefighters risk their lives.

Verbs indicating command or possession	Examples
управлять чем? (to operate/drive/manage what?)	Они управляют машиной . They operate a machine.
руководить чем? (to manage what?)	Директор руководит заводом . The director manages a factory.
командовать чем? (to be in command of what?)	Он командует флотом . He is in command of the navy.
владеть чем? (to own/to possess what?/to have skills/knowledge in what?)	Миллионер владеет банками . The millionaire owns banks. Переводчик владеет многими языками . An interpreter knows many languages.
обладать чем? (to have, most common with words describing skills/knowledge)	Они обладают большими способностями . They are very gifted people.
пользоваться чем? (to use what?)	Все пользуются компьютером . Everybody uses a computer.

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Put the words in brackets into the correct form:

1. Мы режем хлеб (нож).
2. Китайские блюда едят (палочки).
3. Ёра рисует (карандаш).
4. Она вернулась домой (поезд).
5. Лошадь мчится (стрела).
6. Медсестра мазала руку (крем).
7. Туристы катаются на лыжах (зима).
8. Снег тает (весна).
9. Рабочие встают рано (утро).

Level
2, 3

2. Provide a description of a bookcase, in Russian, using the instrumental case as appropriate:

- a. height 1.80 m
- b. width 1.50 m
- c. depth 35 cm

3. Insert the phrase in the correct form:

1. Терешкова была первой (женщина-космонавт).
2. Оттава является (столица) Канады.
3. Хозяйство развивается быстрыми (темпы).
4. Адмирал командует (флот).
5. Туристы восхищаются (музеи, мосты и дворцы) города.
6. Выпускники остались (приятели) на всю жизнь.
7. Солдаты ежедневно рискуют (жизнь).
8. Виктор увлекается (поп-музыка, плавание, гольф).

Level
1, 2, 3


9.3 Using the instrumental case with a preposition

The instrumental case can be used with several prepositions. The table summarises the prepositions that can appear in the instrumental case and indicates the context in which they are used:

Context	The question that the noun answers	Preposition used	Examples
In time expressions	когда? (when?)	перед (before), за (during/at)	перед обедом (before lunch); за ужином (at dinner)
To indicate a location (real and in a figurative sense, such as dishes' names)	где? (where?)	под (under), над (above), за (at), перед (in front of), между (between), рядом с (next to)	под столом (under the table), над кроватью (above the bed), между креслом и диваном (between armchair and sofa), рыба запечённая под соусом (baked fish with sauce)

Context	The question that the noun answers	Preposition used	Examples
To indicate a joint action and mixed substances	с кем?/с чем? (with whom?/with what?)	с (with), вместе с (together with)	мы с дрúгом (my friend and I), кот с собáкой (a cat with a dog), кáша с молокóм (kasha (porridge) with milk)
To describe features of the appearance of a person or inanimate object	с чем? (with what?)	с (with)	дéвушка с длинными волосáми (a girl with long hair), мужчíна с борóдой (a man with a beard), дом с мезонíном (a house with a mezzanine)
To indicate manner of action	как? (how?)	с (with)	есть с appetítom (to eat with an appetite), говорíть с акцéнтом (to speak with an accent), писáть с ошíбками (to write with mistakes)
To indicate the purpose of an action	за чем? (what for?)	за (for/in order to)	идтí за хлéбом (to go to buy some bread)

Comments on the table

- Nouns in all cases, except the nominative, can be used in time expressions. The choice of the case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.
- Nouns in three cases (genitive, instrumental and prepositional) can be used to indicate location. The choice of the case depends on the noun's meaning and the preposition that governs the noun.
- Many Russian verbs that indicate a joint or reciprocal action require a noun in the instrumental case with the preposition **с** (with):  9.3.1.
- If a speaker is talking about a group of people that includes themselves, they say 'we with someone else': **Мы с дрúгом** идём в бар. (My friend and I go to a bar.) **Мы с родíтелями** ёдем на дáчу. (My parents and I go to the dacha.)
- An added substance is described by using the preposition **с** (with) and a noun in the instrumental case: кока-кóла **со льдóм** (coke with ice), вíски **с сóдовой** (whisky with soda), джин **с тóником** (gin and tonic), чай **с молокóм** (tea with milk), чай **с лимóном** (tea with lemon), кóфе **со слíвками** (coffee with cream).

С чем Вы пьёте чай? – Я пью чай **с сáхаром и с молокóм.**

How do you take your tea? – I take my tea **with sugar and milk.**

- In Russian, the preposition **с** (with) and a noun in the instrumental case is used when describing the fillings of pies, sandwiches, multiple-layer dishes, side dishes, type of soups etc:

пирóг **с ры́бой**

fish pie

бутербрóд **с сы́ром и помидóрами**

cheese and tomato sandwich

суп **с гри́бами**

mushroom soup

ры́ба **с карто́фелем фри**

fish and chips

- The following expressions, indicating the manner of an action, are frequently used:

с удовольствием	with pleasure
с гордостью	with pride
с трудом	with difficulty
с удивлением	with surprise
с интересом	with interest
с восторгом	with delight
с презрением	with contempt
- In popular speech, the expression that indicates the purpose of the action **за чем?** (what for) often replaces the more formal construction introduced by the conjunction **чтобы** (in order to): Он пошёл на почту, **чтобы получить посылку**. Он пошёл на почту **за посылкой**. (He went to the post office to get the parcel.) For sentences with **чтобы**, 🗣️ 29.2.5.

Level
2, 3

9.3.1 Verbs that take a noun in the instrumental case with a preposition

Several verbs require a noun in the instrumental case with a preposition.

👁️ As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the instrumental case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. Also, note that the use of prepositions may differ in Russian and English. A (nonexhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the instrumental case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same preposition and case: for example

встречаться с друзьями	to meet friends
встреча с друзьями	a/the meeting with friends
встречаясь с друзьями	meeting friends

The majority of reflexive verbs that indicate joint or reciprocal meaning take a noun in the instrumental case with the preposition с (with).

For more about reflexive verbs with reciprocal meaning, 🗣️ 23.2.

Verbs	Examples
встречаться/встретиться с кем? с чем? (to meet whom?/what?)	встречаться с друзьями (to meet friends)
видеться/увидеться с кем? (to see whom?)	увидеться с родителями (to see one's parents)
договариваться/договориться с кем? о чём? (to agree with whom? about what?)	договориться о встрече с партнёром (to agree about a meeting with a partner)
знакомиться/познакомиться с кем? с чем? (to introduce/to meet whom? what?)	познакомиться с новым сотрудником (to meet a new member of staff)

Verbs	Examples
здороваться/поздороваться с кем? (to say hello to whom?)	поздороваться с приятелем (to say hello to an acquaintance)
прощаться/попрощаться с кем? (to say goodbye to whom?)	попрощаться со знакомым (to say goodbye to an acquaintance)
разводиться/развестись с кем? (to divorce whom?)	развестись с женой (to divorce one's wife)
расставаться/расстаться с кем? (to separate from whom?)	расстаться с другом (to separate from a friend)
советоваться/посоветоваться с кем? (to get advice from whom?)	советоваться со специалистом (to get advice from an expert)
ссориться/поссориться с кем? (to quarrel with whom?)	ссориться с соседом (to quarrel with a neighbour)
мириться/помириться с кем? (to make peace with whom?)	мириться с другом (to make peace with a friend)
смиряться/смириться с чем? (to accept what?)	смириться с утратой (to accept a loss)
воевать с кем? (to fight whom?)	воевать с врагом (to fight the enemy)
играть/сыграть что?/во что? с кем? (to play what? with whom?)	играть в футбол с братом (to play football with a brother)

Holiday greetings

The verb **поздравлять/поздравить** followed by the preposition **с** (with) and a noun in the instrumental case functions as the equivalent of English holiday greetings. The verb is often omitted in these greetings:

Поздравляем с Новым годом!/С Новым годом!	Happy New Year!
Поздравляем с Рождеством!/С Рождеством!	Merry Christmas!
Поздравляем с Днём рождения!/С Днём рождения!	Happy birthday!
Поздравляем с праздником!/С праздником!	Happy holidays!

Some verbs take a noun in the instrumental case with the preposition **над** (over/at/on):

Verbs	Examples
смеяться/посмеяться над кем? над чем? (to laugh at whom? at what?)	смеяться над шуткой (to laugh at the joke)
думать/подумать над чем? (to think over what?)	думать над предложением (to think over the proposal)
работать/поработать над чем? (to work on what?)	работать над проектом (to work on the project)

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Put the nouns in brackets into the instrumental case. Add the appropriate preposition to match the sense of the sentence:

1. (Лондон) и (Москва) имётся ежедневное воздушное сообщение.
2. Нина пошла на рынок (овощи).
3. Принимайте лекарство (еда).
4. (Гордость) родители думают о сыне.
5. (Университет) стоит памятник его основателю.
6. Мы поздравили друзей (праздникаи).
7. Концерт организовали (открытое небо).
8. Учёные работали (статья) о климате.
9. Мы (коллеги) пошли в бар после работы.
10. Кока-колу (лёд) и джин (тоник), пожалуйста.

Level
2, 3

2. Match words from the two columns to make a phrase. Add the appropriate preposition:

Модель: мириться, друг, с – мириться с другом

- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 1. познакомиться | 1. угол |
| 2. кофе | 2. шутки |
| 3. пирог | 3. жена |
| 4. смеяться | 4. сосед |
| 5. развестись | 5. сливки |
| 6. спрятаться | 6. грибы |

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

3. Put the words in brackets into the instrumental case. Add a preposition, if appropriate.



Русская баня

1. Сегодня вечером господин Смирнов встречается (коллеги) из Англии. 2. Он первый раз в России и (удовольствие) знакомятся (традиции и обычаи) страны. 3. Он очень доволен (гостеприимство) своих русских коллег и восхищаются (красота) Москвы. 4. Сегодня он идёт (господин Смирнов) в баню. 5. Коллеги господина Смирнова (любопытство) слушали его рассказ о русской традиции париться (веник) в бане. 6. Перед (вход) в парную господин Смирнов советует накрыть голову (полотенце) и показывает, как пользоваться (веник). 7. Сначала надо побить (веник) руки и ноги, а потом – спину. 8. Если у вас есть проблемы (здоровье), баня вылечит все болезни (пар). 9. После бани русские пьют чай (лимон, мёд, варенье). 10. К чаю подаёт пироги (грибы, рыба, мясо, яблоки, ягоды). Как говорят в России: «С лёгким паром!».

Словарь:

париться – to sweat (as in steam bath)

веник – besom

парная – steam room

С лёгким паром! – idiom: Enjoy your steam bath!

10 Nouns: prepositional case

For the concept of the six-case system and the principles of noun declension, 📖 4.

The prepositional case is one of the six Russian cases. This chapter provides a summary of noun endings in the prepositional case and explains its grammatical role.

Level
1, 2

10.1 Summary table of regular noun endings in the prepositional case

Singular nouns	All nouns, except those ending with -ий/-ия/-ие and feminine nouns ending with ь	-е-у (📖 10.1.1)
	Nouns ending with -ий/-ия/-ие and feminine nouns ending with ь	-и
Plural nouns	Hard stem and stem ending with г, к, х, ж, ш, щ, -ч and ц	-ах
	Soft stem	-ях

Comments on the table

- Some nouns have so-called 'fleeting' vowels **о/е/ѐ** in the final syllable in any case other than in the final syllable of the nominative singular: **день** – **дне** (day), **отец** – **отце́** (father), **угол** – **углу́** (corner). The nouns **ма́ть** (mother) and **до́чь** (daughter) have the suffix **-ер-** inserted in all cases except the accusative: **ма́тери, до́чери**. The change **ѐ/ь** occurs in the noun **ле́д/льду́** (ice): **хокке́й на льду́** (ice hockey). For the fleeting vowels, 📖 4.5.
- For hard and soft endings and the spelling rules, 📖 1.3 and 1.4.

Level
1, 2

10.1.1 Irregular noun endings

Several masculine nouns in the singular have, in the prepositional case, an irregular ending **-у́/-ю́** after the prepositions **в** (in/at) and **на** (on/at). The same nouns used with any other prepositions in the prepositional case take the regular endings as described above. The most common nouns with irregular endings are given below. Compare:

Where are you?	What are you thinking (about?)
на полу́ (on the floor)	о по́ле (about the floor)
на/в углу́ (on/in the corner)	об углу́ (about the corner)

на/в шкафу́ (on/in the cupboard)	о шка́фе (about the cupboard)
в саду́ (in the garden)	о са́де (about the garden)
в лесу́ (in the forest)	о ле́се (about the forest)
на снегу́ (in the snow)	о сне́ге (about the snow)
на берегу́ (on the shore)	о бе́реге (about the shore)
на мосту́ (on the bridge)	о мосте́ (about the bridge)
в порту́ (at/in the port)	о пор́те (about the port)
в аэропорту́ at/in the airport)	об аэропор́те (about the airport)
в бою́ (in the fight/battle)	о бо́е (about the fight/battle)
в краю́ (on the edge/in the region)	о кра́е (about the edge/the region)
в носу́ (in the nose)	о но́се (about the nose)
в глазу́ (in the eye)	о гла́зе (about the eye)
в году́ (in a/the year)	о го́де (about a/the year)


Level
1, 2

10.2 The grammatical roles of the prepositional case


The prepositional case can only be used with prepositions. The main role of the prepositional case, in a sentence or phrase, is to indicate location. The noun in the prepositional case answers the question **где?** (where?) and is used with the prepositions **в** (in) or **на** (on/at). The prepositional case is one of three cases that can indicate location. Nouns in the other two cases, instrumental and genitive, take prepositions other than **в** (in) and **на** (on/at).

Level
1, 2

10.2.1 Using the prepositions **в** (in/at) and **на** (on/at)

 The Russian equivalents of the English prepositions *in*, *at* and *on* do not fully coincide. The vowel **о** is sometimes added to the preposition **в** to ease pronunciation if the preposition is attached to a noun starting with two or more consonants.

The preposition в (in/at) is used to indicate:	The preposition на (on/at) is used to indicate:
Being inside: в сумке (in a bag), в лифте (in a lift)	Being on the surface: на столе́ (on the table), на земле́ (on land)
Designated space: в здании (in a building), в лесу́ (in the woods), в парке (in a park), в саду́ (in the garden), во дворе́ (in the yard)	Outdoors location such as street, square, avenue, junction, field, road, path, motorway etc.: на улице́ (on the street), на шоссе́ (on the motorway)

Geographical locations: в Америке (in America – a continent/country), в Лондоне (in London – a city/town), в деревне Лесниково (in Lesnikovo village – a village/settlement), в Московском районе (in Moscow district)	Location on the shore/on the bank of a river, lake, sea, ocean: на берегу (on the shore), на Байкале (on Lake Baikal) на Кюбе (on islands)
Being a part of a group: в партии (in the party), в университете (at university), в школе (at school), в классе (in class)	The points of the compass: на севере (in the north), на юге (in the south), на востоке (in the east), на западе (in the west)
Also: в горах (in the mountains), в море (in the sea)	Attending an event: на опере (at the opera), на выставке (at an exhibition), на уроке (at a lesson)
 Exceptions (location at the following places): на вокзале (at/in the railway station), на станции (in the station), на почте (at/in the post office), на фабрике/на заводе (at/in factory) на стадионе (at/in the stadium), на рынке (at/in the market), на даче (at/in the country house), на/в кухне (in the kitchen), на этаже (on a floor), на флоте (in the navy), на Урале (in the Urals), на Кавказе (in the Caucasus), на Родине (in the Motherland)	

 Use of the prepositions **в** and **на** follows the same principles in the accusative and prepositional cases: 🗨️ 6.3.1.1.

Level
1, 2

10.3 Other roles of the prepositional case

10.3.1 Use of the prepositional case in time expressions

The prepositional case can be used to indicate time. A noun in the prepositional case, in this context, can answer the questions **когда** (when?), **в каком году** (what year?) **в каком месяце** (what month?), **на какой неделе** (what week?):

- Year (with the preposition **в**): **в прошлом году** (last year), **в этом году** (this year), **в следующем году** (next year), **в 2011 году** (in 2011).
- Month (with the preposition **в**): **в январé** (in January), **в сентябрé** (in September).
- Week (with the preposition **на**): **на прошлой неделе** (last week), **на этой неделе** (this week), **на следующей неделе** (next week).
- The political regime of the times (with the preposition **при**): **при советской власти** (in Soviet times), **при Петре Великом** (in Peter the Great's times).

Level
1, 2

10.3.2 Use of the prepositional case in prepositional constructions

The prepositional case can:

- Indicate the noun taking the preposition **о/об** (about): Он мечтáет **о свидáнии**. (He is **thinking about a date**.) Фильм **об инопланетянах**. (The film is **about**

aliens.) The consonant **б** is sometimes added to the preposition **о** to ease pronunciation if the preposition is followed by a noun starting with a vowel. The noun in the prepositional case, in this context, answers the questions **о чём?** (about what?) **о ком?** (about whom?). The preposition **про** (about) has the same meaning as the preposition **о**. The preposition **про** governs the noun in the accusative case and is common in popular speech: 📖 6 and 6.3.3

- Indicate means of transport (with the preposition **на**): **ехать на поезде** (to go by train), **лететь на самолёте** (to go by plane). The noun in the prepositional case, in this context, answers the question **на чём?** (by what?): 📖 9.2.1.

Level
2, 3

10.4 Verbs that require the prepositional case

Several verbs require the prepositional case.

👁️ As Russian sentences have flexible word order, a noun or pronoun in the prepositional case does not always appear immediately after the verb that requires that case. Furthermore, the same verb can take several different cases. Also, note that the use of prepositions may differ in Russian and English. A (nonexhaustive) list of the most frequently occurring verbs that take the prepositional case is given below, and should be memorised. In the list, both verbal aspects are provided, if both aspects are used in this context; the imperfective aspect appears first, and then the perfective. Note that all words derived or formed from the listed verbs (nouns, participles, gerunds) normally require the same preposition and case: for example

говорить о проблеме	to speak about the problem
разговор о проблеме	conversation about the problem
говоря о проблеме	speaking about the problem.

Verbs that are followed by the preposition *о* and a noun or personal pronoun in the prepositional case:

Verbs	Examples
говорить/сказать о чём? о ком? кому? (to say/to tell/to speak about what? about whom? to whom?)	сказать о проблеме полицейскому (to tell a policeman about the problem)
рассказывать/рассказать о чём? о ком? кому? (to tell about what? about whom? to whom?)	рассказать о клоунах ребёнку (to tell a child about clowns)
спрашивать/спросить о чём? о ком? кого? (to ask whom? about what? about whom?)	спросить бабушку о её здоровье (to ask grandmother about her health)
узнавать/узнать о чём? о ком? у кого? от кого? (to learn about what? about whom? from whom?)	узнать о собрании от секретаря/у секретаря (to learn about a meeting from the secretary)
слышать/услышать о чём? о ком? от кого? откуда? (to hear about what? about whom? from whom? from where?)	услышать о происшествии из газет (to hear about the incident from the newspapers)

Verbs	Examples
сообщать/сообщить о чём? о ком? кому? (to inform about what? about whom? to whom?)	сообщить о концерте друзьям (to inform friends about the concert)
объявлять/объявить о чём? о ком? кому? (to announce about what? about whom? to whom?)	объявить об экскурсии туристам (to announce an excursion to the tourists)
думать/подумать о чём? о ком? (to think about what? about whom?)	думать об отпуске (to think about a holiday)
беспокоиться о чём? о ком? (to be worried/anxious about what? about whom?)	беспокоиться о здоровье (to be worried about one's health)
писать/написать что? о чём? о ком? кому? (to write what? about what? about whom? to whom?)	написать о проекте начальнику (to write about the project to the boss)
читать/прочитать что? о чём? о ком? кому? (to read what? about what? about whom? to whom?)	прочитать книгу о природе (to read a book about nature)
помнить/вспоминать/вспомнить что? кого? о чём? о ком? (to remember what? whom? about what? about whom?)	помнить о друге (to remember about a friend), вспомнить о встрече (to remember about the meeting)
забывать/забыть что? о чём? о ком? (to forget what? about what? about whom?)	забыть о собрании (to forget about a meeting)
напоминать/напомнить о чём? о ком? кому? (to remind about what? about whom? to whom?)	напомнить об экзамене студентам (to remind students about the examination)
мечтать о чём? о ком? (to dream about what? about whom?)	мечтать о поездке (to dream about a trip)
петь/спеть о чём? о ком? кому? (to sing about what? about whom? to whom?)	петь о любви подружке (to sing about love to a girlfriend)

Verbs that are followed by the preposition *в* and a noun or personal pronoun in the prepositional case:

Verbs	Examples
сомневаться в чём? в ком? (to doubt what? whom?)	сомневаться в результате (to doubt the result)
нуждаться в чём? в ком? (to be in need of what? whom?)	нуждаться в поддержке (to be in need of support)

Verbs	Examples
убежда́ть/убеди́ть кого́? в чём? (to convince whom? of what?)	убеди́ть дру́га в егó оши́бке (to convince a friend of his mistake)
обвиня́ть/обвини́ть кого́? в чём? (to accuse whom? of what?)	обвини́ть дикта́тора в преступле́ниях (to accuse a dictator of crimes)
подозрева́ть кого́? в чём? (to suspect whom? of what?)	подозрева́ть преступни́ка во лжи́ (to suspect a criminal of lying)
отказа́ывать/отказа́ть в чём? кому́? (to refuse/to deny what? to whom?)	отказа́ть в по́мощи незнако́мцу (to refuse to help a stranger)
уча́ствовать в чём? (to participate in what?)	уча́ствовать в конфе́ренции (to participate in a conference)

The verb *to get married* in Russian:

☞ There are two expressions that mean *to get married*, one for a man and the other for a woman. The expression **жени́ться на ком?** (followed by the prepositional case) indicates that it is a man who gets married. The expression **выходи́ть/вы́йти за́муж за кого́?** (followed by the accusative case) indicates that it is a woman who gets married.

Упражне́ния

Level
1, 2

1. Answer the questions, using the words in brackets in the correct form with the appropriate preposition:

1. Где пальто́? (шкаф).
2. Где бизне́смен? (о́фис).
3. Где студе́нт? (ле́кция).
4. Где тури́ст? (сад).
5. Где Арха́нгельск? (се́вер).
6. Где Нью-Йо́рк? (Аме́рика).

Level
1, 2

2. Answer the the questions, using the words in brackets in the correct form with the appropriate preposition:

A. О чём

1. мечта́ет ро́бот? (ко́смос).
2. спра́шивает Э́лла? (общежи́тие).

B. О ком

1. ду́мает доче́? (ма́ть).
2. пи́шет исто́рик? (ца́рь).

C. На чём

1. Тури́сты лета́т в Кры́м? (самолёт)
2. Ды́ма е́дет в уни́верситет? (велосипе́д)

Level
2, 3

3. Put the nouns in brackets into the prepositional case. Add the appropriate preposition.

1. ... (Горбачёв) нача́лась перестро́йка.
2. ... 1945-ом (год) зако́нчилась второ́я мирова́я война́.
3. У Верони́ки день рожде́ния ... (окта́брь).

4. Правительство объявило ... (меры) против терроризма.
5. Банк отказал Марии ... (кредит).
6. Больной нуждается ... (поддержка) семьи.
7. Трубадуры (minstrels) пели серенады ... (любовь).
8. Депутат забыл ... (заседание).

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

4. Put the words in brackets into the prepositional case.



Сегодня на (улицы) Москвы проводят социологический опрос «О (что) мечтает молодёжь?». Господин Смирнов согласился заполнить анкету:

Вопросы анкеты	
1. Вы часто думаете о (семья, дом, дети, родители, родственники)?	6. Вы беспокоитесь о своём (здоровье)?
2. Вы рассказываете о своих (проблемы, страхи, фобии) близким?	7. Вы любите читать о (путешествия, природа)?
3. Вы мечтаете о (богатство, слава, почёт, уважение, покупка) новой иномарки?	8. Вы слушаете программы о (политика и политики)?
4. Вы думаете о (повышение) по службе?	9. Вы разговариваете с друзьями о (погода)?
5. Вы любите смотреть фильмы об (инопланетяне)?	10. Вы часто забываете о важных (встречи)?

11 Adjectives

Level
1, 2, 3

Adjectives are words that describe a noun. This is called *attributive* use. In a sentence or phrase, an adjective usually precedes the noun it qualifies: **русская** грамматика (**Russian** grammar), **здоровый и счастливый** человек (**healthy and happy** person). However, in a sentence, the adjective can also follow the noun it qualifies: Этот костюм, **такой дорогой и красивый**, я решил не надевать. (I have decided not to wear this suit **that is so expensive and smart**.)

Adjectives can also be used as a core part of a predicate. If an adjective is used as a predicate it describes the subject of the sentence. The subject and adjective are connected by the verb **быть** (to be) or by any other verb with a meaning similar to **быть** (☞ 16.2). This is called *predicative* use: Они **были здоровыми и счастливыми**. (They **were healthy and happy**.)

Adjectives can be divided into three groups – *qualitative*, *possessive* and *relational*. The largest group of adjectives (*qualitative*) describes categories such as colour, size, taste, temperature, abstract qualities: **красный** (red), **маленький** (small), **горячий** (hot). Qualitative adjectives can have *long* and *short* forms as well as *comparative* and *superlative* forms. Many *adverbs* are derived from these adjectives (☞ 13).

The smaller *possessive* and *relational* groups of adjective can have only a long form, and they do not form *comparatives* or *superlatives*. *Adverbs* are not derived from these groups.

Relational adjectives describe the material that an object is made of, content or ingredients, time, nationality or origins: **металлический** (metallic), **зимний** спорт (winter sport), **Московский** городской совет (Moscow City Council).

Possessive adjectives indicate: the user of the object: **детский** сад (children's nursery); ownership: **мамина** шуба (mother's fur coat).

Long adjectives must show *agreement* with the *noun* they qualify, in *gender*, *number* and *case*. For example:

Я читаю английскую газету и
русский журнал.

I read an English-language newspaper
and a Russian magazine

The adjective английскую (English) is in the *feminine, singular, accusative case*, because it describes a *feminine singular noun in the accusative case* – газету. The adjective русский (Russian) is in the *masculine, singular, accusative case*, because it describes a *masculine singular noun in the accusative case* – журнал.

Short adjectives are used only as predicates. They agree with the subject of the sentence in number and gender: На севере но́чи (plural) темны́ (plural) и длинны́ (plural). On the north nights are dark and long. Маленький котёнок (masculine singular) был беспомощен (masculine singular). A little kitten was helpless.

Level
1, 2

11.1 Declension

Only long-form adjectives decline. The *masculine* and *neuter* adjectives follow the same pattern; *feminine* adjectives follow a different pattern. The *plural* form includes all genders. The declension of adjectives is shown in the summary tables below. They are arranged according to *hard* or *soft endings* and the influence of the spelling rules: 📖 1.3–1.4.

Level
1, 2

11.1.1 Adjectives with hard endings

Adjectives with hard endings that are stressed have a dictionary form ending with **-ой**. Adjectives with hard endings that are not stressed have a dictionary form ending with **-ый**; for example: **интересный** (interesting), **зубной** (dental).

For the declension of animate and inanimate nouns, 📖 4.2.1.1 and 4.3.

Summary Table 11.1

Case	Singular adjectives			Plural adjectives (all genders)
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	
N	-ый интересный	-ое интересное	-ая интересная	-ые интересные
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-ую	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	интересного (animate) интересный (inanimate)	интересное	интересную	интересных (animate) интересные (inanimate)
G	-ого интересного	-ого интересного	-ой интересной	-ых интересных
D	-ому интересному	-ому интересному	-ой интересной	-ым интересным
I	-ым интересным	-ым интересным	-ой интересной	-ыми интересными
P	-ом интересном	-ом интересном	-ой интересной	-ых интересных

For example:

Мы видели интересных людей
(animate, plural, accusative).
Мы ходили к зубному врачу
(dative, singular, masculine).

We saw interesting people.

We went to the dentist.

Level
1, 2

11.1.2 Adjectives with soft endings

Adjectives with the soft endings have a dictionary form that ends with **-ий**. For example: **лётный** (summer).

Summary Table 11.II

Case	Singular adjectives			Plural adjectives (all genders)
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	
N	-ий лётный	-ее лётнее	-ья лётняя	-ие лётние
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-юю	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	лётного (animate) лётный (inanimate)	лётнее	лётнюю	лётных (animate) лётние (inanimate)
G	-его лётного	-его лётного	-ей лётней	-их лётных
D	-ему лётному	-ему лётному	-ей лётней	-им лётним
I	-им лётним	-им лётним	-ей лётней	-ими лётними
P	-ем лётнем	-ем лётнем	-ей лётней	-их лётных

For example:


Студенты мечтают о лётных каникулах
(plural, prepositional).

The students are dreaming of
their summer holidays.

Level
1, 2

11.1.3 Adjectives that are affected by spelling rules

For the spelling rules,  1.3

11.1.3.1 Adjectives that have stems ending in **к, г, х, ш, щ, ж** and **ч** are affected by the spelling rules ( 1.3). The rules explain which letters cannot appear after these consonants. In general, the adjectives that are affected by the spelling rules (those with a dictionary form ending with **-ий** or **-ой**, for example: **глубокий** (deep), **большой** (big)) follow the modified pattern of adjectives with hard endings. This pattern is called the 'mixed' declension.

Summary Table 11.III

Case	Singular adjectives			Plural adjectives (all genders)
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	
N	-ий глубо кий	-ое глубо кое	-ая глубо кая	-ие глубо кие
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-ую	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	глубо кого (animate) глубо кий (inanimate)	глубо кое	глубо кую	глубо ких (animate) глубо кие (inanimate)
G	-ого глубо кого	-ого глубо кого	-ой глубо кой	-их глубо ких
D	-ому глубо кому	-ому глубо кому	-ой глубо кой	-им глубо ким
I	-им глубо ким	-им глубо ким	-ой глубо кой	-ими глубо кими
P	-ом глубо ком	-ом глубо ком	-ой глубо кой	-их глубо ких

For example:

Мы читаём краси**в**ые афиши (plural accusative)

Большо**г**о театра (singular, masculine, genitive).

We are reading
beautiful posters
of the Bolshoi theatre.

11.1.3.2 Adjectives with stems ending in **ж, ч, ш** and **щ** are affected by spelling rule 2 (☞ 1.3.2). The rule explains the choice between stressed letter **-о** and unstressed letter **-е** after these consonants.

Summary Table 11.IV

Case	Singular adjectives			Plural adjectives (all genders)
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	
N	-ий/-ой хоро ший / большо й	-ее (if unstressed) хоро шее -ёе (if stressed) большо ёе	-ая хоро шая / больша я	-ие хоро шие / большо ие
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-ую	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun

	хоро́шего/ большо́го (animate) хоро́ший/ большо́й (inanimate)	-еe (if unstressed) хоро́шее -оe (if stressed) большо́е	хоро́шую	хоро́ших/ большо́их (animate) хоро́шие/ большо́ие (inanimate)
G	-его (if unstressed) хоро́шего -о́го (if stressed) большо́го	-его (if unstressed) хоро́шего -о́го (if stressed) большо́го	-ей (if unstressed) хоро́шей -о́й (if stressed) большо́й	-их хоро́ших/ большо́их
D	-ему (if unstressed) хоро́шему -о́му (if stressed) большо́му	-ему (if unstressed) хоро́шему -о́му (if stressed) большо́му	-ей (if unstressed) хоро́шей -о́й (if stressed) большо́й	-им хоро́шим/ большо́им
I	-им хоро́шим/ большо́им	-им хоро́шим/ большо́им	-ей (if unstressed) хоро́шей -о́й (if stressed) большо́й	-ими хоро́шими/ большо́ими
P	-ем (if unstressed) хоро́шем -о́м (if stressed) большо́м	-ем (if unstressed) хоро́шем -о́м (if stressed) большо́м	-ей (if unstressed) хоро́шей -о́й (if stressed) большо́й	-их хоро́ших/ большо́их

For example:

Мы подар́или хоро́шему дру́гу (masculine, singular, dative) айпо́д с большо́й па́мятью (feminine, singular, instrumental). We gave our good friend an iPod with a large memory.

Level
3

11.1.4 Declension of possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives (introduction to this chapter) are formed from nouns by adding the suffixes **-ин-**, **-ов-** or **-ий-**. Possessive adjectives follow the pronominal declension of a word like наш *our* (14.4.1). The endings look like those of both nouns and adjectives. Summary Tables 11.V and 11.VI give examples of this pattern:

Summary Table 11.V

Case	Singular adjectives			Plural adjectives (all genders)
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	
N	no ending ма́мин/отцо́в	-о ма́мино/ отцо́во	-а ма́мина/ отцо́ва	-ы ма́мины/отцо́вы
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-у	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	ма́мино го /отцо́ва (animate) ма́мин/отцо́в (inanimate)	ма́мино/ отцо́во	ма́мину/ отцо́ву	ма́ми ных /отцо́ вых (animate) ма́ми ны /отцо́ вы (inanimate)
G	-ого ма́мино го /отцо́ва	-ого ма́мино го / отцо́ва	-ой ма́ми ной / отцо́во й	-ых ма́ми ных /отцо́ вых
D	-ому ма́ми ному /отцо́ву	-ому ма́ми ному / отцо́ву	-ой ма́ми ной / отцо́во й	-ым ма́ми ным /отцо́ вым
I	-ым ма́ми ным /отцо́ вым	-ым ма́ми ным / отцо́ вым	-ой ма́ми ной / отцо́во й	-ыми ма́ми ными /отцо́ выми
P	-ом ма́ми ном /отцо́во м	-ом ма́ми ном / отцо́во м	-ой ма́ми ной / отцо́во й	-ых ма́ми ных /отцо́ вых

Summary Table 11.VI

Case	Singular adjectives			Plural adjectives (all genders)
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	
N	-ий соба́ чий	-е соба́ чье	-я соба́ чья	-и соба́ чьи
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-ю	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun

	соба́чьего (animate) соба́чий (inanimate)	соба́чье	соба́чью	соба́чьих (animate) соба́чьи (inanimate)
G	-его соба́чьего	-его соба́чьего	-ей соба́чьей	-их соба́чьих
D	-ему соба́чьему	-ему соба́чьему	-ей соба́чьей	-им соба́чьим
I	-им соба́чьим	-им соба́чьим	-ей соба́чьей	-ими соба́чьими
P	-ем соба́чьем	-ем соба́чьем	-ей соба́чьей	-их соба́чьих

For example:

На столе́ мно́го Та́ниных кни́г (genitive plural).

There are many of Tanya's books on the table.

На семина́ре мы говори́ли о «Соба́чьем се́рдце»
(neuter, singular, prepositional) Булга́кова.

At the seminar we discussed *Heart of a Dog* by Bulgakov.

Level
1, 2

11.2 Adjectives used as nouns

Several nouns are derived from adjectival phrases, for example, **сла́дкое блю́до** (sweet dessert), **ва́нная ко́мната** (bathroom). In a sentence these adjectives function as independent nouns. However, they still decline as adjectives. The noun that was originally a core part of the adjectival phrase is left unsaid. For example:

Они́ пришл́и в го́сти с моро́женым (neuter, singular, instrumental). They brought ice cream with them.

Зайди́ в бу́лочную (feminine, singular, accusative), пожа́луйста. Could you please pop into the bakery.

The most common adjectives that are used as nouns are listed below:

сла́дкое	sweet dessert	пивна́я	pub/bar
пе́рвое	starter	пра́чечная	laundry
второ́е	main course	на́бережная	embankment
тре́тье	dessert	заку́сочная	snack bar
моро́женое	ice cream	го́рничная	maid
гости́ная	sitting room	сбо́рная	sports team
ва́нная	bathroom	сто́ловая	dining room/canteen
бу́лочная	bakery	бли́нная	pancake place

Упражнения

Level
1

1. Complete the sentences with adjectives, from the list below, in the correct form. The letters in brackets indicate the case:

важные, новые, русские народные, спортивный, серьёзные, зубной, китайский.

1. Я не знаю соседей. (A)
2. Адвокат встретился с клиентами. (I)
3. В этом магазине продают одежду. (A)
4. Нам надо идти к врачу. (D)
5. Вы слышали о ресторане в центре города? (P)
6. В мире много проблем. (G)
7. Туристам нравятся песни. (N)

Level
2, 3

2. Complete the sentences by putting the phrases in brackets into the correct form.

1. Школьники занимаются (художественная гимнастика) в (дѣтская спортивная школа).
2. Он родился в (маленькая деревня) недалеко от (старинный русский город).
3. У Нины (огромная квартира) с (большие окна) в (многоэтажное здание).
4. Он любит (современная одежда).
5. (Близкие родственники) подарили Мише (модный дорогой айпад (iPod)).
6. На (вечерний концерт) (популярная рок-группа) не было (свободные места).

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

3. Complete the story by putting the phrases in brackets into the appropriate form.



Дача семьи Смирновых

1. У семьи Смирновых, как и у большинства (русские семьи), есть дача в (маленькая деревня) недалеко от Москвы. 2. Смирновы называют этот (старый деревенский дом) (родовое гнездо). 3. Все поколения Смирновых любят собираться в (небольшой уютный двухэтажный дом) с (резное деревянное крыльцо), (огромный светлый чердак) и (тёмный холодный погреб). 4. Этот дом построил дедушка господина Смирнова в начале (прошлый век). 5. Дом окружён кустами (белая сирень), (чёрная смородина) и (садовая малина). 6. Поднявшись по (скрипучие ступеньки) крыльца, вы попадёте в (длинный узкий) коридор. 7. Коридор приведёт вас в (просторная комната) с (настоящая русская печь) в углу. 8. Раньше в таких печах не только готовили (вкусные обеды) и пекли (румяные пироги), но и мылись. 9. А наверху (русская печь) спали. 10. У (русская печь) стоит (большой деревянный стол), накрытый (белая льняная скатерть). 11. На столе всегда шумит (старый медный самовар). 12. Смирновы любят собираться за (большой стол) (тёплые летние, и холодные зимние вечера) за чаем с (горячие вкусные пироги).

12 Adjectives: comparative, superlative and short- and long- form adjectives

Level
1, 2

12.1 Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives

Only *qualitative* adjectives (👁️ 11) can form *comparative* and *superlative* forms. For example:

Москва-река – **длинная**, река Волга – **длиннее**, река Енисей – **самая длинная**. The river Moskva is *long*, but the river Volga is *longer* (*comparative*), the river Yenisey is the *longest* (*superlative*).

12.2 Formation of the comparative forms of adjectives

There are two ways to form the comparative:

- The simple (one-word) comparative with an added suffix (👁️ 12.2.1)
- The compound comparative (👁️ 12.2.2)

Both forms of comparatives are common in informal and formal speech and are used in a similar way. Simple comparatives are non-declinable. The compound comparative consists of a non-declinable word and a declinable word (👁️ 12.2.2).

12.2.1 Formation of the simple comparative

Simple comparatives are formed by adding one of the suffixes **-e** or **-ee** to the adjective's stem. The suffix **-e** is added to stems ending in **г, к, х, д, т, ст, з** and, to stems of some irregular adjectives. Comparatives that do not fit this pattern are formed by adding the suffix **-ee**.

The stress of the comparatives has a distinctive pattern:

- The stress never falls on the suffix **-e**: **ши́ре** (wider).
- The stress in comparatives ending with **-ee** (except for polysyllabic comparatives) falls on the first letter of the suffix **-ee**: **до́брее** (kinder).
- The stress in polysyllabic comparatives of three or more syllables ending with **-ee** always falls on the stem: **инте́реснее** (more interesting).

To form the simple comparative:

- Drop the ending of the adjective (last two letters): **у́мный** (clever), **молодо́й** (young).
- Add the suffix **-ee** or **-e** to the stem of the adjective: **умне́е** (cleverer), **моло́же** (younger).

When adding the suffix **-e** the following consonant changes occur in the stem ending:

Г-->Ж	З-->Ж	СТ-->Щ	К-->Ч
Д-->Ж	Х-->Ш		Т-->Ч

The list below includes the most frequently used comparatives formed with the suffix **-e**, including some irregular comparatives:

Dictionary form of the adjective	Comparative
большой (big)	больше
маленький (small)	меньше
молодой (young)	молже
старый (old)	старше
высокий tall)	выше
низкий (low)	ниже
плохой (bad)	хуже
хороший (good)	лучше
широкий (wide)	шире
узкий (narrow)	уже
далёкий (far)	дальше
тихий (quiet, silent)	тише
лёгкий (light)	легче
короткий (short)	короче
громкий (loud)	громче
простой (simple)	проще
строгий (strict)	строже
близкий (near)	ближе
богатый (rich)	богаче
дорогой (dear/expensive)	дороже
дешёвый (cheap)	дешевле
толстый (fat)	толще
тонкий (thin)	тоньше

12.2.2 Formation of the compound comparative

The compound comparative is formed by adding the non-declinable words **более** (more) or **меньше** (less) to the dictionary form of the adjective:

Лекция сегодня более интересная .	Today's lecture is more interesting.
Это более уютный дом.	This is a more cosy/cosier house.
Это меньше уютный дом.	This is a less cosy house.

Although the words **более** (more) and **мéнее** (less) do not decline, the adjective that forms the second part of the compound comparative agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies:

В э́тот раз мы остано́вились в **более** (non-declinable) дешёвой гостинице (feminine, singular, prepositional). This time we stayed in a cheaper hotel.

Level
1, 2

12.3 Using the comparatives

The comparative construction is introduced by the conjunction **чем** (than). The noun introduced by **чем** is always used in the nominative case (☞ 5.3):

Я **моло́же, чем** Ви́ктор и Мари́я (nominative). I am younger than Victor and Maria.

If **чем** (than) is omitted, the noun(s) in the comparative construction is (are) used in the genitive case (☞ 7.2.4):

Я **моло́же** Ви́ктора и Мари́и (genitive). I am younger than Victor and Maria.

Level
3

To make the comparison precise, some additional information can be added to the comparative phrase, with:

- Expressions of quantity with numerals:

Я моло́же его **на пять** (accusative) **лет** (genitive). I am 5 years younger than him.

Сестра́ **двумя́** **года́ми** (instrumental) ста́рше меня́. My sister is 2 years older than me.

Она́ **в три** (accusative) **ра́за** (genitive) ста́рше меня́. She is three times as old as me.

- The words **горáздо**, **намно́го** (much) followed by the comparative:

О́зеро Байка́л **намно́го** **глуб́же** о́зера Лох-Несс. Lake Baikal is much deeper than Loch Ness.

Level
1, 2

12.4 The superlative form of the adjective

12.4.1 Formation of the superlative form of the adjective

There are two ways to form the superlative by using:

- The compound superlative (☞ 12.4.1.1–3)
- The simple (one-word) superlative with an added suffix or prefix (☞ 12.4.2)

Level
1, 2

12.4.1.1 The compound superlative with pronoun **са́мый** (the most)

The compound superlative is the most common form of superlative. It is used in formal and informal speech. It is formed by adding the pronoun **са́мый** (the most) to the dictionary form of the adjective. For example:

Са́мый тала́нтливый the most talented

Са́мый глубо́кий the deepest

Both parts of the compound superlative, the pronoun **са́мый** and the adjective, agree in gender, number and case with the noun they qualify. For example:

В э́той кни́ге расска́зывается о са́мых **древ́них** **города́х** (plural prepositional) **ми́ра**. In this book are described the most ancient cities in the world.

Мы познакомились с **са́мым мо́дным** писателем (masculine, singular, instrumental). writer. We met the most fashionable

In informal speech, the pronoun **са́мый** can be omitted if it is followed by the declining adjectives **лу́чший** (the best) and **ху́дший** (the worst) (12.4.2):

Э́то на́ша (са́мая) лу́чшая студэ́нтка. This is our best student.
Э́то (са́мый) ху́дший ба́р в го́роде. This is the worst bar in town.

12.4.1.2 The compound superlative with **наибóлее** (the most) and **наимéнее** (the least)

In writing **са́мый** is often replaced by the non-declinable words **наибóлее** (the most) and **наимéнее** (the least):

Наимéнее талáнтливый the least talented

Наибóлее глубо́кий the deepest

Although the word **наибóлее** does not decline, the adjective in this superlative construction agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies:

Прошла́ встре́ча с **наибóлее** талáнтливы́ми спортсме́нами (plural instrumental). A meeting was held with the most talented sportsmen.

Level
2, 3

12.4.1.3 The compound superlative with the pronoun **все** (all)

The compound superlative can also be formed by using the comparative form of the adjective and the pronoun **все** (all) in the genitive case **всех** (of all):

талáнтливе́е **всех** most talented

глуб́же **всех** the deepest

This superlative does not decline.

Level
3

12.4.2 Formation of the simple superlative

Simple superlatives are common in writing. They can be formed:

- By adding the suffix **-ейш-** or **-айш-** to the stem of the adjective. The suffix **-айш-** is added to a stem that ends with **г, к, х**. The suffix **-ейш-** is used for the rest of the adjectives: **ближа́йший** (the nearest), **нове́йший** (the newest). When adding the suffix **-айш-** the last consonant of the stem is modified: **г-->ж, к-->ч, х-->ш**.
- By adding the prefix **наи-** to the simple superlative with suffixes **-ейш-** or **-айш-**: **наикрасиве́йший** (the most beautiful)

Recently, a new way of forming superlatives has been adopted in spoken Russian.

This is by adding the Anglicism **су́пер** (super) to the adjective:

У суперму́жчины до́лжен бы́ть **су́пер** чистый автобому́биль. Superman must have a super-clean car.

There is one further way of forming the superlative adjective. The following declinable adjectives are used as superlatives:

лу́чший the best **ху́дший** the worst
наимéньший the smallest **наибо́льший** the biggest


All simple superlative forms decline and agree in gender, number and case with the noun they qualify:

На конфе́ренции говори́ли о **нове́йших, суперсло́жных техноло́гиях** (plural, prepositional). At the conference they discussed the newest super-complicated technologies.

Level
2, 3

12.5 Long and short forms of adjectives

For long-form adjectives,  11.


Only *qualitative* adjectives ( 11) can have a *short* form. Short-form adjectives do not decline. They have only number and gender categories.

12.5.1 Formation of short-form adjectives

To form the short-form adjective from the long-form adjective:

- Drop the ending of the long-form of adjective (last two letters): **молодой** (young), **нужный** (necessary/need).
- Add nothing for the masculine form, add **-а** for the feminine form, add **-о** for the neuter form, add **-ы** for the plural:

мóлод (m), молодá (f), мóлодо (n), мóлоды (pl)
нúжен (m), нужнá (f), нúжно (n), нужнý (pl)


- If the stem has two consonants at the end, then, in the masculine form, a ‘fleeting’ vowel is inserted between the consonants ( 4.5): нúжен (m).

 Stress in the feminine and plural short-form adjectives often moves from stem to ending.

Level
1, 2

12.6 Using short-form adjectives

Short-form adjectives are used as a core element of a predicate and they do not decline. They describe the subject of the sentence and agree in gender and number with the subject. They are most common in writing. A few short-form adjectives, such as нúжен/нужнá/нúжно/нужнý (need), бóлен/больнá/больнý (sick/ill), are also common in everyday speech.

The subject and the adjective are connected by the verb **быть** (to be) or by any other verbs that have a similar meaning to **быть** ( 16.2). **Быть** is omitted in the present tense, but is present in the past and future tenses. In the past and present tenses **быть** agrees in gender and number with both the short-form adjective and the subject of the sentence. For example:

Past tense:

Онí (pl) были больны́ (pl)	They were ill.
Дéдушка (m, S) был бóлен (m, S).	Grandfather was ill.
Бáбушка (f, S) былá больнá (f, S).	Grandmother was ill.

Future tense:

Врачи́ (3rd person pl) бúдут внимáтельны	The doctors will pay attention
(3rd person pl) к пациéнтам.	to the patients.

Level
1

Упражнения

1. Put the adjectives in brackets into the simple comparative form.

1. Сегодня урок (трудный), чем вчера.
2. Велосипéd (дешёвый), чем машина.
3. Икра (дорогой), чем рыба.
4. Вóдка (крéпкий), чем вино́.

Level
1

2. Put the adjectives in brackets into the compound superlative form with the word

са́мый:

Вы знаёте ...

1. Какое́ о́зеро (глубо́кий)?
2. Какáя река́ (длинный)?
3. Какие́ го́ры (высо́кий)?
4. Какой́ язы́к (трудо́ный)?

Level
2

3. Complete the sentences using the simple (one-word) comparative adjective:

1. Кри́зис оказа́лся го́раздо (тяжё́лый), чем ожида́ли.
2. Наш де́душка (молодо́й) нашей ба́бушки.
3. Но́вый прое́кт оказа́лся (плохо́й) ста́рого.
4. Фру́кты в суперма́ркете (дорого́й), чем на ры́нке.
5. Бра́т (мла́дший) сестры́ на 2 го́да.

Level
2, 3

4. Put the adjectives in brackets into all possible superlative forms:

На на́шей планёте:

1. Каньо́н Ко́лка в Колу́мбии (глубо́кий) каньо́н.
 2. Сеу́л (густонасе́ленный) го́род.
 3. Река́ Ро в США (коро́ткая) река́.
 4. Морская́ змея́ (ядови́тый и опа́сный) морско́е живото́ное.
-

13 Adverbs

Adverbs are indeclinable. They respond to the questions: **когда?** (when?), **где?** (where?), **куда?** (where to?), **откуда?** (where from?), **как?** (how?), **в какой степени?/насколько?** (to what degree?/how?), **почему?** (why?), **зачем/с какой целью?** (what for?).

Adverbs mainly qualify verbs:

Как бежит спортсмен? – Спортсмен бежит быстро .	How does the sportsman run? – The sportsman runs fast .
Где он живёт? – Он живёт там, слева от супермаркета.	Where does he live? – He lives there, to the left of the supermarket.

Additionally, adverbs can qualify:

- Adjectives: **Очень интересная** проблема. (A **very interesting** problem.)
- Other adverbs: Фильм продолжался **слишком долго**. (The film lasted **too long**.)

Level
2, 3

13.1 Adverb formation

Adverbs derive from various parts of speech: adjectives, nouns, pronouns, verbs, gerunds, participles. Adverbs are formed by adding suffixes (👉 13.1.1), prefixes (👉 13.1.2) or both (👉 13.1.3) to the stem of the word that will form the adverb. The list of suffixes and prefixes in these sections is not exhaustive, but it covers the most common adverb formations.

Additionally, some nouns or gerunds can function as adverbs when they qualify a verb. These adverbs look identical to the words from which they are derived. For example:

- Adverbs **утром** (in the morning), **летом** (in summer), **шёпотом** (in a whisper) are derived from the nouns in the instrumental case **утром, летом, шёпотом** (👉 9.2.2).
- Adverbs **молча** (in silence), **лёжа** (in lying position), **припеваючи** (great, literally 'singing') are derived from the gerunds **молча, лёжа, припеваючи** (👉 27).

13.1.1 The largest number of adverbs is formed by adding the suffixes **-о** or **-е** to adjectives that describe quality (👉 11) or to participles (👉 26).

To form the adverb:

- Drop the adjective or participle ending (last two letters):
смешно**й** (funny) – смешн-
искренни**й** (sincere) – искренн-
угрожающ**ий** (threatening) – угрожающ-
- Add the suffix **-е-** to adjectival or participle stems ending with **-ж, -ш, -ч, -щ**:
угрожающе.

- Add the suffix **-е-** to the stem if the adjective ends with **-ний** in the dictionary form: **искренне**.
- Add the suffix **-о-** to any stem other than those described above: **смешно́**.

Indefinite adverbs are formed in the same way as indefinite pronouns (☞ 14.9) by adding the suffixes **-нибу́дь**, **-то** or **-ли́бо** to the indeclinable question words **где?** (where?), **куда́?** (where to?), **отку́да?** (from where?), **когда́?** (when?) and **как?** (how?): **как-нибу́дь** (somehow/some time), **где-то** (somewhere).

13.1.2 Some adverbs are formed by adding the prefix **по-** to the dative case of possessive pronouns: **по-мо́ему** (in my opinion), **по-тво́ему** (in your opinion) etc. (☞ 14.4.1).

Other adverbs are formed by adding the prefix **в-/во-** to the genitive plural of ordinal numbers: **во-пе́рвых**, **во-вторы́х**, **в-тре́тьих** etc. (☞ 15.2).

For negative pronouns, ☞ 14.10.

13.1.3 Several adverbs are formed by adding the prefix **по-** and suffix **-и** to the stem of adjectives ending in **-ский** or **-цкий**. The prefix **по-** and the suffix **-ьи** are added to stems of possessive adjectives ending in **-ий** (☞ 11).

To form the adverb:

- Drop the adjective or participle ending (last two letters):
ру́сский (Russian) – русск-
неме́цкий (German) – немец-
челове́чий (human) – человек-
- Add the prefix **по-** and the suffix **-и** or **-ьи** as explained above:
по-ру́ски
по-неме́цки
по-челове́чьи

Some adverbs derived from adjectives ending in **-ский** do not have the prefix **по-**: **ирони́чески** (ironic), **факти́чески** (actually).

Other common prefixes are used to form adverbs from adjectives with the suffix **-о-**:

- на: **на́сухо** (very dry) **навечно́** (for good), **надолго́** (for long time).
 за: **за́живо** (alive), **за́мертво** (dead), **за́ново** (new).
 в: **вле́во** (to the left), **впра́во** (to the right)
 с (and the suffix **-а**): **сле́ва** (on the left), **спра́ва** (on the right).

Level
2, 3

13.2 Adverb types

Adverbs can be divided into several groups depending on their meaning.

13.2.1 Adverbs of manner form the largest group and describe how an action is carried out. They respond to the question **как?** (how?). For example:

Хорошо́/пло́хо (well/badly)	Ви́ктор у́чится хорошо́ . Victor studies well.
Тихо́/гро́мко (quietly/loudly)	Му́зыка игра́ет гро́мко . The music is loud.
По-но́вому/по-ста́рому (new/old style)	Все́ по-ста́рому . All is as it was before.
Шёпотом (whispering)	Они́ разгова́ривают ше́потом . They speak in a whisper.

13.2.2 Adverbs of location include adverbs that describe the location, start or end point of a movement. They include responses to the questions **где?** (where?), **куда?** (where to?), **откуда?** (where from?):

Где? (where?)	Куда? (to where?)	Откуда? (from where?)	Translation
здесь/тут	сюда́	отсю́да	here
там	туда́	отту́да	there
наверху́	наве́рх	све́рху	above/upstairs
внизу́	вниз	сни́зу	below/downstairs
сле́ва	нале́во	сле́ва	left
спра́ва	напра́во	спра́ва	right
впередí	вперёд	спéреди	in front of
позади́	наза́д	сза́ди	behind
снару́жи	нару́жу	снару́жи	outside
внутри́	внутри́	изнутри́	inside
везде́/всю́ду	повсю́ду	отовсю́ду	everywhere
далеко́/вдали́	далеко́/вдаль	издалека́/и́здали	far away
до́ма	домо́й	из до́ма/и́з дому <i>See comments</i>	at home/home

Comments: To respond to the question ‘from where?’ the noun **дом** (house) in the genitive case is used: **из до́ма/и́з дому** (from home). Two forms of the word **дом** (*из до́ма/и́з дому*) have two different meanings. The form **из до́ма** indicates leaving a building. In a figurative meaning **уходи́ть из до́ма** indicates leaving one’s family. The form **и́з дому** indicates leaving home, a place of residency or leaving home for a short while.

Adverbs responding to the questions **куда?** and **откуда?** are common with verbs of motion (☞ 24–25). Adverbs responding the question **где?** describe location/position of the object.

13.2.3 Adverbs of time respond to the question **когда?** and include:

вчера́	yesterday	у́тром	in the morning
сего́дня	today	ве́чером	in the evening
за́втра	tomorrow	днё́м	afternoon
послезавтра́	the day after tomorrow	но́чью	at night
позавчера́	the day before yesterday	зимой́	in winter
иногда́	sometimes	весно́й	in spring
ра́ньше	earlier	ле́том	in summer
сейча́с	now	осе́нью	in winter
давно́	a long time ago	одна́жды	once

13.2.4 Adverbs of degree respond to the question **в какой стéпени?/наско́лько?** (to what degree?/how?) and include: **о́чень** (very), **сли́шком** ('too'), **значительно/чрезвычайно** (considerably), **чуть/чуть-чуть** (little), **еле-эле** (very slowly). For example:

Мы о́чень устáли.	We are very tired.
Мы сли́шком пóздно приéхали.	We arrived too late.
В прóбке маши́ны двíгались еле-эле .	In the traffic jam the cars were moving really slowly.

13.2.5 Adverbs of reason respond to the question **почему́?** (why?): **сдéлать что-нибудь сгоряча́, со́слепу, по-глúпости** (to do something without thinking, without seeing it, out of stupidity).

13.2.6 Adverbs of purpose respond to the questions **зачём/с ка́кой це́лью?** (for what?):

назлó (out of spite)
нарочнó (on purpose)

13.2.7 Indefinite adverbs refer to unknown or uncertified:

- location: **где-то, где-нибудь, где-либо** (somewhere)
- destination: **куда-то, куда-нибудь, куда-либо** (to somewhere); **откуда-то, откуда-нибудь, откуда-либо** (from somewhere)
- time: **когда-то, когда-нибудь, когда-либо** (some time/once upon a time).

For the formation of indefinite adverbs, ☞ 13.1.1.

Use of the indefinite adverbs and the choice between the suffixes **-то, -нибудь** and **-либо** is determined by the same rule as the use of indefinite pronouns: ☞ 14.9.1.

For example:

Когда-нибудь они побывáют в Росси́и.	Some time they will go to Russia.
Где-то далеко́, где-то далеко́	Somewhere far away (twice)
Идúт грибные дожди́. (Рождéственский)	It is raining during sunshine.

Another group of indefinite adverbs is formed by adding the prefix **кое-**: **кое-где, кое-куда, кое-откуда, кое-как**. They have the same connotation and use as indefinite pronouns with added prefix **кое-** (☞ 14.9.1.3).

13.2.8 Negative adverbs

Russian has two types of negative adverb:

- One type is formed by adding the negative particle **ни-** to the question words **где?** (where?), **куда?** (where to?), **откуда?** (where from?), **когда?** (when?): **нигде́** (nowhere), **никуда́** (to nowhere), **ниоткуда́** (from nowhere), **никогда́** (never).
- The other type is formed by adding the negative particle **не-** to the same question words: **негде́**, **неоткуда́**, **некуда́** (indicates lack of space), **некогда́** (indicates lack of time).

The use of negative adverbs is determined by the same rule as the use of negative pronouns: ☞ 14.10.1 and 14.10.2.

Like negative pronouns with **ни-**, adverbs with **ни-** are used in negative personal constructions that usually have a subject and verb. Negative adverbs intensify the negativity that negative form of the verb expresses:

Мы посмотре́ли фильм « Никогда́ не говори́ никогда́ ».	We watched the film <i>Never Say Never Again</i>
Мы ещё нигде́ не успе́ли побыва́ть.	We did not have time to visit any places.

Like negative pronouns with **не-**, adverbs with **не-** are used only in impersonal sentences that do not have a subject (👉 30.3). Verbs in these sentences are always used in the affirmative form of the infinitive with the person in the dative case. Negative adverbs explain why the action cannot be carried out:

Lack of time	Са́ше некогда́ отды́хаться.	Sasha does not have time to relax.
Lack of place	Бездóмному негде́ жить.	The homeless man does not have a place to live.

(Explain what happens with a preposition. Hé om kyge is answer to ex 3 no. 5, but has not been covered)

Level
2, 3

13.3 Comparative and superlative forms of adverbs

Adverbs have a limited number of comparatives and superlatives.

13.3.1 Comparative forms of adverbs

Only those adverbs that meet the following criteria can form comparative and superlative forms:

- They must end in **-о/-е**
- They must be derived from adjectives that describe quality (👉 11)

Comparative forms of adverbs are formed in the same way and are identical to the comparative forms of adjectives. All adverbs that meet the criteria mentioned above can have a simple comparative form (👉 12.2.1). It is mainly adverbs with more than two syllables that have compound comparative forms (👉 12.2.2). For example:

Adjective	Simple comparative form of adjective	Adverb	Simple comparative form of adverb
бы́стрый (fast)	бы́стрее (faster)	бы́стро (fast)	бы́стрее (faster)
хоро́ший (good)	лу́чше (better)	хорошо́ (good)	лу́чше (better)

Adjective	Compound comparative form of adjective	Adverb	Compound comparative form of adverb
краси́вый (beautiful)	бо́лее краси́вый (more beautiful)	краси́во (beautiful/ly)	бо́лее краси́во (more beautifully)
	ме́нее краси́вый (less beautiful)		ме́нее краси́во (less beautifully)

13.3.2 Superlative forms of adverbs

Adverbs do not have all the superlative forms that adjectives have (👉 12.4):

- Simple one-word superlatives of adverbs are rarely used: **нижáйше/поко́рнейше** (most humbly)
- The most common form of adverb superlative is the compound superlative that has the comparative form of the adverb and the genitive case of the pronoun **весь/все** (all) (👉 12.4.1.3)
- **Всех** (genitive plural) is used when comparing something or someone with other objects or people: Он знáет э́ти пра́вила лу́чше **всех**. (He knows these rules **better than anyone else**.)
- **Всего́** (genitive singular) is used when comparing different options for the speaker himself/herself: Лу́чше **всего́** он запомина́ет пра́вила, е́сли запи́сывает их. (He **best [of all]** remembers the rules when he writes them down.)

Superlative adverbs formed by using **наибóлее** (most), **наимéнее** (least) followed by the adverb's dictionary form are common in writing: **наибóлее интере́сно** (the most interestingly).

13.3.3 Using superlative and comparative forms of adjectives and adverbs

Although comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs look identical and are formed in the same way, they have different roles in a sentence:

- Adverbs qualify verbs: Гепáрд **бе́гает бы́стрее** тигра./Гепáрд **бе́гает бы́стрее**, чем тигр. (A cheetah **runs faster** than a tiger.) Гепáрд **бе́гает бы́стрее** **всех**. (A cheetah **runs faster than anything else** (all other animals).)
- Adjectives qualify nouns or pronouns: Гепáрд **бы́стрее тигра**./Гепáрд **бы́стрее**, чем тигр (👉 12.3). (A **cheetah is faster** than a tiger.) Гепáрд – **са́мое бы́строе жи́вотное**. (The cheetah is **the fastest animal**.)

Упражнения

Level
2, 3

1. Form adverbs from the following adjectives:

1. англи́йский; 2. интере́сный; 3. ме́дленный; 4. соба́чий; 5. и́скренний; 6. дру́жеский

Level
2

2. Insert the appropriate adverb from the list provided:

туда́, ду́шно, за́втра, скучно́, неда́вно, отовсю́ду, домо́й.

1. Здесь о́чень
2. На ле́кции о́чень
3. По́сле рабо́ты она́ е́дет
4. Онí бы́ли в Финля́ндии
5. доноси́лись кри́ки.
6. Я по́еду

Level
2, 3

3. Insert the appropriate negative adverb. Form the adverb by adding the particle **ни-** or **не-** to the adverb given in brackets:

1. Мы (где) не ви́дели официáнта.
2. Она́ ещё (когда́) не была́ в Ве́нгии.

3. На Но́вый год нам (куда) пойти.
4. В трамвае..... (где) сесть. Мест нет.
5. Жа́нне (куда) получа́ть сообще́ния.
6. Э́тот карто́фель (откуда) не приво́зили. Его́ выра́щивают здесь.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

4. Complete the text by inserting the following adverbs in comparative or superlative forms as appropriate:

ча́сто, мно́го, ре́дко, хорошо́, интере́сно, бли́зко, я́рко, увлекате́льно, бы́стро, си́льно, гро́мко, оживле́нно, провóрно



Госпо́дин Смирно́в идёт на футбо́льный матч

1. Госпо́дин Смирно́в, как и мно́гие коренные москвичи́, боле́ет за моско́вское «Дина́мо». Сего́дня он со своёй подро́гой Ири́ной идёт смотре́ть матч «Дина́мо»–«Зенит». Ири́на не очень́ любит футбо́л. Она́ ду́мает, что сле́дить за те́ннисным ма́тчем намно́го, а смотре́ть, наприме́р, фи́гурное ката́ние да́же ещё

2. Госпо́дин Смирно́в с Ири́ной за́няли свои́ места́ на трибу́не, и Ири́на посмотре́ла во́круг. Ей показа́лось, что боле́льщики́ «Дина́мо» пришло́ намно́го, чем боле́льщики́ «Зенита́». 3. Оде́ты они́ бы́ли и крича́ли

4. «Кто же сего́дня бу́дет бе́гать всех и забьёт всех голо́в?, – ду́мала Ири́на. 5. Наконéц, футбо́листы вы́шли на по́ле, и игра́ началась. Напада́ющий «Дина́мо» оказа́лся всех, и всё и продвигáлся к воро́там «Зенита́», но вдруг его́ толкнóли, и он упáл. 6. Боле́льщики́ обе́их кома́нд зашумели

7. Судья́ до́лжен был решíть, кто когó толкнóл

8. К концу́ пер́вого тай́ма игро́ки ста́ли наруша́ть пра́вила всё, и судьёе́ пришло́сь удали́ть не́сколько игро́ков. 9. Во второ́м тай́ме кома́нды игра́ли

10. Они́ наруша́ли пра́вила, и игра́ станови́лась всё и

11. «Как жаль, что в мо́мент прозвучáл свистóк, и игра́ закóнчилась в ничью́ - подумáла Ири́на. «В це́лом, бы́ло неплóхо. Сто́ит пойти́ на футбо́л ещё́ раз!» – реши́ла она́.

14 Pronouns

Level
1, 2, 3

Pronouns are words that qualify or replace a noun. They divide into several groups depending on their function in a sentence. See the indicated sections for information on each group:

- Personal pronouns (👉 14.1) replace nouns and function as nouns.
- Reflexive pronouns (👉 14.2) have a specific meaning of ‘-self’ and point to the person who acts in a sentence.
- Possessive (👉 14.4), demonstrative (👉 14.5) and determinative (👉 14.6) pronouns qualify nouns or pronouns in a sentence.
- Interrogative pronouns (👉 14.7) are question words.
- Relative pronouns (👉 14.8) are an essential element of a type of subordinate clause called ‘relative’. Relative pronouns introduce a relative clause and can function as subject or object of a relative clause.
- Some indefinite (👉 14.9) and negative (👉 14.10) pronouns can replace nouns and function as nouns. Others qualify nouns or pronouns.
- Reciprocal pronouns (👉 14.11) have the specific meaning of two persons acting together (‘each other’).

Level
1, 2

14.1 Personal pronouns

The Russian personal pronouns include:

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	я (I)	мы (we)
2nd	ты (you, informal)	вы/Вы (you, formal or referring to a group)
3rd	он (he)	они́ (they)
	она́ (she)	
	оно́ (it)	

In a sentence, personal pronouns function as nouns. They decline (👉 14.1.1) and reflect the case, gender and number of the noun they replace. For example:

Using nouns	Replacing the nouns by the appropriate pronouns
Друзья́ (nominative, plural) показа́ли Ма́рии (dative, singular, feminine) и Ива́ну (dative, singular, masculine) сад.	Они́ (the pronoun они́ reflects the plural number and the nominative case of the noun друзья́) показа́ли ей́ (the pronoun ей́ reflects the singular number, feminine gender and the dative case of the noun Ма́рии) и ему́ (the pronoun ему́ reflects the singular number, masculine gender and the dative case of the noun Ива́ну) сад.

Using nouns	Replacing the nouns by the appropriate pronouns
The friends showed Maria and Ivan the garden	They showed her and him the garden.

Russian has two pronouns *you*:

- The pronoun **ты** is informal and used to address children, members of the family or close friends.
- The pronoun **Вы** is used to address a person in formal situations. The pronoun and all its forms are written with the capital letter **В**.
- The same pronoun, **вы**, is used to address a group. In this case, the pronoun and all its forms are written with the small letter **в**.

14.1.1 Declension of personal pronouns

The personal pronouns follow their own pattern:

Case	I	you (<i>informal</i>)	he	she	it
N	я	ты	он	она́	оно́
A	меня́	тебя́	его́	её	его́
G	меня́	тебя́	его́	её	его́
D	мне	тебе́	ему́	ей	ему́
I	мно́й/ мно́ю	тобо́й/ тобо́ю	им	ей/е́ю	им
P	мне/обо́ мне́	тебе́	нём	ней	нём
	we	you (<i>formal or plural</i>)	they		
N	мы	Вы/вы	они́		
A	нас	Вас/вас	их		
G	нас	Вас/вас	их		
D	нам	Вам/вам	им		
I	на́ми	Ва́ми/ва́ми	и́ми		
P	нас	Вас/вас	них		

Comments on the table

- Forms of the instrumental case **мно́й/мно́ю**, **тобо́й/тобо́ю** and **ей/е́ю** are alternatives. The forms ending with **-ю** and the form **е́ю** are common in writing.
- If a pronoun begins with a vowel, the letter **-н-** is added to the pronoun after prepositions having one letter or syllable: с **ним** (with him), к **ней** (to her).
- No additional letters are added to pronouns beginning with a vowel after polysyllabic prepositions: **благодаря́ им** (thanks to them), **навстрéчу ей** (towards her).

- If the preposition **о** governs the pronoun **мне** in the prepositional case, two letters are added to the preposition (**обо**). This rule applies only to the pronoun **мне**.

Examples of the use of the personal pronouns in various cases:

For the concept of the six-case system and the meaning of the individual cases,

☞ 4–10.

Со мною (instrumental) вот что происходит, ко мне (dative) мой старый друг не ходит. (Евтушёнко)	What is happening is happening to me, my old friend does not come to me.
Жди меня (accusative), и я (nominative) вернусь. (Симонов)	Wait for me and I will be back.
Весенней ночью думай обо мне (prepositional). (Евтушёнко)	Think of me during the spring night.
Для меня (genitive) нет тебя (genitive) прекрасней. (Антонов)	There is no one better than you for me.

Level
2, 3

14.2 Reflexive pronoun себя (self)

The reflexive pronoun **себя** (self) can only refer to a noun or personal pronoun. It is equivalent to the English form *self* and can be used to emphasise that one does something oneself. **Себя** declines like the personal pronoun ты (☞ 14.1.1), but does not have a nominative form: **себя** (accusative), **себя** (genitive), **себе** (dative), **собой/собою** (instrumental), **себе** (prepositional).

Себя cannot reflect either the number or gender of the pronoun to which it refers.

Себя is common in popular speech and idioms:

Кот смотрит на себя в зеркало.	The cat looks at himself in the mirror.
Как ты себя чувствуешь?	How do you feel?
На дверях магазина написано: « К себе » или « От себя ».	On shop doors is written: 'Pull' or 'Push'.

Себя is often used with pronoun **сам** (self), which has a similar meaning: ☞ 14.6.1.

Level
1, 2

14.3 Possessive, demonstrative and determinative pronouns

In a sentence, possessive (☞ 14.4), demonstrative (☞ 14.5) and determinative (☞ 14.6) pronouns qualify a noun. They agree in case, gender and number with the noun they qualify.

Level
2

14.4 Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns express the idea of ownership: Это **моя квартира**. (This is my flat.) The Russian possessive pronouns include:

мой (m), моя (f), моё (n), мой (pl)	my	наш (m), наша (f), наше (n), наши (pl)	our
твой (m), тво́я (f), твоё (n), твой (pl)	your (informal)	В/ваш (m), В/ва́ша (f), В/ва́ше (n), В/ва́ши (pl)	your (formal or referring to a group)

его́	his/its	их	their
её́	her	сво́й (m), сво́я (f), своё́ (n), сво́й (pl)	one's own

Unlike the other possessive pronouns, **его́** (his/its), **её́** (her) and **их** (their) are indeclinable and therefore cannot agree in gender, number and case with the noun they qualify: Я ду́маю о **его́** сообще́нии и **его́** звонке́. (I am thinking of his e-mail and his call.)

14.4.1 Declension of the possessive pronouns

The pronouns **мой**, **твой** and **свой** have the following pattern:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	мо́й/сво́й	мо́я/сво́я	моё́/своё́
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun моего́/своего́ (animate) мо́й/сво́й (inanimate)	мою́/свою́	моё́/своё́
G	моего́/своего́	моё́й/своё́й	моего́/своего́
D	моему́/своему́	моё́й/своё́й	моему́/своему́
I	мои́м/свои́м	моё́й/своё́й	мои́м/свои́м
P	моём/своём	моё́й/своё́й	моём/своём
Plural			
N	мои́/свои́		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun мои́х/свои́х (animate) мои́/свои́ (inanimate)		
G	мои́х/свои́х		
D	мои́м/свои́м		
I	мои́ми/свои́ми		
P	мои́х/свои́х		

The pronouns **наш** and **ваш** have the following pattern:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	наш/ваш	на́ша/ва́ша	на́ше/ва́ше
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	на́шу/ва́шу	на́ше/ва́ше
	на́шего/ва́шего (animate) наш/ваш (inanimate)		
G	на́шего/ва́шего	на́шей/ва́шей	на́шего/ва́шего
D	на́шему/ва́шему	на́шей/ва́шей	на́шему/ва́шему
I	на́шим/ва́шим	на́шей/ва́шей	на́шим/ва́шим
P	на́шем/ва́шем	на́шей/ва́шей	на́шем/ва́шем
Plural			
N	на́ши/ва́ши		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun		
	на́ших/ва́ших (animate) на́ши/ва́ши (inanimate)		
G	на́ших/ва́ших		
D	на́шим/ва́шим		
I	на́шими/ва́щими		
P	на́ших/ва́ших		

Level
2

14.4.2 Possessive pronoun **свой** (one's own)

The pronoun **свой** emphasises ownership. It does not have any meaning on its own and therefore is used to replace a possessive pronoun in a sentence with some limitations:

- **Свой** does not usually describe the subject of the sentence itself, and therefore does not appear in the nominative case, except in some proverbs and idioms: **Своя рубашка** ближе к телу (по́словица). (Everyone puts their own interest first; literally: One's own shirt is near to one's own body. Proverb.)
- **Свой** usually describes an object of the sentence that is related to the subject and is usually used in cases other than the nominative.
- **Свой** emphasises that the object and subject of the sentence are related.

14.4.2.1 Using свой

If the subject of the sentence is in the 1st person (я, ты), **свой** is used as an alternative to the possessive pronoun **мой** or **наш**. The use of an alternative does not change the meaning of the sentence:

Мы гордимся **нашими** успехами. /Мы гордимся **своими** успехами. We are proud of our progress.

If the subject of the sentence is in the 2nd person (ты, вы), **свой** is the preferred form of possessive pronoun. The use of an alternative does not change the meaning of the sentence:

Ты ездил в отпуск со **своими** родственниками? Did you go on holiday with your relatives?

If the subject of the sentence is in the 3rd person (он, она, они or any nouns that can be replaced by them), the pronouns **свой**, **его**, **её**, **их** are used to express a different meaning:

- **Свой** emphasises that the object of the sentence is related to the subject.
- **Его**, **её**, **их** emphasise that the object of the sentence is not related to the subject.

Compare:

Учёные пишут о результатах своих опытов. (The scientists write about the results of their experiments .)	Учёные пишут о результатах их опытов. (The scientists write about the results of somebody else's experiments .)
Господин Смирнов влюблён в свою подругу. (Mr Smirnoff is in love with his girlfriend .)	Господин Смирнов влюблён в его подругу. (Mr Smirnoff is in love with somebody else's girlfriend .)

Additionally, **свой** can function as an independent adjective when conveying the meaning of belonging to a group. For example:

Он – свой парень.	He is one of our lads.
Мы посмотрели фильм « Свой среди чужих, чужой среди своих ».	We watched the film <i>At Home Among Strangers, a Stranger Among His Own</i> .
Всемú своё время.	There is a right time for everything.

Level
2

14.5 Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns point out an object or person: **Этот** ноутбук мой, а **тот** – Виктора. (This laptop is mine, but that one is Victor's.)

The Russian demonstrative pronouns include:

этот (m), ésta (f), это (n), эти (pl)	this	тот (m), та (f), то (n), те (pl)	that
это	this/that/it		
такой (m), такая (f), такое (n), такие (pl)	such	таков (m), такая (f), такое (n), такой (pl) (mainly used in idioms and in writing)	such

14.5.1 Pronouns **ЭТО** (this/that/it) and **ЭТОТ** (this)

Russian has two pronouns **ЭТО** and **ЭТОТ** that are translated into English with the same word 'this'. However **ЭТО** and **ЭТОТ** have different functions in a sentence and different grammatical categories.

The indeclinable pronoun **ЭТО** is used as the subject of a sentence when indicating a person or object:

ЭТО профессор.

This is a professor.

ЭТО озеро.

This is a lake.

Что **это**?

What's **this/that**?

Кто **это**?

Who is **this/that**?


ЭТО can also appear as the subject of the whole phrase and can be translated into English as 'it'/'this'/'that':

ЭТО просто замечательно!

It/that is really great!

The declinable pronoun **ЭТОТ** has gender, number and case and qualifies a subject or object of a sentence:

ЭТОТ фильм был снят в прошлом году.	This film was shot last year.	ЭТОТ qualifies the subject of the sentence фильм .
Бизнесмен прочитал это интересное сообщение.	The businessman read this interesting e-mail.	ЭТО qualifies the object of the sentence сообщение .

 The declinable neuter form of **ЭТО** (**это**) looks identical to the indeclinable pronoun **это**. The declinable **это** is often used as a noun; it functions as an object in a sentence and is usually translated as 'that':

Ты действительно **этого** хочешь?

Are you sure you want **that**?

14.5.2 Declension of the demonstrative pronouns

The pronouns **ЭТОТ** and **ТОТ** follow the following pattern:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	этот/тот	эта/та	это/то
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	эту/ту	это
	этого/того (animate) этот/тот (inanimate)		
G	этого/того	этой/той	этого/того
D	этому/тому	этой/той	этому/тому
I	этим/тем	этой/той	этим/тем
P	этом/том	этой/той	этом/том

	Plural
N	эти/те
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	этих/тех (animate) эти/те (inanimate)
G	этих/тех
D	этим/тем
I	этими/теми
P	этих/тех

The pronouns **тако́й** and **таково́й** (the old formal form of the pronoun тако́й) decline as follows:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	тако́й/таково́й	тако́я/таково́я	тако́е/таково́е
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	тако́ю/таково́ю	тако́го/таково́го (animate) тако́е/таково́е (inanimate)
	тако́го/таково́го (animate) тако́й/таково́й (inanimate)		
G	тако́го/таково́го	тако́й/таково́й	тако́го/таково́го
D	тако́му/таково́му	тако́й/таково́й	тако́му/таково́му
I	тако́им/таково́им	тако́й/таково́й	тако́им/таково́им
P	тако́м/таково́м	тако́й/таково́й	тако́м/таково́м
	Plural		
N	таки́е/такови́е		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun		
	таки́х/такови́х (animate) таки́е/такови́е (inanimate)		
G	таки́х/такови́х		
D	таки́м/такови́м		
I	таки́ми/такови́ми		
P	таки́х/такови́х		

Examples using demonstrative pronouns with different cases:

Зрители не ожида́ли **тако́й разв́язки** (genitive) сюже́та.
Э́тот мир (singular, masculine, nominative) приду́ман не на́ми.
 (Дербенёв)
 Археоло́ги раба́тали **на э́тих раско́пках** (plural prepositional) пе́рвый раз.
 Туристы поста́вили пала́тки **на то́м берегу́** (singular, masculine, prepositional) реки́.

The audience did not expect such an end to the plot.

This world was not invented by us.

The archaeologists worked at this dig for the first time.

The tourists pitched their tents on the other side of the river.

Level
2, 3

14.6 Determinative pronouns

The determinative pronouns include:

- Emphatic pronouns: **сам**, **-а́**, **-о́**, **-и** (-self/-selves) and **са́мый**, **-ая**, **-ое**, **-ые** (the very)
- Pronouns that indicate the total number of objects: **весь**, **вся**, **всё**, **все** (all), **ка́ждый**, **-ая**, **-ое**, **-ые** (every), **вся́кий**, **-ая**, **-ое**, **-ие** (any), **любо́й**, **-а́я**, **-о́е**, **-ы́е** (any).

Determinative pronouns qualify a noun. They decline and agree in gender, number and case with the noun they qualify.

14.6.1 Declension of determinative pronouns

Са́мый, **ка́ждый** and **любо́й** decline like adjectives with a hard ending (⚡ 11.1.1). **Вся́кий** declines like an adjective whose declension is affected by a spelling rule (⚡ 11.1.3).

Сам declines as follows:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	сам	самá	самó
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	саму́ (самоё –old form)	самó
	самого́ (animate) сам (inanimate)		
G	самого́	самóй	самого́
D	самому́	самóй	самому́
I	самíм	самóй	самíм
P	самóм	самóй	самóм

	Plural
N	са́ми
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	самі́х (animate) са́ми (inanimate)
G	самі́х
D	самі́м
I	самі́ми
P	самі́х

Весь declines as follows:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	весь	вся	всѐ
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	всю	всѐ
	всегó (animate) весь (inanimate)		
G	всегó	всей	всегó
D	всемú	всей	всемú
I	всем	всей	всем
P	всѐм	всей	всѐм
	Plural		
N	все		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun		
	всех (animate) все (inanimate)		
G	всех		
D	всем		
I	всѐми		
P	всех		

Comments on the table

- If the preposition **о** governs the pronoun **всём/всей/всех** in the prepositional case, two letters are added to the preposition (**обо**): *обо всех/обо всём*.
- If a preposition consists of a single consonant or ends with a consonant, **-о** is added to the preposition before **весь** in all cases: *ко всём, безо всём*.

Examples using determinative pronouns with different cases:

Ка́ждый охотник (singular, masculine, nominative) желает знать, где сидит фазан. (Детская считалка)	Every hunter wishes to know where the pheasant is. (Nursery rhyme)
Передача «Выжить любой ценой » (singular, feminine, instrumental) пользуется популярностью у телезрителей.	The programme <i>Ultimate Survival</i> is popular among audiences.
Всего́ добро́го/ Всего́ хоро́шего (masculine, singular, genitive)!	All the best!
Все люди (nominative plural) стремятся к миру во всём мире.	All people strive to achieve peace in the whole world.

14.6.2 Using Сам and Са́мый

The Russian pronoun *сам* is the equivalent of the English ‘-self’: Я сам. (I myself). **Сам** is frequently used with the reflexive pronoun **себя́** to intensify reflexive meaning. Both pronouns agree in:

Пожилая одинокая же́нщина писала письма самá себе́ (dative).	The lonely old lady wrote letters to herself.
Некоторые люди разговаривают са́ми с собо́й во сне́ (instrumental).	Some people talk to themselves in their sleep.
Сегодня́ показывают програ́мму « Сам себе́ режиссёр» (dative).	Today the programme <i>You’ve Been Framed</i> is on.

Са́мый means *the very*:

Кремль находится в са́мом це́нтре Москвы́.	The Kremlin is in the very centre of Moscow.
---	--

Additionally, **са́мый** is used to form:

- Compound superlatives of adjectives (👁️ 12.4.1.1).
- The word *the same*

👁️ 14.6.2.1 The Russian equivalent of *the same* has three parts, two declinable pronouns **тот** and **са́мый** and one indeclinable particle **же**: **то́т же са́мый** (the same).

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	тот же самый	та же самая	то же самое
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	ту же самую	то же самое
	того же самого (animate) тот же самый (inanimate)		
G	того же самого	той же самой	того же самого
D	тому же самому	той же самой	тому же самому
I	тем же самым	той же самой	тем же самым
P	тем же самым	той же самой	тем же самым
	Plural		
N	те же самые		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun		
	тех же самых (animate) те же самые (inanimate)		
G	тех же самых		
D	тем же самым		
I	теми же самими		
P	тех же самых		

Level
1, 2

14.7 Interrogative pronouns

The interrogative pronouns include these *declinable* question words:

кто (who)	какой, -ая, -ое, -ие (what/what kind of)	сколько (how many/how much)
что (what)	какой, -ая, -ое, -ие (which)	
	чей, чья, чьё, чьи (whose)	

- **Какой, который** and **чей** have case, gender and number; **кто, что** and **сколько** have case only.
- **Кто** and **что** are question words about a noun. Their case corresponds to the case of the noun to which the question refers: **Кого** (accusative) вы знаете? (Whom do you know?)
О чём (prepositional) вы говорите? (What are you talking about?)
On agreement between **кто, что** and the predicate of the sentence 📖 14.8.2.

- **Какой, который** and **чей** agree in gender, number and case with the noun they qualify: **Какого человека** (singular, masculine, accusative) вы встретили? (Which person have you met?) **Чьих вещей** (genitive plural) здесь нет? (Whose things are not here?)
- **Который** declines like an adjective with a hard ending (📖 11.1.1).
- **Какой** declines like **такой** (📖 14.5.2).
- **Сколько** is used to ask about quantity and the nominative form of the word **сколько** is always followed by a noun in the genitive (singular or plural):
Сколько молока (genitive singular) в бутылке? (How much milk is in the bottle?):
Сколько звезд (genitive plural) на небе? (How many stars are there in the sky?):
Сколько студентов (genitive plural) в группе? (How many students are there in the group?) On using nouns with numbers, 📖 15.3.1.

14.7.1 Declension of interrogative pronouns **кто, что, сколько** and **чей**

Кто, что and **сколько** decline as follows:

Case	кто	что	сколько
N	кто	что	сколько
A	кого́	что	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
			ско́льких (animate) ско́лько (inanimate)
G	кого́	чегó	ско́льких
D	кому́	чему́	ско́льким
I	кем	чем	ско́лькими
P	ком	чем	ско́льких

Чей declines as follows:

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
N	чей	чьё	чья
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	чьё	чью
	чьего́ (animate) чей (inanimate)		
G	чьего́	чьего́	чьей
D	чьему́	чьему́	чьей
I	чьим	чьим	чей/чьёю
P	чьём	чьём	чьей

	Plural
N	чьи
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	чьих (animate) чьи (inanimate)
G	чьих
D	чьим
I	чьими
P	чьих

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Complete the sentences by putting the pronouns in brackets into the required form:

1. Дайте (я), пожалуйста, чашку кофе.
2. Можно (Вы) помочь?
3. Приходите к (мы) в гости.
4. Дети разговаривают о (он).
5. Коля работает с (ты)?
6. (Он) сегодня нет на уроке.

Level
1, 2

2. Put the phrases in brackets into the correct form:

1. Друг подарил (моя сестра) конфеты.
2. К (наш сосед) приходили гости.
3. Передайте, пожалуйста, (Ваш брат) сердечный привет.
4. На (их улица) много зелени.
5. Не мешайте (этот человек).
6. Дайте мне (эта открытка) и (тот словарь).
7. Писатель описывает сюжет (такие верные слова).

Level
2

3. Choose the appropriate possessive pronoun and make sure it and the noun it qualifies are in the appropriate form:

1. Человек кричал не (его/свой голос).
2. Им надо закончить (их/свой работа).
3. В (моя/своя комната) очень уютно.
4. В (его/свой стихи) поэт описывает природу.
5. Виктор сказал, что (его/своя жена) очень любит (ее/своя работа).

Level
2, 3

14.8 Relative pronouns

The interrogative pronouns (👉 14.7) **кто** (who), **что** (what), **который** (which), **какой** (what/what kind of) and **чей** (whose) can function as relative pronouns in a complex sentence. Complex sentences usually have one main clause and one or more subordinate clauses. The main clause contains the complete idea. Subordinate clauses clarify or expand on information provided in the main clause and cannot

exist independently. Relative pronouns are an essential element of one particular type of subordinate clause, the relative clause.


14.8.1 Using the relative pronoun **ко́то́рый**

Ко́то́рый is used in relative clauses and can clarify **any noun** in the main clause. Like an adjective, a relative clause responds to the questions **како́й** (what? what kind of?). For example:

Како́й фильм ты бу́дешь смотре́ть?	What film you are going to watch?
Я бу́ду смотре́ть фильм, ко́то́рый выи́грал «Оскара» в э́том го́ду.	I will watch a film which won the Oscar this year.

English relative clauses can be introduced by the relative pronouns **which**, **that** or **who/whom**. The Russian equivalent of these three English pronouns is the relative pronoun **ко́то́рый**. Unlike in English, **ко́то́рый** cannot be omitted from the sentence. For example:

Я зна́ю студе́нта, ко́то́рый учи́тся в Москве́.	I know a student who is studying at Moscow.
Я жду́ с нетерпением встре́чи с дру́гом, ко́то́рого я не видел мно́го лет.	I am looking forward to seeing a friend whom I have not seen for many years.
Мы купи́ли кни́гу, о ко́то́рой все говоря́т.	We bought the book about which everybody is talking.
Счета́, ко́то́рые откры́л клиент, бу́дут заморо́жены.	The accounts that a client has opened will be frozen.
Моро́женое, ко́то́рое я купи́л на вокза́ле, оказа́лось невку́сным.	The ice cream I bought at the station did not taste good.

 The gender and number of **ко́то́рый** corresponds to the gender and number of the noun that **ко́то́рый** clarifies in the main clause. However, the case of **ко́то́рый** reflects its grammatical role in the relative clause. **Ко́то́рый** can be:

- The subject of the relative clause in the nominative case
- A direct object in the accusative case
- An indirect object with various prepositions in the accusative, dative, instrumental or genitive cases.

Therefore, the case of **ко́то́рый** often differs from the case of the noun that it clarifies. For example:

Студе́нты встре́тились с молоды́м худо́жником, ко́то́рый получи́л гла́вный приз на ко́нкурсе.	The students met the young artist who had received first prize in the competition.
--	---

In this example **ко́то́рый** clarifies the masculine singular noun **с худо́жником**. Therefore, **ко́то́рый** is used in the masculine singular. In the relative clause, **ко́то́рый** is the subject of the sentence. Therefore **ко́то́рый** is used in the nominative case.

Мы подня́лись на колоко́льню, о ко́то́рой прочита́ли в путево́дите́ле.	We went up the bell tower about which we had read in the guidebook.
---	---

In this example, **о ко́то́рой** clarifies the feminine singular noun **на колоко́льню**. Therefore, it is used in the feminine singular. In the relative clause, **о ко́то́рой** is the indirect object of the sentence governed by the preposition *about* that takes the prepositional case. Therefore, **ко́то́рый** is used in the prepositional case.

14.8.2 Using the pronouns **кто** (who) and **что** (that/which)

Кто and **что** are used in relative clauses to clarify **any pronoun** in the main clause. Most frequently **кто** and **что** refer to the determinative pronouns **весь, каждый, любой** and the demonstrative pronoun **тот** (☞ 14.5–14.6).

Кто is equivalent to the English **who**. **Что** is equivalent to the English **that** or **which**. Unlike in English, **кто** and **что** cannot be omitted from the sentence. For example:

И тот, кто с песней по жизни шагает, Тот никогда и нигде не пропадет. (Лебедев-Кумач)	And he who marches through life with song, He will never ever lose.
На траурном митинге вспоминали всех тех, кто погиб во время теракта. Было названо имя каждого, кто потерял свою жизнь.	At the remembrance meeting, they remembered all those who died in the terrorist attack. The names of every one of those who lost their lives were read out.
Попросите любого, кто войдет в комнату, закрыть окно.	Ask anyone who enters the room to close the window.
Всё хорошо, что хорошо кончается.	All's well that ends well.

☞ **Кто** and **что** decline, but do not have gender or number. The case of **кто** and **что** reflects their grammatical role in the subordinate clause. For example:

Он забыл всё, о чём ему рассказали.	He has forgotten everything he was told.
Произошло то, к чему все давно готовились.	Something that everybody has been preparing for has happened.
Все удивились тому, что он сказал.	Everybody was surprised at what he said.
Я не знал всех, кто пришёл на вечеринку.	I didn't know everyone who came to the party.

In the first example, **о чём** is the indirect object of the relative clause and is governed by the preposition *about* that takes the prepositional case.

In the second example, **к чему** is the indirect object of the relative clause and is used with a verb that requires the dative case (**готовиться к**).

In the third example, **что** is the direct object of the relative clause and is used in the accusative case with no preposition.

In the last example, **кто** is the subject of the relative clause and is used in the nominative case.

☞ If **кто** or **что** are the subject of the main or relative clause, they require the verb in a certain form:

- **кто** usually agrees with the verb in the 3rd person singular in the present and future tenses and in the masculine singular in the past tense. However, **кто** can agree with a verb in the plural. This can occur if **кто** is the subject of a verbal phrase that consists of a verbal link and the noun in the plural form:

Те, кто десять лет назад были студентами (predicate consisting of verbal link 'to be' and noun in the plural) нашего университета, сейчас занимают высокие посты в правительстве.	Those who were students at our university ten years ago now hold important posts in the government.
--	--

- **что** always requires the verb in the 3rd person singular in the present and future tenses and in the neuter singular in the past tense:

Никто́ не ожида́л того́, **что случи́лось**. No one expected what happened.

14.8.3 Using **Чей** (whose) and **Како́й** (what kind of)

Чей clarifies a noun in a sentence. **Чей** (whose) can be replaced by the appropriate form of **ко́торый**.

Я лично́ зна́ю художника, **чьи рабо́ты/рабо́ты ко́торого** прода́ются на аукцио́не. I personally know the artist whose works are being sold at the auction.

Како́й is mainly used with the demonstrative pronoun **тако́й**:

А я **тако́й, како́й** я есть, I am who I am,
 Как ди́кий куст колю́чий. (Марко́вцев) I am like a wild thorn bush.
 Тури́сты посети́ли вы́ставку. The tourists visited an exhibition entitled
 «Крым **тако́й, како́й** он есть». 'Crimea as it is now'.

Level
2, 3

14.9 Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns are used when speaking about unknown or unspecified persons, objects, places, time etc. Russian indefinite pronouns are equivalent to the English pronouns with the prefixes *some-* or *any-*:

Кто́-то игра́ет на гита́ре. **Someone** is playing the guitar.
 Я ду́маю, что с ним **что́-то** случи́лось. I think **something** has happened to him.
 Заходи́ как-нибу́дь! Come and see me **some time!**

Indefinite pronouns are formed by adding the indeclinable particles **-то**, **-нибу́дь**, **-ли́бо** or **ко́е-** (some/any) to the declinable interrogative pronouns **кто**, **что**, **како́й** and **че́й** (☞ 14.7). The indefinite pronouns therefore have a declinable root that follows the pattern of the interrogative pronouns, and an indeclinable suffix. On the declension of **кто**, **что** and **че́й**, ☞ 14.7.1. **Како́й** declines like an adjective affected by spelling rule 1 (☞ 1.3.1, 11.1.3.1).

The indefinite pronouns include:

кто́-то, кто́-нибу́дь, кто́-ли́бо (someone/anyone)	како́й-то, како́й-нибу́дь, како́й-ли́бо (some sort of)	ко́е-кто́ (one or two people), ко́е-что́ (one or two things), ко́е-како́й (some/one or two)
что́-то, что́-нибу́дь, что́-ли́бо (something/anything)	че́й-то, че́й-нибу́дь, че́й-ли́бо (someone's)	

Pronouns formed with the particles **-то** and **-нибу́дь** are common in written and spoken language. The pronouns formed with the particle **-ли́бо** have the same meaning as those with the particle **-нибу́дь**; they are mainly used in writing. The pronouns formed with the particles **ко́е-** are the least common.

For the indefinite adverbs (somehow, somewhere etc.), ☞ 13.2.7.

👁 14.9.1 Using indefinite pronouns

14.9.1.1 The particle **-то** indicates that the speaker is referring to persons, objects, places, time unknown to them, whilst the speaker's audience could have more information on the matter. Indefinite pronouns with **-то** appear most frequently in affirmative statements with the past tense and present tense verbs indicating an action in progress:

Кто-то оставил на столе пакет.	Somebody has left a package on the table.
Кто-то звонит в дверь. Открой!	Somebody is ringing the doorbell. Open the door!
В комнате что-то упало.	Something in the room has fallen down.

14.9.1.2 The particles **-нибудь** or **-либо** indicate that the speaker and their audience are unfamiliar with the persons, objects, places, time to which the speaker is referring. Indefinite pronouns with the particles **-нибудь** or **-либо** appear most frequently in questions, imperative sentences, sentences with future tense verbs or present tense verbs indicating habitual action. For example:

Кто-нибудь знает, где живёт Тanya?	Does anyone know where Tanya lives?
Ты приготовил что-нибудь на ужин?	Have you made anything for dinner?
Кто-нибудь , помогите, человеку плохо.	Someone, please help. The person is unwell.
Я куплю какой-нибудь сок на завтрак.	I will buy some sort of juice for breakfast.
Мы подарим ребёнку какую-нибудь игрушку.	We will give the child some sort of toy.
Там всегда кто-нибудь поёт.	There is always someone singing there.
Будут ли проводиться какие-либо эксперименты в лаборатории?	Will some experiments be carried out in the laboratory?
Пациент будет осмóтрен кем-либо из хирургов.	The patient will be examined by one of the surgeons.

14.9.1.3 The particle **кое-** indicates that the speaker knows the persons, objects, places, time about which they are talking. However, they prefer not to reveal this information to their audience:

Мне надо кое-что тебе сказать.	I need to tell you something.
У нас всегда остаётся кое-кто из родственников.	We always have some relatives staying with us.

Pronouns with the particle **кое-** may have negative connotations, depending on the context:

Кое-кто кое-где не хочет жить честно.	There are some people, somewhere, who do not want to live by honest means.
---	--

14.9.2 Declension of indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns consist of one declinable and one indeclinable element:

- The declinable elements **кто**, **что**, **какой**, **чей** decline like interrogative pronouns (👉 14.7): *кого-то*, *кому-то*, *чем-нибудь*, *чего-нибудь*.
- **Какой** and **чей** also have gender and number: *какого-нибудь*, *какую-нибудь*, *каких-либо*, *чьё-то*, *чьих-то*.
- The particles **-то**, **-нибудь**, **-либо** and **кое-** form the indeclinable element of the pronoun.
- Prepositions that govern pronouns with particles **-то**, **-нибудь** and **-либо** precede the pronoun: *с кем-нибудь*, *о чём-то*, *без чего-то*, *у какого-либо*.
- Prepositions that govern pronouns with the particle **кое-** are placed between particle and pronoun: *кое у кого*, *кое о чём*, *кое с каким*.

14.9.3 Other indefinite pronouns

Additionally, the following small number of indefinite pronouns is mainly used in writing: *некто* (certain), *нечто* (something), *некий*, *-ая*, *-ое*, *-ие* (certain), *некоторый*, *-ая*, *-ое*, *-ые* (some) and *несколько* (several).

- **Некто** (certain) and **нечто** (something) exist only in the nominative and accusative cases:

Позвонил некто господин Смит.	A certain Mr Smith called.
Они увидели нечто ужасное.	They saw something horrible.
- **Некий**, *-ая*, *-ое*, *-ие* (certain) and **некоторый**, *-ая*, *-ое*, *-ые* (some) decline, have gender and number and function like adjectives:

Некоторые люди предпочитают делать покупки в интернет- магазине.	Some people prefer to do their shopping through the Internet.
---	--
- **Несколько** (several) is used as a number that indicates indefinite quantity: 👉 15.10.

Level
2, 3

👁 14.10 Negative pronouns

Russian has two types of negative pronouns:

- One type is formed by adding the negative particle **ни-** to the interrogative (👉 14.10.1)
- The other type is formed by adding the negative particle **не-** to the interrogative (👉 14.10.2).

All negative pronouns decline and follow the pattern of the interrogative pronouns (👉 14.7). Pronouns that are based on **какой** and **чей** also have gender and number. Prepositions that govern negative pronouns are placed between particle and pronoun: *ни у кого*, *ни о чём*, *ни с кем*, *не о ком*, *не у кого*, *не с чем*.

👁 The two types of negative pronoun convey different meanings and are used in different types of sentences. Note that Russian sentences can have an unlimited number of negatives.

14.10.1 Negative pronouns with the particle **ни-**

The negative pronouns **никто́, ничто́, никакóй, ничéй** are used in negative constructions that usually have a subject and verb. The negative form of the verb conveys the idea of absence of action itself or a negative result of the action. Negative pronouns intensify the negativity that negative form of the verb expresses. The verb is used with the negative particle **не-** and negative pronouns with negative particle **ни-**:

Сосéди ничего́ не слы́шали.	The neighbours heard nothing/did not hear anything.
Свидéтели ничего́ не сказа́ли.	The witnesses said nothing/did not say anything.
Он ни с кéм не обща́лся.	He did not communicate with anyone./ He communicated with no one.

The negative pronouns have the following patterns

Note that a preposition is placed between two elements of the pronoun. In negative constructions containing a verb and a direct object, the verb is followed by nouns/phrases in the genitive case if they describe an abstract or unspecified object or person. However, the verb is followed by nouns/phrases in the accusative case if they describe a specific object or person. Я не чита́л никакóй записки. I have not read any notices. Я не чита́л никакóй записку. I have not read the notice (a reference to a specific notice). The use of masculine nouns and the neuter noun живóтное (animal) are also affected by the notion of animacy. All negative phrases containing animate masculine nouns or the neuter noun живóтное (animal) follow the genitive case pattern. Я не зна́ю никакóго Смирно́ва. I do not know any Smirnoff.

N	никто́	ничто́
A	as genitive никогó/ни на когó	as genitive ничего́/ни на чтó
G	никогó/ни у когó	ничего́/ни у чегó
D	никому́/ни к кому́	ничему́/ни к чему́
I	никéм/ни с кéм	ничéм/ни с чéм
P	ни о ко́м	ни о чéм

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N	никакóй/ничéй	никакáя/ничья́	никакóе/ничье́
A	никакóй/ничéй	никакóю/ничью́	никакóе/ничье́
G	никакóго/ничьегó	никакóй/ничье́й	никакóго/ничьегó
D	никакóму/ничьемú	никакóй/ничье́й	никакóму/ничьемú

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
I	никакíм/ничьíм	никакóй/ничьéй	никакíм/ничьíм
P	ни о какóм/ни о чьём	ни о какóй/ни о чьéй	ни о какóм/ни о чьём
	Plural		
N	никакíе/ничьí		
A	никакíе/ничьí		
G	никакíх/ничьíх		
D	никакíм/ничьíм		
I	никакíми/ничьíми		
P	ни о какíх/ни о чьíх		

14.10.2 Negative pronouns with the particle **не́**

The negative pronouns **не́кого**, **не́чего** are used only in impersonal sentences that do not have a subject (☞ 30.3). The verb in sentences with **не́кого**, **не́чего** is always used in the affirmative form of the infinitive with the person in the dative case. The negative pronouns **не́кого**, **не́чего** explain why the intended action cannot be carried out:

Reason why an action cannot be carried out	Russian sentence	English equivalent
Lack of object of the action	О́ле не́ с кем обща́ться.	Olia has no one to talk to.
	Нам не́чего вспо́мнить.	We have nothing to remember.
	Пенсионе́ру не́чего де́лать.	The pensioner has nothing to do.

For declension of negative pronouns with the particle **не**, ☞ 30.3.2; for using negative pronouns with the particles **не** and **ни**, ☞ 30.3.3.

Level
2, 3

14.11 Reciprocal pronoun друг дру́га (each other)

The first part of the pronoun **друг дру́га** is indeclinable. The second declines like a noun **друг** (friend). Any prepositions added to **друг дру́га** are placed between the two parts of the pronoun:

N	друг дру́га is not used in the nominative case
A	as genitive друг дру́га

G	друг (у) дру́га
D	друг (к) дру́гу
I	друг (с) дру́гом
P	друг (о) дру́ге

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Fill the gaps with the relative pronoun **ко́торый** in the correct form (the first eight lines are part of a poem):

1. Вот дом, (a) построи́л Джек.
А это пшени́ца, (b) в тёмном чула́не хранится
В до́ме, (c) построи́л Джек.
Вот пёс без хвоста́, (d) за шиворот трéплет котá,
(e) пугáет и лóвит сини́цу,
(f) ча́сто ворúет пшени́цу,
(g) в тёмном чула́не хранится
В до́ме, (h) построи́л Джек.
(Марша́к)

2. Мы ходи́ли в клуб, о писа́ли газéты.
3. Они́ смея́лись над шу́ткой, расска́зал Ви́ктор.
4. Я уви́дел челове́ка, лицо́ показáлось мне знако́мым.
5. Студéнты слúшали лéкцию учёного, у бы́ло мно́го публика́ций.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

2. Complete the text by putting the pronouns in brackets into the required form:



Господин Смирнов идёт в театр

1. Сегодня́ вéчером господин Смирнов идёт в Большо́й теа́тр. (Он) наконéц, открýли по́сле (тако́й) длителъного ремо́нта. 2. Ма́ма господина Смирно́ва (вся её) жизнь прорабо́тала в хóре в (э́тот) (са́мый) извёстном теа́тре Росси́и. 3. (Она́) и (её) семья́ получи́ла пригласи́тельный билéт на га́ла-конце́рт. 4. Поóтому для (все) Смирно́вых сегóдняшний похóд в теа́тр – (э́то) торже́ственное собы́тие. 5. (Никто́) не хóчет пропу́стить (э́тот) конце́рт. 6. (Все) жéнщины в семье́ надева́ют (их) лу́чшие вéчерние пла́тья, а мужчи́ны (их) деловые́ костю́мы. 7. В до́ме родите́лей Смирно́вых царит суетá. (Все) нéкогда. 8. (Кто́-то) отвеча́ет на звонки́, (кто́-то) на́до (что́-то) найти́. 9. Ма́ме пона́добилось с (кто́-то) срóчно связа́ться и о (что́-то) догово́риться. 10. Па́па не мо́жет подо́брать (никако́й) га́лстука, а ба́бушка поте́ряла (какие́-то) бусы́. 11. В кварта́ире у (сам) господина Смирно́ва то́чно (тако́й) же суетá. 12. (Его́) подро́ге Ири́не не нра́вится (никако́й) пла́тье. 13. (Сам) господин Смирно́в до́лжен сбéгать за цве́тами для (его́) ма́мы. 14. (Он) то́же на́до купи́ть (себя́) га́лстук. 15. (Его́) ста́рые га́лстуки не подо́ходят для (его) но́вого, (тако́й) доро́гого, костю́ма. 16. Ну,

наконец, (все) Смирновы встретились перед театром. 17. Сегодня в театре, как говорят по-русски, яблоку негде упасть. Смирновы успели поздороваться со (все их) многочисленными друзьями и знакомыми и вошли в (их) ложу. Через несколько минут начнется (этот) долгожданный концерт!

15 Numbers

Level
1, 2, 3

Numbers are divided into three groups:

- Cardinal numbers indicate quantity (👉 15.1): один (one), десять (ten).
- Ordinal numbers indicate the order of objects in a set (👉 15.2): первый (first), второй (second).
- Collective numbers indicate the number of objects in a group (👉 15.9): двое (group of two), трое (group of three).

There are several words that describe indefinite quantity (👉 15.10): много книг (many books), мало журналов (few magazines). Additionally some nouns and adverbs are often used to express quantity (👉 15.12).

Level
1, 2

15.1 Cardinal numbers

Cardinal numbers in figures and words:

0 ноль (нуль)	20 двадцать
1 один (м), одна (f), одно (n)	30 тридцать
2 два (м, n), две (f)	40 сорок
3 три	50 пятьдесят
4 четы́ре	60 шестьдесят
5 пять	70 семьдесят
6 шесть	80 восемьдесят
7 семь	90 девяносто
8 восемь	100 сто
9 девять	200 двести
10 десять	300 триста
11 одиннадцать	400 четы́реста
12 двенадцать	500 пятьсо́т
13 трина́дцать	600 шестьсо́т
14 четы́рнадцать	700 семьсо́т
15 пятна́дцать	800 восемьсо́т

16 шестна́дцать	900 девя́тьсо́т
17 семна́дцать	1 000 ты́сяча
18 восе́мна́дцать	1 000 000 миллио́н
19 девя́тна́дцать	1 000 000 000 миллиа́рд
	1 000 000 000 000 триллио́н

15.1.1 Cardinal number structure

- Numbers between *один* (1) and *десять* (10), *сорок* (40) and *сто* (100) consist of one root or element.
- The numbers *ты́сяча* (1 000), *миллио́н* (1 000 000), *миллиа́рд* (1 000 000 000), *триллио́н* (1 000 000 000 000) are nouns that are used as cardinal numbers.
- All numbers other than 1–10, 40, 100, 1 000, 1 000 000 and 1 000 000 000 are formed by using two roots (elements). For example, *о́днна́дцать* has roots **о́ди́н-** and **-на́дцать**; *пя́тьсо́т* has roots **пя́ть-** and **со́т**.
- Compound numbers are formed from the appropriate one-word numbers. For example, *восе́мсо́т со́рок се́мь* (847), *ты́сяча пята́дцать* (1 015).
- If a compound number includes one of the nouns **ты́сяча** (1 000), **миллио́н** (1 000 000), **миллиа́рд** (1 000 000 000) and is higher than *ты́сяча девя́тьсо́т девяно́сто де́вять* (1 999), it follows the rule described in section 15.3.1.1.

Level
1, 2

15.1.2 Main characteristics of cardinal numbers

Cardinal numbers have the following characteristics:

- All cardinal numbers decline (👉 15.1.3).
- Number ‘one’ has three genders: **о́ди́н** (masculine), **о́дна́** (feminine), **о́дно́** (neuter) and agrees in gender with the noun it qualifies:
 - о́ди́н рубль* (one rouble) – masculine
 - о́дна́ кни́га* (one book) – feminine
 - о́дно́ упражне́ние* (one exercise) – neuter
- Also, ‘one’ has singular and plural forms. The plural form **о́дни́** is used to count nouns that have plural form only (👉 3.5):
 - о́дни́ выбо́ры* one election/s *о́дни́ джи́нсы* one pair of jeans
- Additionally, the plural **о́дни́** and singular **о́ди́н/о́дна́** can have the special meaning ‘alone, on their own’. The plural **о́дни́** can also function as the equivalent of the English word *some*:
 - Мы си́дели о́дни́.* We were sitting **alone**.
 - Он прише́л о́ди́н.* He came **on his own**.
 - О́дни́ гово́рят, что ...* *Some say that ...*
- Number ‘two’ has three genders that are expressed by two forms: **два́** indicates masculine and neuter, **две́** indicates feminine:
 - два́ стола́/окна́* two tables/windows *две́ ко́мнаты* two rooms
- Numbers other than ‘one’ and ‘two’ do not have gender or number

For the forms of nouns that follow cardinal numbers, 👉 15.3.

15.1.3 Declension of cardinal numbers

The declension of cardinal numbers is shown in Summary Tables 15.I–15.VII.

Summary Table 15.I: declension of number ‘one’

Number ‘one’ declines like the pronoun *этот/эта/это/эти* (this, that) (☞ 14.5.2):

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
N	no ending о́дин	-о о́дно́	-а о́дна́
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	as nominative	-у
	о́дногó (animate) о́дин (inanimate)	о́дно́	о́дну́
G	-ого о́дногó	-ого о́дногó	-ой о́дно́й
D	-ому о́дному́	-ому о́дному́	-ой о́дно́й
I	-им о́днѝм	-им о́днѝм	-ой о́дно́й
P	-ом о́дно́м	-ом о́дно́м	-ой о́дно́й
Plural (all genders)			
N	-и о́днѝ		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun		
	о́днѝх (animate) о́днѝ (inanimate)		
G	-их о́днѝх		
D	-им о́днѝм		
I	-ими о́днѝми		
P	-их о́днѝх		

Summary Table 15.II: declension of numbers ‘two’, ‘three’ and ‘four’

Case	Numbers 2, 3 and 4			
	два (masculine and neuter)	две (feminine)	три	четыре
N	два	две	три	четыре
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun			
	двух (animate, masculine, neuter and feminine) два (inanimate, masculine and neuter) две (inanimate feminine)		трёх (animate) три (inanimate)	четырёх (animate) четыре (inanimate)
G	двух	двух	трёх	четырёх
D	двум	двум	трём	четырёх
I	двумя́	двумя́	тремя́	четырьмя́
P	двух	двух	трёх	четырёх

Summary Table 15.III: declension of numbers 5–20 and 30

The numbers 5–20 and 30 follow a pattern similar to feminine singular nouns ending with **-ь** (📖 4.2.3):

Case	Numbers 5–20 and 30		
N	пять	одиннадцать	тридцать
A	пять	одиннадцать	тридцать
G	пяти́	одиннадцати	тридцати́
D	пяти́	одиннадцати	тридцати́
I	пятью́	одиннадцатью́	тридцатью́
P	пяти́	одиннадцати	тридцати́

Summary Table 15.IV: declension of numbers 40, 90 and 100

Case	Numbers 40, 90 and 100		
N	сорок	девяносто	сто
A	сорок	девяносто	сто
G	сорока́	девяноста́	ста́
D	сорока́	девяноста́	ста́
I	сорока́	девяноста́	ста́
P	сорока́	девяноста́	ста́

Summary Tables 15.V and 15.VI: declension of numbers 50–80 and 200–900

Numbers 50–80 and 200–900 consist of two roots (elements) like other cardinal numbers (☞ introduction to this chapter). However, in these numbers **both roots** decline.

- Start roots with a number between 5 and 8 follow the pattern described in Summary Table 15.III.
- Start roots with a number between 2 and 4 follow the pattern described in Summary Table 15.II.
- End roots with the number 100 follow the modified pattern described in Summary Table 15.IV. An end root with number 10 declines like a feminine noun ending in **-ь** (☞ 4.2.3).

Summary Table 15.V: declension of numbers 50–80

Case	Numbers 50–80	
N	пятьдеся́т	во́семьдеся́т
A	пятьдеся́т	во́семьдеся́т
G	пяти́десяти	восьми́десяти
D	пяти́десяти	восьми́десяти
I	пяти́юдесятью	восьми́юдесятью or восьми́юдесятью
P	пяти́десяти	восьми́десяти

Summary Table 15.VI: declension of numbers 200–900

Case	Numbers 200–900			
N	двѐсти	три́ста	четы́реста	се́мьсо́т
A	двѐсти	три́ста	четы́реста	се́мьсо́т
G	двухсо́т	трѐхсо́т	четырёхсо́т	се́мисо́т
D	двумста́м	трѐмста́м	четырёхста́м	се́миста́м
I	двумяста́ми	тремяста́ми	четырьмяста́ми	се́мьюста́ми
P	двухста́х	трѐхста́х	четырёхста́х	се́миста́х

Summary Table 15.VII: declension of numbers ты́сяча (1 000), миллио́н (1 000 000), миллиа́рд (1 000 000 000), триллио́н (1 000 000 000 000)

The words ты́сяча, миллио́н and миллиа́рд are nouns and follow regular noun patterns.

ты́сяча follows the pattern of feminine nouns with hard endings affected by a spelling rule (👁️ 4.2.2).

Миллио́н, миллиа́рд, триллио́н follow the pattern of masculine nouns with hard endings (👁️ 4.2.1):

Case	Numbers 1 000, 1 000 000 and 1 000 000 000			
	Singular		Plural	
N	ты́сяча	миллио́н	ты́сячи	миллио́ны
A	ты́сячу	миллио́н	ты́сячи	миллио́ны
G	ты́сячи	миллио́на	ты́сяч	миллио́нов
D	ты́сяче	миллио́ну	ты́сячам	миллио́нам
I	ты́сячей	миллио́ном	ты́сячами	миллио́нами
P	ты́сяче	миллио́не	ты́сячах	миллио́нах

Level
2, 3

15.2 Ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers describe the position of an object in a set. In a sentence, they function in the same way as long-form adjectives. They decline in the same way as adjectives and have gender and number (👁️ 11). They agree with the noun they qualify, in gender, number and case.

15.2.1 List of ordinal numbers in figures and words

1st	пе́рвый/пе́рвая/пе́рвое	11th	оди́ннадцатый/-ая/-ое
2nd	второ́й/второ́я/второ́е	12th	двена́дцатый/-ая/-ое
3rd	тре́тий/тре́тья/тре́тье	13th	трина́дцатый/-ая/-ое
4th	четве́ртый/четве́ртая/четве́ртое	14th	четы́рнадцатый/-ая/-ое
5th	пя́тый/пя́тая/пя́тое	15th	пятна́дцатый/-ая/-ое
6th	шесто́й/шесто́я/шесто́е	16th	шестна́дцатый/-ая/-ое
7th	седьмо́й/седьма́я/седьмо́е	17th	семна́дцатый/-ая/-ое
8th	восьмо́й/восьма́я/восьмо́е	18th	восемна́дцатый/-ая/-ое
9th	девя́тый/девя́тая/девя́тое	19th	девятна́дцатый/-ая/-ое
10th	деся́тый/деся́тая/деся́тое	20th	двадца́тый/-ая/-ое
Compound numbers			
21st	два́дцать пе́рвый	50th	пятидеся́тый
22nd	два́дцать второ́й	60th	шестидеся́тый
...		70th	семидеся́тый
30th	тридцáтый	80th	восьмидеся́тый
31st	тридцáть пе́рвый	90th	девяно́стый
...		100th	со́тый
40th	сороково́й	200th	двухсо́тый
42nd	со́рок второ́й	300th	трёхсо́тый
43rd	со́рок тре́тий	400th	четырёхсо́тый
...		500th	пятисо́тый
		600th	шестисо́тый

	700th семисо́тый 800th восьмисо́тый 900th девя́тисо́тый 1000th ты́сячный 2000th двухты́сячный 3000th трёхты́сячный 10 000th десяти́тысячный 100 000th стоты́сячный 1 000 000th миллио́нный 1 000 000 000th миллиа́рдный
--	--

15.2.2 Declension of ordinal numbers

All ordinal numbers, except **трё́тий** (3rd), decline like adjectives with hard endings that are not affected by spelling rules (УЭ 11.1.1). **трё́тий** (3rd) declines like an adjective with a soft ending that is not affected by spelling rules (УЭ 11.1.2).

Summary Table 15.VIII: declension of ordinal numbers with hard endings

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
N	пе́рвый	пе́рвое	пе́рвая
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun пе́рвого (animate) пе́рвый (inanimate)	пе́рвое	пе́рвую
G	пе́рвого	пе́рвого	пе́рвой
D	пе́рвому	пе́рвому	пе́рвой
I	пе́рвым	пе́рвым	пе́рвой
P	пе́рвом	пе́рвом	пе́рвой
	Plural (all genders)		
N	пе́рвые		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun пе́рвых (animate) пе́рвые (inanimate)		
G	пе́рвых		
D	пе́рвым		
I	пе́рвыми		
P	пе́рвых		

Summary Table 15.IX: declension of the ordinal number третий

Трѣтий declines like a possessive adjective ending with **-ий** (☞ 11.1.4, Summary Table 11.VI).

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
N	трѣтѣй	трѣтьѣ	трѣтьѣя
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun	трѣтьѣ	трѣтьѣю
	трѣтьѣго (animate) трѣтѣй (inanimate)		
G	трѣтьѣго	трѣтьѣго	трѣтьѣей
D	трѣтьѣму	трѣтьѣму	трѣтьѣей
I	трѣтьѣим	трѣтьѣим	трѣтьѣей
P	трѣтьѣем	трѣтьѣем	трѣтьѣей
Plural (all genders)			
N	трѣтьѣи		
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun		
	трѣтьѣих (animate) трѣтьѣи (inanimate)		
G	трѣтьѣих		
D	трѣтьѣим		
I	трѣтьѣими		
P	трѣтьѣих		

Level
2, 3

15.3 Using cardinal and ordinal numbers**15.3.1 Using cardinal numbers with nouns**

A cardinal number's agreement with the noun it qualifies can follow one of the two rules described in sections 15.3.1.1 and 15.3.1.2.

15.3.1.1 This rule applies to a phrase that contains either:

- a cardinal number in the nominative case followed by any noun: Сейчас **два** (nominative) часа (a noun). (It is 2 o'clock.) Здесь **тридцать один** (nominative) студѣнт (a noun). (Here there are thirty-one students.) На столѣ **пять** (nominative) бананов. (On the table there are 5 bananas.)

or

- a cardinal number, except 'one' or a compound number ending in 'one', in the accusative case followed by an inanimate noun: Он съѣл **две** (accusative) груши

(inanimate noun) и **три** (accusative) яблока (inanimate noun). (He ate two pears and three apples.)

The rule reads:

- A noun in the **nominative case** is used after 'one' or numbers that end with 'one'. 'One' also agrees with the gender and number of the noun it qualifies:

На столе лежат один рубль (masculine singular nominative),	On the table are one
тридцать одна копейка (feminine singular nominative),	rouble, thirty-one
одно письмо (neuter singular nominative)	kopeks, one letter
и одни очки (plural nominative).	and one pair of glasses.

If there is **an adjective** in the phrase, it **agrees** in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies:

Вот один зелёный огурец (masculine singular nominative) и одно красное яблоко (neuter singular nominative).	Here are one green cucumber and one red apple
---	---

- A noun in the **genitive singular** is used after 'two', 'three' and 'four' or compound numbers that end with 'two', 'three' and 'four'.
- The number 'two' also agrees in gender with the noun it qualifies:
В вазе **два банана** (masculine, genitive, singular), **две сливы** (feminine, genitive, singular), и **два яблока** (neuter, genitive, singular).

In the bowl are two bananas, two plums and two apples.

If there is **an adjective** in the phrase, it **does not fully agree** with the noun it qualifies. The form of the adjective in this context depends on the gender of the noun that it qualifies.

If the adjective qualifies a masculine or neuter noun, it is used in the genitive plural, although the noun is in the genitive singular:

Вот два сладких (genitive plural) апельси́на (genitive singular) и три кислых (genitive plural) лимо́на (genitive singular).	Here are two sweet oranges and three bitter lemons.
--	---

If the adjective qualifies a feminine noun, it is used in the nominative plural, although the noun is in the genitive singular:

Здесь открыли три новые (nominative plural) дискоте́ки (genitive singular).	Here three new discos were opened.
---	------------------------------------

In contemporary Russian, there is an alternative form of the adjective that qualifies the feminine noun, which is common in popular speech and poetry.

The adjective can appear in the plural genitive case:

Две вечных (genitive plural) подру́ги (genitive singular)– любо́вь и разлу́ка – не хóдят одна́ без друго́й. (Окуджа́ва)	The two eternal friends – love and separation – do not go the one without the other.
--	--

- The genitive plural is used after any number except 'one', 'two', 'three' and 'four' or compound numbers that end with 'one', 'two', 'three' or 'four'. There is no gender to the number:

В вазе пять банано́в (genitive plural), шесть слив (genitive plural) и двадцать яблок (genitive plural).	In the bowl are five bananas, six plums and twenty apples.
---	--

If there is an **adjective** in the phrase, it **agrees** in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies:

Онѝ купѝли семь красѝвых открыток (genitive plural).	They bought seven nice postcards.
---	--------------------------------------

- Ты́сяча (1 000), миллио́н (1 000 000), миллиа́рд (1 000 000 000) and higher numbers follow the pattern described above.

The nouns **ты́сяча**, **миллио́н**, **миллиа́рд** are in the nominative singular after the number 'one' or numbers that end with 'one'. 'One' agrees with the following noun in gender: *одна́ ты́сяча* (1 000) – feminine, nominative, singular.

The nouns **ты́сяча**, **миллио́н**, **миллиа́рд** are in the genitive singular after the numbers 'two', 'three' and 'four' or numbers that end with 'two', 'three' and 'four'. 'Two' agrees with the following noun in gender: *две ты́сячи* (2 000) – feminine, genitive, singular. On gender and number, 📖 15.1.2.

The nouns **ты́сяча**, **миллио́н**, **миллиа́рд** are in the genitive plural after any number except 'one', 'two', 'three' and 'four' or numbers that end with 'one', 'two', 'three' or 'four'. There is no gender to the number: *пять ты́сяч* (5 000) – genitive plural.

15.3.1.2 This rule applies to a phrase that contains either:

- a cardinal number in the genitive, dative, instrumental or prepositional case followed by any noun.

or

- a cardinal number in the accusative case followed by an animate noun.

The rule reads:

- All cardinal numbers agree with the case of the noun they qualify (for the declension of cardinal numbers, 📖 15.1.3): *В кафе́ я встре́тился с шестѝю* (instrumental) *товарища́ми* (plural instrumental). (In a café I met (with) six friends.)

Additionally:

- The number 'one', or any compound number ending in 'one', agrees in gender and number with the noun it qualifies: *Мы купѝли одну́ гру́шу* (feminine accusative), *оди́н лимо́н* (masculine accusative) и *одно́ моро́женое* (neuter accusative). (We bought a pear, a lemon and an ice-cream.) 📖 See section 15.1.2.

If there is an **adjective** in the phrase, it **agrees** in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies: *Я познако́мился с одной́ молодой́ де́вушкой* (feminine, singular, instrumental) и *тре́мя молодѝми людь́ми* (plural instrumental). (We met (with) one young girl and three young men.)

15.3.1.3 Using the nouns **год** (year) and **челове́к** (person) after cardinal numbers

The nouns **год** (year) and **челове́к** (person) have the following plural forms in the nominative case: *год* – *го́ды* and *челове́к* – *лю́ди*. The plural forms in all cases except the genitive are derived from these plural nominative forms. The plural genitive forms of these nouns differ when they appear after cardinal numbers except 'one', 'two', 'three' and 'four' or numbers that end with 'one', 'two', 'three' or 'four':

- **лет** is the genitive plural of **год**
- **челове́к** is the genitive plural of **челове́к**

For example:

Мы про́жили здесь пять лет.

We have been living / we have lived here for 5 years.

Два́дцать челове́к пришли́ на встре́чу.

Twenty people attended the meeting.

The genitive form **люде́й** is used after numbers indicating indefinite quantity:

☞ 7.2.2.1.

15.3.1.4 The issue of agreement

In a sentence, if a phrase consisting of a number (a cardinal number other than 'one', a collective or an indefinite number – ☞ 15.9, 15.10) and a noun is the subject of the sentence, it can relate to the predicate in two different ways. The predicate can have alternative forms of the 3rd person plural or 3rd person singular in the present tense and future tenses, and 3rd person plural or neuter singular in the past tense:

- The predicate is frequently used in the plural when it follows the subject of the sentence and the subject is animate:

Три бизне́смена́ **е́дут/пое́дут** в Москву́. Three businessmen are going to Moscow.

Чётверо тури́стов **посмотре́ли** Эрми́таж. Four tourists visited the Hermitage.

- The perfective verb that *precedes* the subject is frequently used in the neuter singular:

На вече́ринку **пришло́** пять челове́к. Five people attended the party.

- The short-form passive participle usually appears in the singular form if it relates to a phrase with a number:

Бы́ло постро́ено два до́ма.

Two houses were built.

Level
2, 3

15.4 Telling the time

Both 24-hour and 12-hour clocks are used to respond to the questions **Како́рый час?** and **Ско́лько вре́мени?** (What is the time?)

For precise official times, such as in timetables, event schedules, TV and radio programmes, the 24-hour clock is usually used. In everyday use, the 12-hour clock is preferred. Both cardinal and ordinal numbers are used to express clock times.

15.4.1 The 12-hour clock

To express the exact time on the hour, the cardinal numbers are used. The number is followed by the appropriate form (☞ 15.3) of the noun **час** (hour).

For example:

Сейча́с час.

It's now one o'clock. (The number is omitted only in this expression).

Сейча́с два часа́.

It's 2 o'clock.

Сейча́с пять часо́в.

It's 5 o'clock.

To indicate '*minutes past the hour*' in the first half of the clock, the following construction is used:

- A cardinal number in the nominative case starts the phrase.
- The number is followed by the noun **мину́та** (minute). The form of **мину́та** depends on the number it follows (☞ 15.3).

- An ordinal number in the genitive singular masculine ends the phrase. This qualifies the noun **час** (hour) (which is in fact omitted) and agrees with it in gender, number and case. This ordinal number refers to the forthcoming hour. For example:

2.10 – дeсять минут трeтьего

12.20 – двадцать минут первого

On using the genitive case in this construction, 📖 7.2.3.2.

To indicate ‘minutes to the hour’ in the second half of the clock, a cardinal number in the genitive case with the preposition **без** (without) is used. A cardinal number in the nominative, referring to the forthcoming hour, ends the phrase. For example:

6.55 – без пяти семь

8.35 – без двадцати пяти девять

6.45 – без пятнадцати семь or без четверти (a quarter) семь

On using the genitive case in this construction, 📖 7.3.2.3; on the cardinal numbers’ declension, 📖 15.1.3.

The nouns **утро** (morning) and **вечер** (evening) are used in the singular genitive case as equivalents to the English **am** and **pm** respectively. However, they are only used after the exact hour and are often omitted:

восемь часов вечера (8 pm)

шесть часов утра (6 am)

15.4.2 The 24-hour clock

In the 24-hour clock, the exact numbers are expressed; both **час** (hour) and **минута** (minute) are omitted:

24.00 двадцать четыре ноль-ноль

21.10 двадцать один десять

15.5 Responding to questions regarding time

To respond to the questions **Когда?** (When?) and **В котóром часу?** (At what time?) the following constructions are used.

Level
2, 3

The 12-hour clock:

- The preposition **в** (at) is added to a time expression that indicates the exact hour:
в час (at one o’clock)

в пять часов (at five o’clock)

- The preposition **в** (at) is not used in a time expression starting with the preposition **без**:

без пяти девять (at five to nine)

- The preposition **в** (at) is often omitted from a time expression that indicates the first half of the clock:

пять минут девятого (at 8.05)

четверть второго (at 1.15)

- The preposition **в** (at) is added to a time expression indicating half an hour. The noun **половина** (half) is used in the prepositional case in this expression:

в половине второго (at 1.30).

The 24-hour clock:

- The preposition **в** (at) is added to the time expression: в 20.05 (at 20.05).

Level
2, 3

15.5.1 Other time expressions

The following time expressions are common in everyday speech:

- **около** (about): около двух часов (about 2 o'clock)
- **часá в четы́ре** (about 4 o'clock): the change of word order in this phrase indicates the idea of 'proximity'
- **к** (by): к двум часáм (by 2 o'clock)
- **с ... до:** с двух до пяти́ (from 2 until 5 o'clock)
- **пóлдень** (midday)
- **пóлночь** (midnight)
- **полтора́ часá** (one and a half hours)
- **полчасá** (half an hour)
- **чётверть ча́са** (quarter of an hour)

Level
1, 2

15.6 Talking about age

Cardinal numbers are used when talking about age. An age expression has the following structure:

- The noun indicating the person/inanimate object whose age is stated is in the dative case.
- The cardinal number is followed by the nouns **год** (year), **ме́сяц** (month), **де́нь** (day), **неде́ля** (week), or **ты́сячелéтие** (millennium). The form of the noun depends on the last figure in the number. For example:

Де́вочке два **го́да**. The girl is two years old.

Ма́льчику шесть **лет**. The boy is six years old.

Ребе́нку о́дин **ме́сяц**. The baby is one month old.

On using nouns after a cardinal number, 📖 15.3.1; on using nouns in the dative case, 📖 8.2.2; on using the noun **год** in the genitive plural, 📖 15.3.1.3.

In the present tense, **быть** (to be) is omitted from an expression of age. In the past and future tenses, **быть** and **исполня́ться/испо́лниться** (to turn) are used:

Актёру **бы́ло** сорок лет. The actor was 40.

Бабушке **бу́дет** 65 лет. Grandmother is going to be 65.

Ей **исполня́ется** 100 лет. She is turning 100.

The following idioms expressing age are common in popular speech:

- **за** (over): Ей **за** пятьдеся́т. She is over 50.
- **на** (in): Ему He is in his fifties.

Level
2

15.7 Using numbers to express date, months, years and days of the week

15.7.1 The prepositional case is used to respond to the question **когда́** (when?) when indicating millennium, century, year, month or week (📖 10.3.1). For example: в но́вом ты́сячелéтии (in the new millennium), в январа́е (in January), на про́шлой неде́ле (last week).

The preposition **в** (in) governs the nouns **тысячелѣтие** (millennium), **век** (century), **год** (year) and **мѣсяц** (month). The preposition **на** (on) governs the noun **недѣля** (week).

Numbers indicating years start with cardinal numbers and end with ordinal numbers. The ordinal number appears in the masculine singular form because it qualifies the masculine noun **год** (year):

1962 – тысяча девятьсот шестьдесят (cardinal numbers) **второй** (ordinal number) **год**

2011 – две тысячи (cardinal numbers) **одиннадцатый** (ordinal number) **год**

When responding to the question **когда** (when?) only the last ordinal number declines and appears in the prepositional case. In the prepositional case, the noun **год** has the irregular ending **-у** (👉 10.1.1):

In 1962 – в тысяча девятьсот шестьдесят (cardinal numbers) **втором** (ordinal number) **году**

In 2011 – в две тысячи (cardinal numbers) **одиннадцатом** (ordinal number) **году**

15.7.2 The accusative case with the preposition **в** (on) is used to respond to the question **когда** (when?) when indicating days of the week (👉 6.3.2):

в понедельник

on Monday

в субботу

on Saturday

15.7.3 The genitive case is used to respond to the question **когда** (when?), when indicating the date:

Юрий Гагарин полетѣл в космос

Yuri Gagarin flew into space on the 12th

двенадцатого апрѣля тысяча

of April 1961.

девятьсот шестьдесят первого года.

For this date expression, 👉 7.2.3.1. Note, there is no preposition in this expression. All components of the date, including month and year, are in the genitive case. Only the last ordinal number of the year declines; it appears in the genitive case.

👉 Other time expressions are covered in sections 6.3.2, 7.2.3.1, 7.2.3.2, 8.2.2, 9.2.2 and 10.3.1.

Level
3

15.8 Ordinal numbers expressing fractions and decimals

The following words express fractions:

- половѣна (half)
- чѣтверть (quarter)
- треть (one third)

On using **половѣна** (half) and its shortened form, **пол-**, 👉 7.2.2.2.

To express decimal numbers the following the phrases are used:

- Цѣлая (дѣля) – the whole ('share')
- Десятая (дѣля) – (0,1), сотая дѣля (0,01), тысячная дѣля (0,001) etc.
- The feminine noun **дѣля** is omitted, but assumed. The adjective **цѣлый** and any ordinal number **десятый**, **сотый** etc. agree in gender with the noun **дѣля**.
- After 'one', **цѣлый**, **десятый**, **сотый** etc. are in the nominative singular. After any other numbers, they are in the genitive plural.
- A comma is used as a separator in decimal numbers.

For example:

0,1 – ноль целых, одна десятая

1,2 – одна целая и две десятых

Level
2, 3

15.9 Collective numbers

Collective numbers indicate the number of objects in a group. These belong to this group:

- The pronoun **оба** (masculine and neuter), **обе** (feminine) – ‘both’
- The noun **пара** (pair/couple)
- Special forms of numbers between two and ten: **двое** (2), **трое** (3), **четверо** (4), **пятеро** (5), **шестеро** (6), **семеро** (7), **восемеро** (8), **девятеро** (9), **десятеро** (10).

Collective numbers decline, but do not have gender or number, with one exception: the pronoun **оба** (both). **Оба** expresses masculine and neuter gender and **обе** expresses feminine gender: **оба парня** (both chaps), **обе девушки** (both girls).

15.9.1 Declension of collective numbers

The declension of collective numbers is similar to that of plural adjectives (👉 11.1). **Оба/обе**, **двое** and **трое** follow the pattern of adjectives with soft endings. The other collective numbers follow the pattern of adjectives with hard endings.

Case	Collective numbers			
N	оба (masculine and neuter)	обе (feminine)	двое	четверо
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun			
	обоих (animate) оба (inanimate)	обеих (animate) обе (inanimate)	двоих (animate) двое (inanimate)	четверых (animate) четверо (inanimate)
G	обоих	обеих	двоих	четверых
D	обоим	обеим	двоим	четырем
I	обоими	обеими	двоими	четырьмя
P	обоих	обеих	двоих	четверых

Level
2, 3

15.9.2 Using collective numbers

Collective numbers have limited use:

- Numbers between **двое** (two) and **десятеро** (ten) are only used to indicate animate nouns of masculine and common gender (👉 2.3.1 and 2.3.6). They are common in popular speech when describing groups of children, young animals or people with the same occupation: **трое детей** (three children), **четверо котят** (three kittens), **двое коллег** (two colleagues).
- In a sentence, collective numbers can act as an independent word: **Нас было десятеро.** (There were ten of us.)

- **О́ба/о́бе** can be used with animate and inanimate nouns of all genders: о́ба глаза (both eyes), о́бе сестры́ (both sisters).
- **Па́ра** (pair/couple) is often used with many nouns that have only plural forms (👉 3.5) or to indicate a couple of people or animals: па́ра очков (pair of glasses), две супру́жеские па́ры (two married couples), па́ра гнедых (two bay horses).

When a collective number is followed by a noun, the following rule applies to the form of the noun:

- If **о́ба** is in the nominative case, it is followed by a noun in the genitive singular. **О́ба** also agrees in gender with the noun it qualifies: о́бе звезды́ экра́на (both movie stars), о́ба президе́нта (both presidents).
- If **о́ба** is in the accusative case and is followed by an inanimate noun, the noun appears in the genitive singular. **О́ба** also agrees in gender with the noun it qualifies: Миллионе́р купи́л о́ба за́мка. (The millionaire bought both castles.)
- If there is **an adjective** in a phrase as described above, it **does not fully agree** with the noun it qualifies. The form of the adjective in this context depends on the gender of the noun that the adjective qualifies:
 - If the adjective qualifies a masculine or neuter noun, it is used in the genitive plural, although the noun is in the genitive singular: На столе́ о́ба **но́вых** (genitive plural) **журна́ла** (genitive singular). (Both new magazines are on the table.)
 - If the adjective qualifies a feminine noun, it is used in the nominative plural, although the noun is in the genitive singular: Они́ купи́ли о́бе **интересные́** (nominative plural) **кни́ги** (genitive singular). (They bought both interesting books.)
 - If **о́ба/о́бе** appears other than as described above, it agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies: Я люблю́ обо́их бра́тьев и обо́их сесте́р. (I love both my brothers and both my sisters.)
- A noun in the plural is used after all collective numbers, except **о́ба/о́бе**. If there is **an adjective** in a phrase, it **agrees** in case and number with the noun it qualifies: Мы посмотре́ли фильм о семеры́х сме́лых друзья́х. (We watched a film about seven brave friends.)

15.9.2.1 Using collective numbers with nouns that have only a plural form

Nouns that have only a plural form (👉 3.5) use collective numbers to describe quantities between two and four: дво́е саней (two sledges), трое́ брюк (three pairs of trousers).

To describe a higher quantity, two alternative constructions are used with these nouns. For example:

па́теро су́ток	пять су́ток
ше́стеро часо́в	шесть часо́в (6 clocks)
во́сьмеро воро́т	во́семь воро́т

After 'one', nouns that have only a plural form are used in the nominative. The number 'one' is in the plural form (📖 15.1.2): **о́днѝ** по́хоронѝ (one funeral).

Level
2

15.10 Expressions of indefinite quantity

There are a number of words that can describe quantity, including:

мно́го (a lot)	немно́го (a little)
ско́лько (how much/how many)	сто́лько (so much/so many)
ма́ло (a little)	нема́ло (quite a few)
не́сколько (a few/several)	мно́гие (many)
немно́гие (not many)	

The question words **ско́лько?** (how much?/how many?), the pronouns **не́сколько** (several/a few), **сто́лько** (so much/so many) and the adjectives **мно́гие** (many), **немно́гие** (not many) decline and follow the pattern of plural adjectives with soft endings (📖 11.1). For example:

Case	Indefinite expression
N	не́сколько
A	as genitive, if describing an animate noun; as nominative, if describing an inanimate noun
	не́скольких (animate). See the comment below не́сколько (inanimate)
G	не́скольких
D	не́скольким
I	не́сколькими
P	не́скольких

Comment: In contemporary Russian there is a tendency not to decline the words **ско́лько**, **сто́лько** and **не́сколько** if they are followed by animate nouns in the accusative case: **Ско́лько** студе́нтов ты ви́дел? How many students have you seen? Я встре́тил **не́сколько** друзе́й. I have met several friends.

The adverbs **мно́го**, **ма́ло**, **немно́го** do not decline.

After words that mean indefinite quantity, all nouns are always used in the genitive plural, except for some uncountable nouns that only have a singular form. The latter are used in the genitive singular:

У нас мно́го молока́ (genitive singular).
В библиоте́ке мно́го **уче́бников**
(genitive plural).

We have a lot of milk.
In the library there are many
textbooks.

Any adjective to a phrase agrees in case, gender (if appropriate) and number with the noun it qualifies:

- | | |
|--|--|
| У нас мно́го вкусно́го молока́
(neuter genitive singular). | We have a lot of tasty milk. |
| В газе́тах написа́ли о неско́льких
но́вых музе́ях (prepositional plural). | The newspapers wrote about
several new museums. |

Level
3

15.11 Using nouns as numbers

In Russian, there are several nouns that are used as cardinal numbers: thousand, million, billion. They have all a noun's characteristics: gender, number and case. Other nouns that express the idea of quantity include:

- Banknotes: **со́тня** (100 roubles), **деся́тка** (10 roubles).
- Grades and marks in Russian primary, secondary and higher education: **еди́ница/кол** (fail below any standard), **дво́йка** (fail), **тро́йка** (satisfactory/pass), **четве́рка** (good), **пяте́рка** (excellent).

These numbers, **еди́ница** (1), **дво́йка** (2), **тро́йка** (3), **четве́рка** (4), **пяте́рка** (5), **шесте́рка** (6), **семё́рка** (7) **восьме́рка** (8), **девя́тка** (9), **деся́тка** (10), can indicate:

- The number of a tram, trolleybus or bus:
Извини́те, здесь **тро́йка** **хо́дит**? Excuse me, does the number three (tram) come past here?
- The names of cards in card games:
семё́рка **бубён** seven of diamonds
козы́рная **шесте́рка** six of trumps
- Additionally, the noun **тро́йка** (3) can indicate a three-piece suit, a three-man commission or three horses:
Он купи́л доро́гую **тро́йку**. He bought an expensive three-piece suit.
Во времена́ **ста́линских** **репрессий** During Stalin's repressions, three-man
тро́йки **вы́несли** **приговоро́ы** **бо́лее** commissions passed sentence on more
400-ам **ты́сячам** **челове́к**. than 400,000 people.
Вот **мчи́тся** **тро́йка** **удаля́я** **вдо́ль** **по** The daring troika (three horses) races
столбово́й (**ру́сская** **наро́дная** along the road marked by poles. (Russian
пе́сня)). folk song).

The nouns **деся́ток** (10) and **пято́к** (5) are used to count the number of eggs or buttons:

- | | |
|--|--|
| Мы купи́ли пято́к яи́ц и два
деся́тка пуго́виц . | We bought five eggs and twenty
buttons. |
|--|--|

Level
2, 3

15.12 Other expression of quantity

Common expressions of quantity include:

- Expressions of multiplying: **вдво́е** (twice), **втро́е** (three times), **вчеты́веро** (four times) etc.; **два́жды** (twice), **три́жды** (three times). After 'ten', the expression **в ... раз** (... times) is used: **в о́динна́дцать раз** (eleven times), **в два́дцать раз** (twenty times).
- Expressions of community: **вдвоём** (group of two), **втроём** (group of three), **вчеты́роём** (group of four), **впяте́роём** (group of five): **Мы пошли́** **в кино́** **втроём**. (The three of us went to the cinema.)

- Expressions of repetition and sequence (common in writing): во-пёрвых (firstly), во-вторых (secondly), в-трётых (thirdly).
- To express the idea of distributing something, the following construction is used:
 - The preposition **по** followed by a cardinal number in the accusative case.
 - The number is followed by a noun in the nominative or genitive case depending on the number the noun follows (👉 15.3.1):

Alternatively, the idea of distributing something can be expressed by the preposition **по** followed by a noun in the dative case:

Дети получили по два яблока и три конфеты. The children got two apples and three sweets each.

Всем сестрам по серьгам (пословица). A pair of earrings to each sister (proverb: meaning a fair distribution).

Упражнения

Level
2, 3

1. Complete the sentences by putting the phrases in brackets into the correct form:

1. Натáше подарили 23 (красные розы).
2. Миллионёр купил 31 (новые машины).
3. Мáльчик съел 1 (жёлтая дыня) и 2 (сладкое яблоко).
4. В спектакле зányаты 5 (молодые актёры).
5. У Марины сегодня 6 (интересные встречи).

Level
2, 3

2. Replace the English phrases by their Russian equivalents in the correct form:

1. Гости должны прийти (by 7 o'clock).
2. Бассейн открыт (from 11 am to 10 pm).
3. Я начинаю работать (at 8.45) и заканчиваю (at 5.30)
4. Магазины закрыты на обед (between 1 pm and 2 pm).
5. Мы встречаемся (at 1 o'clock).

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

3. Answer the quiz questions using the answers provided. Write the numbers in words:

Господин Смирнов отвечает на вопросы викторины (quiz)

Сегодня в любимом кафе господина Смирнова «Ёлки-Палки» проводится викторина для всех любителей кроссвордов. Пожалуйста, помогите господину Смирнову ответить на вопросы:

Вопросы

1. Когда началась вторая мировая война?
2. Когда умер Лев Толстой?
3. Когда Колумб открыл Америку?
4. Когда родился и умер Шекспир?
5. В каком веке на Руси приняли христианство?
6. Какой день – самый длинный в году?

Отвёты

- 01.IX.1939
- 20.XI.1910
- 1492 г.
- 1564 – 1616
- 10 век
- 21.VI



16 Verbs

Verbs define an action (to do something etc.) or a state (to exist, to know etc).

The basic dictionary form of a verb is *the infinitive*, for example, **дѣлать** (to do), **быть** (to be). For the infinitive, 📖 16.1 and 20.6.

Level
1, 2

Russian verbs have the following grammatical categories:

- **Tense.** Russian verbs have three tenses that give us the time during which the action takes place, in *the present, past or future*. For each of the three tenses, 📖 17, 18 and 19 respectively.
- 👁️ **Aspect.** Most Russian verbs have two verbal aspects called *imperfective* and *perfective*. An aspect does not change the verb meaning, but defines the nature of an action. It determines whether the action is complete or incomplete, single or multiple, defined or undefined. For the verbal aspects, 📖 20.
- **Transitivity.** Transitivity is a grammatical category that clarifies the relationship between a verb and object in a sentence. It helps us to establish whether the verb must take a direct object to convey the message correctly (transitive verbs) or whether it cannot have an object (intransitive verbs). For transitive and intransitive verbs, 📖 21.1, 21.2
- **Voice.** Voice is a grammatical category that clarifies the relationship between a verb and subject in a sentence. The verb describes what the subject does itself (active voice), or what is done to the subject by someone or something else (passive voice). For the passive and active voices, 📖 21.3.
- **Mood.** A verb can be in one of four moods: *indicative, imperative, conditional or subjunctive*. The verbal mood defines the speaker's attitude towards the action and establishes whether the speaker describes a real, desirable or hypothetical action. For the four moods, 📖 22.

Level
2, 3

Level
2, 3

Additionally, note:

- Two verbal forms derive from the verb: the *participle (verbal adjective)* and the *gerund (verbal adverb)*. Both participles and gerunds are common in writing. For participles and gerunds, 📖 26 and 27 respectively.
- There are many verbs called reflexive verbs. They are formed by adding the particle **-ся/-сь** to a verb ending. **-ся/-сь** can modify a verb's meaning in different ways. For reflexive verbs, 📖 23.
- There are several verbs called *impersonal*. They have a limited number of forms and can be used only in a special type of sentence that has no subject. These sentences also are called *impersonal*. For impersonal sentences in general and impersonal verbs in particular, 📖 30 and 30.4.

Function in a sentence

The verb serves as the predicate to the subject of the sentence. This means the verb explains the action or state of the subject. All verbs change their endings

to agree with the subject. The exception to this rule are a few impersonal verbs (👉 30.4).

In the present and future tenses, the verb agrees with the subject in person and number (👉 17 and 19 respectively). In the past tense, the verb agrees with the subject in gender and number (👉 18).

Level
1, 2

16.1 The infinitive

The *infinitive* is the dictionary form of a verb. The English equivalent of Russian infinitives is the verbal form introduced by *to* – (**to do**, **to be** etc.). The Russian infinitive can end with **-ТЬ**, **-ТИ** or **-ЧЬ**.

- **-ТЬ** is the most common infinitive ending and is added to the stem of the verb after a vowel: **быть** (to be), **дéлать** (to do).
- **-ТИ** is the less common infinitive ending and is added to the stem of the verb after a consonant: **идти́** (to go), **найти́** (to find).
- Only a small number of verbs have their infinitive ending with **-ЧЬ**: **мочь** (to be able/can), **печь** (to bake). Unlike the infinitive endings **-ТЬ** and **-ТИ**, **-ЧЬ** is part of the verbal stem. When past tense verbs, present tense verbs, future perfective verbs are formed from the verbs in **-ЧЬ**, the letter **ч** changes: **ч-г** (**берéчь**, **берегу́**, etc.), **ч-г-ж** (**мочь**, **могу́**, **мо́жешь** etc.) or **ч-к** (**печь**, **пеку́**, **печёшь**, etc.).

The infinitives of reflexive verbs have the particle **-ся** added to **-ТЬ** and **-ЧЬ** (after the soft sign): **улыба́ться** (to smile), **увлéчься** (to be keen on/to be carried away).

The particle **-сь** is added to **-ТИ** (after a vowel): **спастíсь** (to save oneself), **найти́сь** (to be found/to turn up).

In Russian, most verbs have two infinitives – imperfective and perfective. Both infinitives are clearly marked in a dictionary – **дéлать** (to do) – imperfective (impf), **сдéлать** (to do) – perfective (pf).

For verbal aspect in general, 👉 20; for use of the verbal aspects of the infinitive, 👉 20.6.

16.1.1 Using the infinitive

The imperfective and perfective infinitives can be used in two ways:

- to form the present, past or future tenses of a verb
- as an essential unchangeable part of compound verbal forms (👉 16.1.2).

👁️ When choosing between imperfective and perfective infinitives, bear in mind the general concept of verbal aspect, and what verbal form you intend to form by using the infinitive. The following verbal forms are formed from the imperfective and perfective infinitives:

Imperfective infinitive	Perfective infinitive
Present tense (👉 17).	No present tense
Past tense of imperfective verbs (👉 18).	Past tense of perfective verbs (👉 18).
Compound future tense of imperfective verbs (👉 16.1.2).	Simple future tense of perfective verbs (👉 19).

Comments on the table

Some verbal stems are modified when forming the present tense of imperfective verbs (17.1) or the future tense of perfective verbs.

Level
1, 2

16.1.2 Using the infinitive as an essential part of compound verbal forms

In Russian, the infinitive can be used as an essential part of the following compound verbal forms:

- With **быть** (to be) to form the future tense of imperfective verbs: Я **буду делать** (I will do), они **будут делать** (they will do) etc. Only imperfective infinitives can be used in this tense. For the compound future tense, 19.1.2.
- With many personal verbs:

Мария очень любит плавать и играть в волейбол.	Мария loves swimming and playing volleyball.
Он начал работать в Москвѣ в прошлом году.	He started working in Moscow last year.
- A Russian infinitive that follows a verb is often translated into English by using the *gerund*. For example,

Я люблю плавать .	I love swimming .
Перестаньте болтать .	Stop talking .
- With short-form adjectives such as **рад, -а, -ы** (to be pleased); **счастлив, -а, ы** (to be happy); **должен, должна, должно, должны** (must), note a mobile vowel -e- in feminine singular, neuter singular and plural forms; **намерен, -а, -ы** (to intend); **готов, -а, -ы** (to be ready):

Директор должен рассмотреть новое предложение.	The director must consider a new proposal.
--	--

For short-form adjectives, 12.5.

Some additional rules on how to choose between imperfective and perfective infinitives may apply when an infinitive appears after certain verbs (20.6.1.1).

Level
2, 3

The infinitive is frequently used in *impersonal sentences* as an essential part of a compound verbal form (for impersonal sentences, 30):

- With a modal word such as **надо, нужно, необходимо** (necessary), **не надо, не нужно** (not necessary), **возможно** (possible), **невозможно** (impossible), **можно** (to be permitted), **нельзя** (not permitted/not allowed):

Нельзя курить .	No smoking .
Можно войти?	May I come in?
Извините, мне надо идти .	Excuse me, I need to go .
- With an adverb:

Как хорошо гулять по лесу ранним утром.	It is great walking in a forest early in the morning.
---	---
- With negative pronouns or adverbs with the prefix **не-**:

Мне некуда идти .	I have no place to go .
--------------------------	--------------------------------

Some additional rules on how to choose between imperfective and perfective infinitives may apply when an infinitive appears after some modal words (20.6.1.2).

The infinitive can also appear in a sentence as its subject:

Кури́ть – здоро́вью вредит́.

Быть или **не быть**. Вот в чём вопро́с.
(Шекспир)

У меня́ появи́лась **возмо́жность**
порабо́тать за границей.

Smoking damages your health.

To be, or not **to be**, that is the question. (Shakespeare)

I have **the opportunity** to **work** abroad.

Level
1, 2

16.2 The verb **быть** (to be)

The verb **быть** (to be) has only one aspect, the imperfective. It can be used:

- As an independent verb (☞ 18.2, 19.1.1):
Мы там **бы́ли**. We **were** there.
- As a verbal link in a compound verbal form (☞ 12.6, 26.2.2):
Ры́нок **был закры́т**. The market **was closed**.
- To form the compound imperfective future tense (☞ 19.1.1):
Он **бу́дет рабо́тать** за́втра. He **will work** tomorrow.

16.2.1 Omission of **быть** (to be) in the present tense

Unlike in English, **быть** (to be) is not used in the Russian present tense. Therefore, in the present tense there is no verb in the basic Russian sentence that:

- Names or classifies an object: Кто э́то? (Who **is** this?) Э́то профе́ссор. (This **is** a professor.) Что э́то? (What **is** this?) Э́то суперма́ркет. (This **is** a supermarket.)
A dash is usually used between two nouns in the nominative case instead of the verb **быть** (to be):

Господи́н Смирно́в – предста́витель
компáнии. Mr Smirnoff **is** a company representative.

- Indicates location:
Кремль на Кра́сной пло́щади. The Kremlin **is** on Red Square.
Сотру́дники в о́фисе. The staff **are** in the office.
- Points something out: **Вот**, пожа́луйста. (**Here it is**.) **Вот** моя́ дере́вня, **вот** мой дом родно́й (Су́риков). (**Here is** my village, **here is** my house.) The word **вот** serves as the English equivalent to *here is*.
- **Быть** (to be) is omitted as a verbal link to the subject of the sentence with adjectives, short-form participles, adverbs or modal words:

Я **сча́слив**. I **am happy**.
Мы **ра́ды** с Ва́ми **познако́миться**. We **are pleased to meet** you.
Его́ сад **ме́ньше** моего́. His garden **is smaller** than mine.

For more information, ☞ 12.5.

Level
2, 3

16.2.2 Equivalentents of **быть** (to be)

Several verbs have a meaning close to **быть** (to be). They are frequently used to replace **быть** in writing:

- **Явля́ться**, impf. (to be/to appear to be) takes a noun in the instrumental case (☞ 9):

Господи́н Смирно́в **явля́ется**
предста́вителем компáнии
на я́рмарке. Mr Smirnoff **is** a company representative at a trade-fair.

- Кита́й **является** са́мым крупным экспортёром в ми́ре. China **is** the biggest exporter in the world.
- **Явля́ться**, pf. (to be/to attend/to present oneself) answers the questions **куда?** (where to), **когда?** (when):
Вы **обязаны явиться в суд** в ука́занное вре́мя. You are **obliged to be present in court** at the time indicated.
 - **Счита́ться**, impf. (to be considered/to be regarded as to consider/to regard as) takes a noun in the instrumental case (📖 9):
О́зеро Байка́л **считается** са́мым глубо́ким и чи́стым **озером** планеты. Lake Baikal **is considered to be** the deepest and cleanest lake on our planet.
 - **Числи́ться, состоя́ть**, impf. (to be/to be on paper) takes a noun in the instrumental case (📖 9):
– Гово́рят, Вы бы́ли режиссёром?
– Был. Верне́е, **числился**. (Довла́тов). – They say you were a producer?
– Yes, I was. It is better to say, **I held the post** of a producer, but I did nothing.
 - **Исполня́ться**, impf. – **исполни́ться**, pf. (to be/to turn).
Одно́й из са́мых ста́рых жите́льниц планеты в э́том году́ **исполнилось** 114 лет. One of the oldest female citizens in the world **turned** 114 this year.
 - **Находи́ться**, impf. (to be located/to be situated). **Находи́ться** is common in writing and popular speech:
Извини́те, где **находи́тся** городская́ администра́ция? Excuse me, where **are** the local council offices (situated)?
 - **Есть** (is/are) is an old form of **быть** in the present tense. It is used, in scientific style, poetry or idioms:
Э́то **есть** наш послед́ний и решите́льный бой. (Интернациона́л)
Нау́ка есть о́дин из наиболее́ эффективных спосо́бов добыва́ния но́вого зна́ния о ми́ре (Интерне́т). This is our final and decisive battle. (Internationale)
Science **is** one of the most effective ways of gaining new knowledge about the world.
However, the verb **есть** is an essential part of the constructions *one has something* and *there is / there are*:
У **меня́ есть** друг. **I have** a friend.
В **до́ме есть** лифт. **There is** a lift in the house.
For **есть**, 📖 5.1.1, 7.3.1.

Other equivalents of **быть** are:

- **Быва́ть**, impf. – **побыва́ть**, pf. (to be/to exist or to visit) is especially common in popular speech in all tenses. Because it can have both aspects, it is used to emphasise a repeated or a single action:
До́брых дел никогда́ **не быва́ет** (impf., repeated action) **слишком мно́го**. Charity **is** never too much.
Он ча́сто **быва́ет** (impf., repeated action) в отдалённых райо́нах, встре́чается с избира́телями. He often **visits** remote districts and meets his constituents.

Духово́й оркэ́стр **побыва́л**
(pf., single action) на ежегодном

фестивале. Вы когда-нибудь **быва́ли**
(impf., repeated action) на приёме в Кремле́?

The brass band **visited** the
annual festival.

Have you ever **been** to an official
reception in the Kremlin?

- **Наступа́ть**, impf. – **наступи́ть**, pf. (to be) is used when describing time, seasons or sound:

Наступи́ла весна́.

Наступа́ет тишина́.

Spring **has arrived**/It is spring.

It is **getting** quiet.

- **Станови́ться**, impf. – **стать**, pf. (to become/it is getting) is used in impersonal sentences when describing physical and emotional conditions and natural phenomena:

Станови́тся светло́.

Ста́ло светло́.

Ему́ **ста́ло** трудно́ дыша́ть.

It is **getting** light.

It **became** light.

He **started having** breathing
difficulties.

Level
1, 2

16.2.3 Using **быть** (to be) in the past and future tenses

The verb **быть** (to be) does have past and present tenses and is not omitted from sentences. For how to form the past tense of **быть**, ¶ 18.2; for how to form the future tense of **быть**, ¶ 19.1.1.

In the past tense, **быть** must agree with the subject of the sentence in gender and number and, in the future tense, in person and number. In a sentence, **быть** can appear:

16.2.3.1 As a predicate (a verb) to the subject of the sentence:

Где вы **бы́ли**?

Мы **бы́ли** в кино́.

Ты **бу́дешь** за́втра на рабо́те?

Да, обяза́тельно **бу́ду**.

Where **were** you?

We **were** in the cinema.

Will you **be** at work tomorrow?

For sure, I **will be**.

Level
2, 3

16.2.3.2 As a verbal link and as a part of a compound predicate (a compound verbal form). **Быть** connects the subject of the sentence with short-form and comparative adjectives, short-form participles, adverbs or modal words (for more information on each form ¶ the appropriate section given in brackets). For examples see page 153.

<p>A short-form adjective (¶ 12.5): Мы бы́ли ра́ды Вас ви́деть. Мы бу́дем о́чень ра́ды Вас ви́деть.</p>	<p>We were pleased to see you. We will be very pleased to see you.</p>
<p>A comparative adjective (¶ 12.1): Це́ны на ры́нке бы́ли ни́же, чем в суперма́ркете. Це́ны на ры́нке бу́дут ни́же, чем в суперма́ркете.</p>	<p>The prices in the market were lower than the supermarket. The prices in the market will be lower than the supermarket.</p>

<p>A short-form participle (👉 26.2):</p> <p>Фестиваль был открыт.</p> <p>Фестиваль будет открыт.</p>	<p>The festival was opened.</p> <p>The festival will be opened.</p>
<p>An adverb (👉 13):</p> <p>В горах было холодно.</p> <p>В горах будет холодно.</p>	<p>It was cold in the mountains.</p> <p>It will be cold in the mountains.</p>
<p>A modal word (👉 30.1):</p> <p>Секретарю надо было подгото́вить отчёт.</p> <p>Секретарю надо будет подгото́вить отчёт.</p>	<p>The secretary needed to prepare a report.</p> <p>The secretary will need to prepare a report.</p>
<p>A noun or a long-form adjective in the instrumental or nominative case (👉 9.2.4):</p> <p>Вера была /будет прекра́сным врачом.</p> <p>Спекта́кль был /будет интере́сным.</p> <p>Пу́шкин был поэт от Бо́га.</p>	<p>Vera was/will be a great doctor.</p> <p>The show was/will be interesting.</p> <p>Pushkin was blessed as a poet.</p>

Упражнения

Level
1, 2

1. Complete the sentences using **быть** in the appropriate form:

1. Вчера́ Ни́на в кита́йском рестора́не.
2. За́втра Са́ша на рабо́те.
3. Мы с подруго́й отды́хать на пля́же.
4. В воскресе́нье я уже́ в пу́ти.
5. На про́шлой неде́ле мы на дискоте́ке.

Level
2, 3

2. Complete the sentences using the verbs **быва́ть**, **станови́ться**, **наступáть**, **явля́ться**, **находи́ться** or **счита́ться** in the appropriate form:

1. Па́риж сто́лицей Фра́нции.
2. В сле́дующем году́ И́ра ча́сто в госта́х у ба́бушки.
3. Всегда́, когда́ ле́то, тепло́.
4. Ра́ньше Пе́тр поря́дочным чело́веком.
5. Эрма́таж в Са́нкт-Петербу́рге.

17 Verbs: present tense

Level
1, 2

The Russian verb has only one present tense, which is imperfective. For verbal aspect, see 20.

Russian and English tenses do not fully correspond. Therefore, understanding the context helps to translate verbs correctly from/to English. For example:

Каждый день я читаю.

I read every day.

Сейчас я читаю.

I am reading now.

In a sentence, the present tense verb must agree with the subject in person and number. This means the verb changes its ending or *conjugates* in accordance with the form of the subject. The subject of the sentence appears in the sentence in the nominative case. For the nominative case, see 5.

Below is the complete set of eight personal pronouns that represent the 1st, 2nd and 3rd persons in the singular and plural:

Person	Russian personal pronoun corresponding to the person	English personal pronoun corresponding to the person
1st singular	я	I
2nd singular	ты	you (<i>informal, familiar form singular</i>)
3rd singular	он/она/оно	he/she/it
1st plural	мы	we
2nd plural	Вы	you (<i>formal, when addressing one person</i>)
	вы	you (<i>plural</i>)
3rd plural	они	they

17.1 Present tense formation

Russian verbs can be divided into two conjugations (types) as follows.

- **The first conjugation**

The most common endings of the first-conjugation infinitives are **-ать/-ять/-еть/-оть/-уть/-ти/-чь**.

Monosyllabic verbs ending in **-ить** (for example, **жить** (to live), **пить** (to drink) etc.) are also first-conjugation verbs.

- **The second conjugation**

The most common ending of the second-conjugation infinitives is **-ить**.

Some verbs ending in **-ать** and **-еть** are second-conjugation verbs. For example:

- Some verbs ending in **-еть**: **терпéть** (to endure/tolerate), **вертéть** (to spin), **обидéть** (to offend), **зависéть** (to depend), **ненавидéть** (to hate), **видéть** (to see), **смотрéть** (to look/watch).
- Some verbs ending in **-ать**: **гнать** (to chase/drive), **держáть** (hold), **слýшать** (to hear), **дышáть** (to breathe).
- Some verbs ending in **-чать**: **кричáть** (to shout), **молчáть** (to be silent).

However, there are several exceptions to this pattern that must be memorised. Therefore it is necessary to check in a dictionary which provides irregular verb endings to see to which *conjugation* (type) a verb belongs.

Level
1, 2

17.1.1 Formation of conjugation I verbs

To form the present tense of conjugation I verbs:

- Remove **the last two letters** of the infinitive, for example, **работáть** (to work) – **работá-**, **идт́и** (to go) – **ид-**.
- Add the following personal ending to the stem:

Person	Ending
1st singular	-ю/-ý
2nd singular	-ешь/-ёшь
3rd singular	-ет/-ёт
1st plural	-ем/-ём
2nd plural	-ете/-ёте
3rd plural	-ют/-ýт

Note some variations in the pattern:

A работáть (to work) работá-	B писáть (to write) пиш-	C идт́и (to go) ид-	D рисовáть (to draw) рису-	E воевáть (to fight) вою-	F давáть (to give) да-	G печь (to bake) пек-
Я работáю	пишý	идý	рисýю	воюю	даю	пекý
Ты работáешь	пишешь	идёшь	рисýешь	воюешь	даёшь	печёшь
Он/онá/онó работáет	пишет	идёт	рисýет	воюет	даёт	печёт
Мы работáем	пишем	идём	рисýем	воюем	даём	печём
Вы работáете	пишете	идёте	рисýете	воюете	даёте	печёте
Он́и работáют	пишут	идýт	рисýют	воюют	даýт	пекýт

Comments on some variations in the pattern of conjugation I verbs shown above:

- **All examples:** In the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural forms **-ю** appears after a vowel and **-y** after a consonant.

- **Examples C and G:** If the stem of the verb ends in a consonant and the stress falls on the ending, **-e** in the ending is replaced by **-ѐ**.
- **Examples D and E:** If the infinitive has suffixes **-ева/-ова-**, drop **-ва** and
 - replace **-e** or **-o** with **-y** after a hard consonant: танцевать – танцую́;
 - рисовать – рису́ю.
 - replace **-e** with **-ю** after a soft consonant: воевать – вою́ю.

Then add the appropriate ending.

For the hard and soft consonants, 📖 1.4.

- **Example F:** If the infinitive has the suffix **-ава**, drop **-ва**. Then add the appropriate ending. If the stress falls on the ending, **-e** in the ending is replaced by **-ѐ**.

Note the infinitive form with suffix **-ыва** is not affected. It follows pattern A; for example, опаздывать (to be late): опаздываю́, опаздываешь etc.

- 📖 **Examples B and G:** Many verbs are affected by consonant alternation (change) to the stem. In particular, the 1st singular (я) and the 3rd plural (они) forms are affected. For a list of the most common consonant changes in the stem, 📖 17.1.2.

Level
2, 3

17.1.2 Consonant alternation (changes) in conjugation I verbs

📖 In the present tense, the most frequent consonant alternations (changes) occur in the stem of conjugation I verbs that end in **-ать**. Note the consonant change and loss of the letter **-а** in these examples:

с–ш	писа́ть (to write): пишу́, пишешь, пишет, пишем, пишете, пишут
х–ш	пахáть (to plough): пашу́, пашешь, пашет, пашем, пашете, пашут
з–ж	рэза́ть (to cut/to slice): режу́, режешь, режет, режем, режете, режут
г–ж	двигáть (to move/to be motivated): дви́жу, дви́жешь, дви́жет, дви́жем, дви́жете, дви́жут
д–ж	глода́ть (to gnaw): гложу́, гложешь, гложет, гложем, гложете, гложут
ск–щ	иска́ть (to look for): ищю́, ищешь, ищет, ищем, ищите, ищут
т–щ	ропта́ть (to grumble): ропщу́, ропщешь, ропщет, ропщем, ропщете, ропщут
т–ч	прята́ть (to hide): прячу́, прячешь, прячет, прячем, прячете, прячут
к–ч	пла́кать (to weep): плачу́, плачешь, плачет, плачем, плачете, плачут
б–бл	колеба́ть (to shake): колеблю́, колеблешь, колеблет, колеблем, колеблете, колеблют
м–мл	дрема́ть (to doze): дремлю́, дрэмлешь, дрэмлет, дрэмлем, дрэмлете, дрэмлют
п–пл	сыпа́ть (to sprinkle): сыплю́, сыплешь, сыплет, сыпем, сыплете, сыплют

- The verb **двигать** and its reflexive pair **двигаться** have two meanings and follow two different patterns. The verb follows the pattern described in the table above when used in figurative sense or in technical terms: Преступниками движет жадность (The criminals are motivated by greed). Турбина движется (The turbine is moving). The verbs follow a different pattern with no consonant change (двигаю, двигаешь, двигают) when used with the literal meaning 'to move': Они двигают диван (They are moving a sofa).
- Some verbs that follow the pattern described in the above table have alternative endings without consonant changes: **махать** (to wave) – махаю, махаешь, махают etc.; **капать** (to drip) – капаю, капаешь, капают.
- The consonant change **сл-шл** occurs in the future tense (ⓘ 19.1.3) of the perfective verb **послать** (to send) and other verbs formed from the same root: пошл^ю, пошл^{ёшь}, пошл^{ёт}, пошл^{ём}, пошл^{ёте}, пошл^{ют}.
- Many first-conjugation verbs affected by consonant change have distinctive stress patterns. If their infinitives have the stress on the ending, the 1st person singular keeps the stress on the ending. The rest of the conjugation has the stress moved to the stem. If their infinitives have the stress on the stem, the stress remains in its original position.

Verbs ending with **-чь** have the following changes in the stem:

ч-к	печь (to bake): пеку́, печёшь, печёт, печём, печёте, пеку́т
ч-г-ж	мочь (to be able/can): могу́, можешь, может, можем, можете, могут

Some verbs are irregular. Among them:

ехать (to go in or on a vehicle) : еду́, едешь, едет, едем, едете, едут

☞ Many monosyllabic verbs belong to conjugation I and have present tense stems that are different from their infinitive stems:

жить (to live)	пить (to drink)	ждать (to wait)	звать (to call)	брать (to take)
жив-	пь-	жд-	зов-	бер-
я живу́	пью́	жду́	зову́	беру́
ты живёшь	пьёшь	ждёшь	зовёшь	берёшь
он/она́/оно́ живёт	пьёт	ждёт	зовёт	берёт
мы живём	пьём	ждем	зовём	берём
вы живёте	пьёте	ждёте	зовёте	берёте
они́ живу́т	пьют	ждут	зову́т	беру́т

Level
1, 2

17.1.3 Formation of conjugation II verbs

To form the present tense of conjugation II verbs:

- Remove **the last three letters** of the infinitive form, for example, **говори́ть** (to speak) – говор-, **молча́ть** (to keep silent) – молч-.
- Add the following personal endings to the stem:

Person	Ending
1st singular	-ю/-у
2nd singular	-ишь
3rd singular	-ит
1st plural	-им
2nd plural	-ите
3rd plural	-ят/-ат

Note some variations in the pattern:

А говори́ть (to speak) говор-	В молча́ть (to be silent) молч-	С люби́ть (to love) люб-
я говори́ю	молчу́	люблю́
ты говори́шь	молчи́шь	люби́шь
он/она́/оно́ говори́т	молчи́т	люби́т
мы говори́м	молчи́м	люби́м
вы говори́те	молчи́те	люби́те
они говори́ят	молча́т	любя́т

Comments on some variations in the pattern of conjugation II verbs:

- All conjugation II present tense stems end in a consonant. If a consonant is affected by spelling rule 1 (г, к, х, ж, ш, ч, щ, ц), **-у** appears in the 1st person singular and **-а** appears in the 3rd person plural. For the spelling rules, 📖 1.3.
- After any other consonants **-ю** and **-я** are used respectively in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural.
- Many verbs are affected by consonant alternation (change) to the stem. Often these changes affect only the 1st person singular. The verb **люби́ть** (pattern C) is an example. For a list of the most common consonant changes in the stem, 📖 17.1.4.
- Many second-conjugation verbs have distinctive stress patterns (with some exceptions). If their infinitives have the stress on the ending, the first person singular keeps the stress on the ending. The rest of the conjugation has the stress moved to the stem. If their infinitives have the stress on the stem, the stress remains in its original position.

Level
2, 3

17.1.4 Consonant alternation (changes) in conjugation II verbs

👁️ The following alternation (changes) frequently occur in the stem of conjugation II verbs. It affects only the 1st person singular. The rest of the endings follow the standard pattern:

б–бл	лю б ить (to love) – люб л ю, ... любя т
п–пл	спать (to sleep) – сп л ю, ... спя т
в–вл	гот о вить (to cook/to prepare) – гот о вл ю , ... гот о вя т
м–мл	корм и ть (to feed) – корм л ю, ... кор м я т
ф–фл	граф и ть (to rule paper) – граф л ю, ... графя т
т–ч	плат и ть (to pay) – пла ч у, ... пла т я т
ст–щ	чи с тить (to clean) – чи щ у, ... чи с тя т
д–ж	ход и ть (to go) – хо ж у, ... хо д я т
з–ж	воз и ть (to transport) – во ж у, ... во з я т
с–ш	нос и ть (to carry) – но ш у, ... но с я т

Level
1, 2

17.1.5 Mixed-conjugation verbs

Some verbs follow their own pattern and contain endings of both conjugations. For example:

есть (to eat)	хотеть (to want/wish)	бежать (to run)
я ем (special form)	хоч у (I/II)	бег у (I/II)
ты ешь (special form)	хоч е шь (I)	бег и шь (II)
он, она, оно ест (special form)	хоч е т (I)	бег и т (II)
мы едим (II)	хот и м (II)	бег и м (II)
вы едите (II)	хот и те (II)	бег и те (II)
они едят (II)	хот я т (II)	бег у т (I)

Level
2, 3

17.2 Reflexive verbs in the present tense

For the use of reflexive verbs, 📖 23.

To form the present tense of a reflexive verb:

- Identify the verb conjugation (📖 see section 17.1): занима**т**ся (to be occupied) – conjugation I, учи**т**ся (to study) – conjugation II.
- Drop the four last letters of the conjugation I infinitive: занима**-**.
- Drop the five last letters of the conjugation II infinitive: уч**-**.

- Follow the patterns for the conjugation I or II verbs (👉 see section 17.1).
- Add **-ся** after a consonant or the letter **-ь**, or **-сь** after a vowel. For example:

Conjugation I	Conjugation II
я занима́юсь	учу́сь
ты занима́ешься	у́чишься
он (она́, оно́) занима́ется	у́чится
мы занима́емся	у́чимся
вы занима́етесь	у́читесь
они занима́ются	у́чатся

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Fill in the gaps using the verb given in brackets in the appropriate form of the present tense:

1. Гру́ппа тури́стов (отдыха́ть) в лесу́. Пенсионе́ры (собира́ть) гри́бы, (игра́ть) в домино́, (разгова́ривать) и (обсужда́ть) послед́ние но́вости.
2. Верони́ка ве́село (танцева́ть) на дискоте́ке.
3. Худо́жник (рисова́ть) карти́ну, писа́тель (писа́ть) но́вый рома́н, пека́рь (печь) хлеб, а продаве́ц (продава́ть) сувени́ры.

Level
2

2. Use the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form of the present tense:

1. Как Вас (звать)?
2. Кто (иска́ть), тот всегда́ найдёт.
3. Студе́нты (брать) кни́ги в библиоте́ке.
4. На за́втрак я (пить) ко́фе и (есть) ка́шу.
5. Шко́льники (ждать) результа́тов экза́мена.
6. Это непра́вда. Вы (лгать).
7. Вы (мочь) мне помо́чь?
8. Оля гро́мко (пла́кать).

Level
2, 3

3. Complete the Russian proverbs using the appropriate verbs, in the present tense, from the list provided:

разруша́ть, провожа́ть, начина́ть, боле́ть, конча́ть, погиба́ть:

1. По оде́жке встреча́ют, а по уму́
2. Дека́брь год, а зи́му
3. Мир стро́ит, а война́
4. Сме́лый побежда́ет, а трус
5. Челове́к от лени́, а от труда́ здорове́ет.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

4. Use the infinitive verbs below in the 3rd person singular present tense to describe Mr Smirnoff's typical summer holiday on a beach.

Встава́ть ра́но у́тром, принима́ть душ, бри́ться, одева́ться, занима́ться в тренаже́рном за́ле, купа́ться в мо́ре, лежа́ть на пля́же, загора́ть, ката́ться на во́дных лы́жах/на велосипе́де, игра́ть в те́ннис/в гольф, рассла́бля́ться, танцева́ть на дискоте́ке, петь пе́сни, пить пи́во в ба́ре, е́здить на экску́рсию, есть шашлы́ки, устава́ть, спа́ть до́лго, ви́деть сны.



18 Verbs: past tense

Level
1, 2

There is only one past tense in Russian. However, both imperfective and perfective verbs can be used in the past tense. For verbal aspect, see 20. Imperfective verbs in the past tense describe an ongoing action, a general statement/fact or an action in progress. Perfective verbs in the past tense describe a completed single action or the result of an action that occurred in the past.

Russian and English tenses do not fully correspond. Therefore, translation to/from English depends on understanding the context and meaning of the Russian verbal aspects. For example:

Мы целый день пекли́ (impf. past) пироги́.	We were making pies for the whole day/ we spent the whole day making pies.
Мы испекли́ (pf. past) пять пирого́в.	We made/have made five pies.

Past tense verbs do not *conjugate* (agree with a subject in person and number). Instead, all Russian past tense verbs function as short-form adjectives and agree with the subject of the sentence in gender and number. For example:

Он де́лал (m, singular).	He did.
Она́ де́лала (f, singular).	She did.
Они́ де́лали (pl).	They did.

For the short adjectives, see 12.5.

Level
1, 2

18.1 Past-tense formation

Both the imperfective and the perfective verbs are formed in the same way in the past tense. However, two different infinitives, imperfective and perfective, are used to form, respectively, imperfective and perfective past tense verbs. Both infinitives are clearly marked in dictionaries; for example, де́лать, impf. (to do), сде́лать, pf. (to do).

To form the past tense:

- Remove the last two letters of the infinitive form (dictionary form) **-ть/-ти/-чь**, for example де́лать, impf. (to do), сде́лать, pf. (to do).
- Add the suffix **-л** to the stem: де́лал, impf. (did, was doing), сде́лал, pf. (did/has done).
- Then, for the masculine singular form, add nothing after **-л**: де́лал, сде́лал.
- For the feminine singular form, add **-а** after **-л**: де́лала, сде́лала.
- For the neuter singular form, add **-о** after **-л**: де́лало, сде́лало.
- For all plural forms, add **-и** after **-л**: де́лали, сде́лали.
- To form the past tense of reflexive verbs, follow the standard pattern described above, then add **-ся** after a consonant or **-сь** after a vowel; for example,

интересова́ться (to be interested) – интересова́лся (m), интересова́лась (f),
интересова́лось (n), интересова́лись (pl).

When speaking about yourself in the past tense, it is necessary to remember your own gender. The gender of the past-tense verb must correspond to the gender of the speaker. When using the polite form **Вы** (you) in the past tense, the verb requires the plural form of the verb. For example:

- | | |
|---|--|
| – Что Вы дѣлали (pl) вчера, Ирина? | ‘What did you do/were you doing yesterday, Irina?’ |
| – Я отдыха́ла (f). | ‘I relaxed/was relaxing.’ |
| – Что Вы дѣлали (pl) вчера, Джон? | ‘What did you do/were you doing yesterday, John?’ |
| – Я отдыха́л (m). | ‘I relaxed/was relaxing.’ |

Level
1, 2

18.2 The verb **быть** (to be) in the past tense

For more information on **быть** (to be), see 16.2.

To form the past tense of **быть**, follow the standard pattern described above: 18.1. **Быть** has the following past tense forms: **был** (m), **была́** (f), **было** (n), **были** (pl).

Level
2, 3

18.3 Irregular past tense verbs

Several verbs follow a special pattern in the past tense. They are listed below.

- The verb **идти́** and its derived forms are formed by using a different stem: **шёл, шла, шло, шли** etc. If an added prefix ends with a consonant the vowel **о** is added to the prefix: **вошёл, вошла́, обошёл** etc.
- Verbs that have infinitives ending with **-ти** (except **идти́**), **-чь** and **-ереть**, the verb **лезть** and their derived forms. Note the absence of the suffix **-л-** in the masculine form after the consonants **з, с, г, к** and **р**, and the appearance of the letter **ѐ** under stress. Some verbs ending in **-сти** are exceptions to this rule (see comments below).

везти́ (to transport)	вѐз, везла́, везло́, везли́
нести́ (to carry)	нѐс, несла́, несло́, несли́
расти́ (to grow)	рос, росла́, росло́, росли́
мочь (can, to be able to)	мог, могла́, могло́, могли́
помочь (to help)	помо́г, помогла́, помогло́, помогли́
печь (to bake)	пѐк, пекла́, пекло́, пекли́
лечь (to lay down)	лѐг, легла́, легло́, легли́
течь (to leak/to flow)	тѐк, текла́, текло́, текли́
умереть (to die)	у́мер, умерла́, умерло, умерли
протереть (to rub through/to grate)	протѐр, протѐрла, протѐрло, протѐрли
лезть (to climb)	лез, лѐзла, лѐзло, лѐзли

- Verbs that have infinitives ending with **-сти** and their derived forms keep the suffix **-л-** in all forms, if their present and future tense stems end with **-д** or **-т**. For example:

вести́: веду́, веду́т (to lead)	вѐл, велá, вело́, вели́
цвести́: цвету́, цвету́т (to blossom)	цвѐл, цвелá, цвело́, цвели́

- Verbs that have infinitives ending with **-сть** and their derived forms drop the three last letters of the infinitive to form the past tense:

есть (to eat)	ел, ела, ёло, ёли
сесть (to sit down)	сел, села, село, сели
- Most imperfective and perfective verbs ending with **-нуть** drop the suffix **-ну-** in the past tense. They lose the suffix **-л-** in the masculine form, if the stem ends with a consonant, and keep **-л-**, if the stem ends with a vowel:

мёрзнуть/замёрзнуть (to freeze)	(за)мёрз, (за)мёрзла, (за)мёрзло, (за)мёрзли
мокнуть/промокнуть (to get wet)	(про)мо́к, (про)мо́кла, (про)мо́кло, (про)мо́кли
вянуть/завянуть (to fade)	(за)вя́л, (за)вя́ла, (за)вя́ло, (за)вя́ли
- Perfective verbs ending in **-нуть** keep the suffixes **-ну-** and **-л-** in all forms, if they describe a single instantaneous action. For example:

крикнуть (to shout)	крикнул, крикнула, крикнуло, крикнули
прыгнуть (to jump)	прыгнул, прыгнула, прыгнуло, прыгнули
- Some verbs, if they have only *perfective* forms ending with **-нуть**, drop the suffix **-ну-** in the past tense and also the suffix **-л-** in the masculine form:

Привыкнуть (to get used to)	привык, привыкла, привыкло, привыкли
Достигнуть (to reach)	достиг, достигла, достигло, достигли
Исчезнуть (to disappear)	исчез, исчезла, исчезло, исчезли

Упражнения

Level
1

1. Rewrite the sentences in the past tense:

1. Вёра ходит в школу.
2. Мальчик читает книгу.
3. Столовая не работает.
4. Студент интересуется теннисом.
5. Они спят долго.

Level
2, 3

2. Rewrite the sentences in the past tense:

1. Повар трёт сыр.
2. Бабушка печёт пирог с грибами.
3. Официант несёт блюдо на подносе.
4. Он выращивает петрушку в саду.
5. «Скорая помощь» везёт пациента в больницу.
6. Гости едят блины с икрой.
7. Кот прыгает на стол.
8. Они привыкнут к жарё.
9. Ребёнок хорошо танцует и рисует.
10. Река течёт по равнине.
11. Когда дети идут в школу, они разговаривают и смеются.

Level
1, 2**Обобщающее упражнение**

3. Use the infinitive verbs below in the past tense to describe Mr Smirnoff's typical winter holiday.



Вставать рано утром, ложиться спать поздно вечером, мыться, бриться, принимать душ, одеваться, заниматься в тренажёрном зале, плавать в бассейне, кататься на лыжах/на коньках, расслабляться, танцевать на дискотеке, петь песни, играть на гитаре, обедать в ресторане, пить пиво в баре, ездить на экскурсию, есть бутерброд, торопиться в аэропорт, ходить в кафе, ужинать, уставать, смотреть телевизор, спать долго.

19 Verbs: future tense

Level
1, 2

In Russian, imperfective and perfective verbs form their future tenses in two different ways. Imperfective verbs have the compound form of the future tense and perfective verbs have the simple form: 📖 19.1.2 and 19.1.3. Imperfective verbs in the future tense describe an action in progress/repeated action or an intention of doing something in the future. Perfective verbs in the future tense describe a complete single action that will occur. For verbal aspect, 📖 20.

Russian and English tenses do not fully correspond. Therefore, translation to/from English depends on understanding the context and meaning of the Russian verbal aspects. For example:

Завтра на обед мы **будем готовить**
(impf) борщ.

Завтра на обед мы **приготовим** (pf)
борщ.

Tomorrow we **intend to make/**
will be making borsch for lunch.

Tomorrow we **will make** borsch for
lunch.

19.1 Future tense formation

Level
1, 2

19.1.1 The verb **БЫТЬ** (to be) in the future tense

The verb **БЫТЬ** (to be) has only one aspect (the imperfective) and forms the future tense in its own way. For more on **БЫТЬ**, 📖 16.2.

To form the future tense of **БЫТЬ**:

- Use the stem **буд-**. Note the stem differs from the infinitive stem of the verb **БЫТЬ (бы-)**.
- Follow the pattern of a regular conjugation I verb in the present tense: 📖 17.1.1.

1st person singular	я буду
2nd person singular	ты будешь
3rd person singular	он, она, оно будет
1st person plural	мы будем
2nd person plural	вы будете
3rd person plural	они будут

The verb **БЫТЬ** in the future tense can appear in a sentence as a self-contained verb and as a predicate to the subject of the sentence. **БЫТЬ** must agree with the subject of the sentence in person and number. For example:

Мы будем на выставке в среду.
Я там буду.

We will be at the exhibition on Wednesday.
I will be there.

Level
1, 2

19.1.2 Formation of the imperfective (compound) future tense

Russian imperfective verbs have a compound form of the future tense. The tense contains the verb **быть** in the appropriate form of the future tense (☞ 19.1.1) and the imperfective infinitive of the verb that carries the meaning. Note that only an imperfective infinitive can be used to form the compound future tense.

In a sentence, **быть** (to be) must agree with the subject in person and number. The imperfective infinitive does not change. For example:

Я буду рабóтать.	I will work.
Мы б́удем отдыхáть.	We will relax.

To form the imperfective (compound) future tense:

- Take the appropriate form of **быть** (**to be**) in the future tense (☞ 19.1.1): я б́уду, ты б́удешь, они́ б́удут etc.
- Add the imperfective infinitive of the verb that carries the meaning. For example

Я буду читáть.	I will read/will be reading.
Они́ б́удут читáть.	They will read/will be reading.

Level
2, 3

19.1.3 Formation of the perfective (simple form) of the future tense

Russian perfective verbs have a future tense called the ‘*simple*’ future tense because it contains only one verb. The simple future tense of perfective verbs is formed in exactly the same way as the present tense of imperfective verbs.

For the formation of the present tense, ☞ 17.1.

Imperfective verbs in the present tense and perfective verbs in the simple future tense follow exactly the same rules and patterns. Both imperfective present-tense verbs and perfective future-tense verbs belong to either conjugation I or conjugation II, or are mixed-conjugation verbs, and follow the pattern described above (☞ 17.1). However, imperfective present tense verbs and perfective future tense verbs are formed from two different infinitives, imperfective and perfective respectively. The verbal aspect is clearly marked in dictionaries. This prevents confusing them when using the present and the future tenses.

Compare:

Present tense	Perfective future
дéлать – to do (imperfective infinitive)	сдéлать – to do (perfective infinitive)
я дéлаю	я сдéлаю
ты дéлаешь	ты сдéлаешь
он/онá/онó дéлает	он/онá/онó сдéлает
мы дéлаем	мы сдéлаем
вы дéлаете	вы сдéлаете
они́ дéлают	они́ сдéлают

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Put the imperfective verbs in brackets into the future tense:

1. Мы (изучать) русский язык.
2. Профессор (работать) с нами.
3. Я (есть) блины.
4. Летом они (плавать) в реке.
5. Вы (обедать)?

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

2. Use the perfective verbs given below in the infinitive to describe, in the 1st person singular future tense, Mr Smirnoff's trip to lake Baikal.



Встать рано утром, вызвать такси, позавтракать наспех, выпить чаю, приехать на вокзал, вскочить в поезд, расположиться в уютном купе, познакомиться с соседями по купе, пообедать в вагоне-ресторане, приехать в Иркутск, переночевать в гостинице, отправиться на озеро, поймать много рыбы, искупаться в озере, вернуться домой, рассказать друзьям о поездке.

20 Verbs: verbal aspect

Level
1, 2

In Russian, verbal aspect is one of the core grammatical concepts, together with the three tenses – past, present and future (for information on the tenses, see 17, 18 and 19 respectively). Russian tenses give us the time during which the action takes place – in *the present, past* or *future*. However, verbal aspect is the essence of the description of an action. Verbal aspect describes an action in the following ways:

Imperfective aspect	Perfective aspect
• Describes an incomplete action that is/ was/will be in progress.	• Describes a complete action and focuses on the result achieved by the action ('Done!').
• Describes a repeated action that occurs/ occurred/will occur more than once.	• Describes a single action that occurred/will occur only once.
• Confirms that the action took place, is taking place or will take place without indicating whether the action was completed and the result was achieved.	

Most Russian verbs have two verbal aspects, called *imperfective* and *perfective*. Only a few verbs have just one aspect. In dictionaries, the aspect of the verb is indicated by the abbreviations *impf* (imperfective) and *pf* (perfective); aspect pairs are cross-referenced.

👁 Russian verbal aspect may present some difficulties for the following reasons:

- Use of the verbal aspect depends on three factors: the context, the nature of the action described and what information about this action the speaker wants to give. Use of the verbal aspect requires keeping in mind all these factors.
- Sometimes the context may be unclear or ambiguous and therefore use of the verbal aspect depends on the speaker's personal interpretation of the context.
- English and Russian language users have different ways of expressing concepts of time and action, which do not always correspond. Translation from/to English depends on context and on what information is important for the speaker in this context.

👁 20.1 Formation of verbal aspect

In Russian there is no single unified pattern on the formation of perfective and imperfective verbs. Most aspectual pairs are formed by various verbal stem modifications (adding prefixes, adding or changing suffixes). Although some prefixes and suffixes used in the verbal aspect formation might have similar meaning, all aspectual pairs need to be checked in a dictionary.

For the formation and meaning of verbal aspects of verbs of motion, see 25.5.

The most common ways to form the perfective are as follows (☞ sections given in brackets):

- By adding a prefix to the imperfective stem (☞ 20.1.1).
- By making some internal changes to the imperfective stem (☞ 20.1.5).
- By using a different verb (☞ 20.1.6).

Level
1, 2

Perfective verbs formed from the imperfective have the following characteristics:

- The meaning of the verb is not always changed.
- The majority of perfective verbs focus on an end to the action ('Done!') and emphasise that the described action is single and complete. For example, **дѣлать** (to do, impf) – **сдѣлать** (to finish doing, pf); **читать** (to read, impf) – **прочитать** (to finish reading, pf).
- Some perfective verbs focus either on the beginning of an action or on its duration rather than on the end of the action. However, they still convey the idea that the described action is single and complete (☞ 20.1.2).

Level
2, 3

20.1.1 Formation of the perfective aspect by adding a prefix

The perfective aspect of the verb can be formed by adding a prefix to the imperfective stem. Some examples of prefixes frequently used to form the perfective form are listed below. In all the examples given, the perfective verbs with the added prefix have the same meaning as their imperfective pair, but emphasise that a single and complete action is over:

Prefix	Examples	
	Imperfective	Perfective
про-	читать (to read)	прочитать
на-	писать (to write) печатать (to print) рисовать (to draw)	написать напечатать нарисовать
вы-	пить (to drink) учить (to learn/to study)	выпить выучить
с-	есть (to eat) петь (to sing) дѣлать (to do) играть (to play) мочь (can /to be able to)	съесть* спеть сдѣлать сыграть* смочь
при-	готовить (to prepare /to cook)	приготовить
по-	смотреть (to watch /to look at) звонить (to ring/to make a call) завтракать (to have breakfast) обѣдать (to have lunch) ужинать (to have dinner) строить (to build)	посмотреть позвонить позавтракать пообѣдать поужинать построить
за-	платить (to pay)	заплатить

* съесть: note the addition of the **ь** after the prefix; сыграть: note the vowel change **и/ы** in the root.

Curiously, there is only one verb, *to buy*, whose perfective form has no prefix, but whose imperfective form does: **покупать** (impf) – **купить** (pf).

Level
2, 3

20.1.2 Prefixes **за-**, **по-** and **про-**

The meaning of the prefixes **за-**, **по-** and **про-** may differ from verb to verb. Some perfective verbs with added **за-**, **по-** and **про-** focus on the end of a single and complete action (☞ the table in 20.1.1). However, other perfective verbs with added prefixes **за-**, **по-** and **про-** focus on the beginning or duration of a single and complete action rather than on the end. All three prefixes have specific meanings when added to verbs of motion (☞ 25.1.3).

- **За-** may emphasise the beginning of the action when added to some imperfective verbs. Many of these verbs describe a sound: **хлопать** – **захлопать** (to applaud); **кричать** – **закричать** (to shout/to scream); **петь** – **запеть** (to sing); **играть** – **заиграть** (to play music); **молчать** – **замолчать** (to be silent); **лаять** – **залаять** (to bark); **плакать** – **заплакать** (to cry) etc.
- **По-** may emphasise the short duration of the action when added to some verbs: **работать** – **поработать** (to work); **спать** – **поспать** (to sleep); **говорить** – **поговорить** (to talk); **есть** – **поесть** (to eat).
- **Про-** may emphasise an action of long duration: **работать** – **проработать** (to work); **жить** – **прожить** (to live); **учиться** – **проучиться** (to study); **заниматься** – **прозаниматься** (to be occupied).

Level
2, 3

20.1.3 Perfective forms of the verbs **видеть**, **знать** and **слышать**

The prefix **у-** added to the imperfective verbs **видеть**, **знать** and **слышать** form their perfective pair with a slight modification to the verb meaning:

Meaning of the imperfective form	Meaning of the perfective form
видеть (to see/to have visual ability/to meet someone)	увидеть (to catch sight of) – the perfective form loses the verb meanings ‘to meet someone’ and ‘to have visual ability’
слышать (to hear/to have a sense of hearing)	услышать (to hear) – the perfective form loses the verb meaning ‘to have a sense of hearing’
знать (to know)	узнать (to find out/to learn) – the perfective form has the modified meaning of ‘to learn’ and ‘to find out’

Level
3

20.1.4 Prefixes that change the verb meaning

Some prefixes added to some basic imperfective verbs change the meaning of the verb and make the verb perfective. For example:

писать (to write)	выписать (to prescribe/to subscribe)
писать (to write)	списать (to copy)
писать (to write)	записать (to write down)
писать (to write)	описать (to describe)

писа́ть (to write)	подписа́ть (to sign)
писа́ть (to write)	переписа́ть (to rewrite/to copy).

If the prefix changes the meaning of the verb, a new imperfective verb with modified meaning is formed by adding the suffix **-ыва/-ива** or **-ва** to the stem of the perfective verb with prefix. So the aspect pairs in this case are considered as follows:

Imperfective aspect (describes an on-going action)	Perfective aspect (describes a single complete action)
выпи́сывать (to prescribe/to subscribe/to write out)	вы́писать (to prescribe/to subscribe/to write out)
спи́сывать (to copy)	спи́сать (to copy)
запи́сывать (to write down)	запи́сать (to write down)
опи́сывать (to describe)	опи́сать (to describe)
подпи́сывать (to sign)	подпи́сать (to sign)
перепи́сывать (to rewrite/to copy)	перепи́сать (to rewrite/to copy)

It is possible to see some similarities in use and meaning of some prefixes. However, there is no single unified pattern for how the added prefixes change the verb meaning. Some prefixes may have multiple meanings, depending on the verb. Therefore, the meaning of all verbs with added prefixes needs to be checked in a dictionary. The examples below show how some frequently occurring prefixes added to a verb change the verb meaning. (For verbs of motion with prefixes, 📖 25.)

Prefix	Meaning	Example
в-	to join/to insert	всту́пать/всту́пить (to join a group) вста́влиять/вста́вить (insert)
вы-	to take away	выбра́сывать/выбро́сить (to throw out)
до-	to do something to a certain point	дочítaывать/дочítaть до сере́дины (to read half the book) дожи́вать/дожи́ть до рассвёта (to survive to dawn) допи́сывать/допи́сать до кон́ца стра́ницы (to write to the end of the page)
за-	to get/to gain/to close	заго́тавливать/заго́товить (to store) захва́тывать/захвати́ть (to seize) закле́ивать/закле́ить (to seal) завя́зывать/завяза́ть (to fasten)
на-	to add/to press	накле́ивать/накле́ить; нале́плять/нале́пить (to stick something on something) нажи́мать/нажа́ть; нада́вливать/надави́ть (to press)
недо-	to underdo	недое́дать/недое́сть (to not finish your meal) недоса́ливать/недосо́лить (to not add enough salt) недова́ривать/недова́рить (to undercook)

Prefix	Meaning	Example
о-/об-	to complete	осмáтривать/осмотрéть (to examine/to look thoroughly) обдúмывать/обдúмать (to think through)
пере-	to re-do	перестра́ивать/перестро́ить (to rebuild) перечítывать/перечитáть (to reread) передéлывать/передéлать (to re-do)
	to change	пересáживаться/пересéсть (to change transport) передúмывать/передúмать (to change one's mind) переключáть/переключítь (to change a TV programme etc.) переводítь/перевестí (to translate)
	to overdo	пересáливать/пересóлить (to add too much salt) переедáть/перее́сть (to overeat) перевáривать/переварítь (to overcook)
при-	to do a little	приоткрывáть/приоткрýть (to open a bit) присáживаться/присéсть (to sit on the edge) приостанáвливать/приостановítь (to suspend)
	to invent/to gain	придúмывать/придúмать (to make up) приобретáть/приобрестí (to gain)
раз-/ рас-	to open	развязывать/развязáть (to untie) раскрывáть/раскрýть (to open)

Level
1, 2

20.1.5 Formation of the aspectual pairs by making some internal changes to the verbal stem

Internal changes to the verbal stem can be made in the following ways:

- By changing a suffix. There are two frequently followed patterns.
 - Often the suffixes **-а/-я** indicate an imperfective verb and are changed for the suffix **-и** to make the verb perfective: решáть (impf) – решítь (pf), кончáть (impf) – кóнчить (pf).
 - The suffixes **-ыва/-ива/-ава** indicate an imperfective verb and are changed for the suffixes **-а/-я** to make the verb perfective: продавáть (impf) – продáть (pf), опáздывáть (impf) – опоздáть (pf). Often the change of suffix can be complicated by consonant changes in the stem. Usually, the same consonant change occurs when forming the perfective verbs and conjugating the verb in the present tense: с–ш, т–ч, б–бл etc. (For a list of the most frequent consonant changes, see 17.1.2–17.1.4.)
- By changing or omitting a vowel in the stem. Often the vowels **а, ё, и** and **ы**, in the stem of imperfective verbs, are changed to make the verb perfective: **а-о** (касáться, to touch, impf., – коснúться, pf.), **ё-е** (расчёсывать, to comb, impf. – расчесáть, pf.), **и-е** (умирáть, to die, impf. – умерéть, pf.), **ы-о** (вздыхáть, to sigh, impf. – вздохнúть, pf.). The presence of the 'fleeting' vowels, **ы** and **и**, in the stem often indicates the imperfective aspect. Their omission often indicates the perfective aspect: посылáть (to send, impf) – послáть (pf), собирáть (to gather/to collect, impf.) – собрáть (pf.), вспоминáть (to remember, impf) – вспóмнить (pf).

- In a small number of verbs, internal changes of the stem (vowels and consonant change or omission) are complicated by the reflexive particle –ся (for reflexive verbs, 📖 23). Several reflexive verbs form their perfective pairs with non-reflexive verbs formed from the same stem. They are: садиться (to sit down, impf.) – сесть (pf.), ложиться (to lie down/to go to bed, impf.) – лечь (pf.), становиться (to become, impf.) – стать (pf.).

Some examples of internal changes made to imperfective stems to form perfective verbs are listed below. In all the examples, the perfective verb does not change the meaning of the imperfective one, but emphasises that a single action is completed.

Examples	
Imperfective	Perfective
решать (to decide/to solve)	решить
кончать (to finish)	кончить
продолжать (to continue)	продолжить
изучать (to study)	изучить
объяснять (to explain)	объяснить
отвечать (to answer)	ответить
встречать (to meet)	встретить
приглашать (to invite)	пригласить
давать (to give)	дать
продавать (to sell)	продать
вставать (to get up/to stand up)	встать
опаздывать (to be late)	опоздать
расчёсывать (to comb)	расчесать
вспоминать (to remember)	вспомнить
понимать (to understand)	понять
поднимать (to lift)	поднять
посылать (to send)	послать
собирать (to gather/to collect)	собрать
созывать (to call for a meeting)	созвать
сидеться (to sit down)	сесть
ложиться (to lie down)	лечь
становиться (to become)	стать

Level
1, 2

20.1.6 Formation of the perfective aspect by using a verb with a different stem

Some perfective aspects can be formed by using a verb with a different stem. Examples of some frequently occurring aspect pairs are listed below. In all examples, the perfective verb has the same meaning as the imperfective, but emphasises that a single action is completed:

Imperfective	Perfective
говори́ть (to say)	сказа́ть
брать (to take/to borrow)	взять
класть (to put down)	положи́ть
лови́ть (to catch)	пойма́ть

Level
1, 2

20.2 The context for use of verbal aspect

There are several words frequently used to establish the context for the appropriate use of verbal aspect.

Level
1, 2

20.2.1 Marker words frequently used with the imperfective aspect

To emphasise the meaning of the imperfective aspect, such as a repeated/habitual action or an action in progress, several words can be used to make the context clear.

- The vocabulary that conveys the idea of repetition is:

Ка́ждый день/ежеднёвно, ка́ждый ве́чер, ка́ждый год/ежего́дно и т. д.	Every day, every evening, every year etc.
По вечера́м/вечера́ми, по нача́м/ноча́ми, по понеде́льникам и т. д.	In the evenings, in the night, on Mondays etc.
Два ра́за в неде́лю, три ра́за в ме́сяц, раз в две неде́ли/ка́ждую второ́ую неде́лю и т. д.	Twice a week, three times a month, every fortnight etc.
Обы́чно, всегда́, иногда́, никогда́, как пра́вило, постоя́нно, перио́дически и т. д.	Usually, always, sometimes, never, as a rule, permanently, from time to time etc.
Ча́сто, ре́дко/и́зредка/неча́сто, неоднокра́тно и т. д.	Often, seldom, many times etc.
Как ча́сто?	How often?

For example:

Ири́на **смо́трит** свой люби́мый телесе́риал **ка́ждый день**.
На про́шлой неде́ле Ири́на **смотре́ла** свой люби́мый

Ирина **watches** her favourite television series **every day**.
Last week Irina **watched** her favourite television series **every day**.

телесериал **каждый** день.
 На следующей неделе Ирина
будет смотреть свой любимый
 телесериал **каждый** день.

Next week Irina **is going to watch /will watch** her favourite television series **every day**.

- The vocabulary that conveys the idea of an action in progress is:

Как долго / Сколько времени? С двух до трёх утра, с пяти до семи вечера и т. д.	How long (for)? From 2 am to 3 am, from 5 pm to 7 pm etc.
Как долго / Сколько времени? Два часа, три часа и т. д.	How long for? For two, three hours etc.
Долго, недолго и т. д.	For a long time, for a short while etc.
Целый день, вечер и т. д.	For a whole day, evening etc.
Весь день, месяц, год и т. д.	For the whole day, month, year etc.
Сейчас	Now (right now, currently) etc.

For example:

Сейчас Миша **пишет** сочинение.

Right now Misha **is writing** an essay.

С двух до трёх Миша **писал** сочинение, **а с пяти до шести** **отдыхал**.

From 2 to 3 pm Misha **was writing** an essay and from **5 to 6 pm** he **was relaxing**.

Целый день Миша **будет отдыхать**.

Misha **will be relaxing for the whole day**.

- There are no special marker words that support the use of the imperfective in sentences that give common knowledge or describe skills/ability. For example:
 - Ты **знаешь**, кто такой Гагарин? **'Do you know** who Gagarin is?'
 - Конечно, **знаю**. **'Of course I do.'**
 - Мария **прекрасно готовит**. Maria **cooks** well.

Level
1, 2

20.2.2 Marker words frequently used with the perfective aspect

To emphasise both meanings of the perfective aspect, the completeness of an action and that it is a single action, the following words are often used to make the context clear:

Только что, уже и т. д.	Just (only just), already etc.
Обязательно и т. д.	Surely (without fail) etc.
К двум, к трём часам; к субботе и т. д.	By 2, 3 o'clock, by Saturday etc.
За два часа, за неделю и т. д.	Within two hours, within a week etc.
Вдруг (внезапно), неожиданно и т. д.	Suddenly, unexpectedly etc.

For example:

Господин Смирнов только что приехал.	Mr Smirnoff has just arrived.
Миша обязательно уберёт свою	For sure, Misha will tidy up
квартиру к семи часам вечера.	his flat by 7 pm.

20.2.3 Words frequently used with both the imperfective and perfective aspects

Some words can convey only the idea of the past, present or future and cannot support the idea of a repeated action (impf) or single action (pf), an action in progress (impf) or a completed action (pf). Therefore, they are used with both verbal aspects. The speaker's personal interpretation of context and the information that they wish to give determine the use of the verbal aspect in these situations:

Вчера, позавчера, завтра, послезавтра и т. д.	Yesterday, the day before yesterday, tomorrow, the day after tomorrow etc.
В субботу, в понедельник (дни недели) и т. д.	On Saturday, on Monday (days of the week) etc.
Утром, вечером, днём, ночью (время суток) и т. д.	In the morning/evening/afternoon/night (parts of the day) etc.
В сентябре (месяцы) и т. д.; в прошлом/будущем году, летом, зимой (времена года) и т. д.	In September (months) etc; last year/next year, in the summer, in the winter (seasons) etc.
Давно, недавно и т. д.	Long ago, recently etc.
В 5 часов, в 7 часов вечера и т. д.	At 5 o'clock, at 7 pm etc.
Число – 5-ого декабря 1999 года; в 2000-ом году и т. д.	Date: 5th December 1999; in 2000 etc.
На сколько времени? На 5 дней и т. д.	How long for? For 5 days etc.

For example:

Вчера Миша читал (impf) новый роман.	Yesterday Misha read/was reading a new novel (the result is unknown or is not relevant).
Вчера Миша прочитал (pf) новый роман.	Yesterday Misha finished reading/read/did read a new novel (he achieved a goal).
Завтра Ирина будет готовить (impf) ужин для своих друзей.	Tomorrow Irina will be making dinner for her friends (Irina intends to do it, but there is no certainty that the result will be achieved).
Завтра в 7 часов Ирина приготовит (pf) ужин для своих друзей.	Tomorrow at 7 pm , Irina will make dinner for her friends (the dinner certainly will be made).

Level
1, 2

20.3 Use of verbal aspect in the present tense

For verbal aspect, see the introduction to this chapter; for the present tense, see 17.

In the present tense, only the imperfective aspect is used. In Russian, there is only one form of the present tense. Therefore, translation into English depends on the context and its interpretation by a speaker. For example, 'Они рабóтают' can be translated as 'They are working' or 'They work'.



In the text below, you will see the various possible contexts in which the imperfective aspect can be used in the present tense.

Типичный день господина Смирнова.

Господин Смирнов **живёт** в Москвё и **рабóтает** в Кремлё.

Он óчень **любит** (a true fact) свою рабóту. Обычнó много **рабóтает** (repeated action) и мáло **отдыхáет** (repeated action). Кáждый день он **обёдает** (repeated action) в кафё «Ёлки-пáлки». Смотрíte, вот он сейчáс **сидит** у окнá (action in progress), **ест** (action in progress) блины́ и **решáет** (action in progress) кроссвóрды.

A typical day for Mr Smirnoff.

Mr Smirnoff **lives** (true fact/state of being/repeated action) in Moscow and **works** (true fact/state of being/repeated action) in the Kremlin. He **loves** (true fact) his job very much. Usually, he **works** (repeated action) a lot and **relaxes** (repeated action) very little. Every day, he **has** his lunch (repeated action) in the 'Iolki-palki' café. Look, here he **is now sitting** (action in progress) next to a window, **eating** (action in progress) pancakes and **solving** (action in progress) a crossword.

Level
1, 2

20.4 Use of verbal aspect in the past tense

In the Russian past tense both aspects can be used.

For the past tense, see 18. For the use of verbal aspect with verbs of motion in the past tense, see 25.5.

Level
1, 2

20.4.1 Functions of verbal aspects

The verbal aspects in the past tense follow the general rule outlined in the introduction to this chapter. Additionally, the verbal aspects can be used to emphasise some specific meanings (see 20.4.2, 20.4.3, 20.4.4).

In the past tense, imperfective verbs are used:

- To confirm that an action occurred in the past without any indication of whether or not the action was completed and the result achieved. However, the use of the imperfective verb implies that the described action lasted for a while.

Владимир Набóков **писáл** свой ромáны на англíйском языкё, а потóм **переводил** их на рúсский язык.

В девятнáдцатом вёке **не пóльзовались** компьúтером.

В выходнóе мы **гуляли** по лёсу и **собирали** грибы́.

Vladimir Nabokov **wrote** his novels in English first, and then **translated** them into Russian. In the 19th century, they **did not use** computers.

Last weekend we **walked/were walking** in the wood and **picked/were picking** mushrooms.

- To describe a habitual/repeated action in the past or skills/abilities. Often the use of the verb in this context implies that an action used to occur in the past, but does not occur any more.

Раньше Виктор **читал** газеты каждый день. In the past Victor **used to read** the newspapers every day.

Раньше Мария вкусно **готовила**. In the past, Maria **used to cook** well.

- To describe an action that was in progress. Often the duration is indicated or implied in this context.

С двух до трёх студенты **писали** тест. **From 2 pm to 3 pm**, the students **were taking/took** a test.

In the past tense, perfective verbs are used

- To describe a single completed action. In any context, the speaker focuses on the achieved result of the action, either affirmative (Done!) or negative (Did not achieve the goal):

Виктор **прочитал** книгу.

Victor **read/has read** a book (and **finished reading**).

Виктор **не прочитал** книгу (книги).

Victor **did not read a book/did not finish reading/has not read** a book.

- The use of a perfective verb often implies that an action has been in progress for a while and, finally, the goal was achieved as expected:

Целый день Виктор **читал** (impf. describes a process) книгу и, наконец, **прочитал** (pf, it is done!) её. For the whole day, Victor **has been reading** a book and, finally, **has finished reading it**.

As you can see from the examples above, translation of verbal aspect in the past tense from/to English can vary and depends on context and its interpretation by the speaker.



In the text below, you will see the various possible contexts in which the Russian imperfective and perfective verbs can be used in the past tense.

Господин Смирнов на пенсии

До своего выхода на пенсию тридцать пять лет господин Смирнов **жил** (impf, action was in progress) в Москве и **работал** (impf, action was in progress) в Кремле. Он очень любил (impf, confirmation that the action occurred) свою работу. Тогда он много **работал** (impf, confirmation that the action occurred) и мало **отдыхал** (impf, confirmation that the action occurred). Каждый день он **обедал** (impf, repeated action)

Mr Smirnoff in his retirement

For the thirty-five years before he retired Mr Smirnoff **had been living** (impf, action was in progress) in Moscow and **working** (impf, action was progress) in the Kremlin. He **loved** (impf, confirmation that the action occurred) his job very much. At that time he **worked** (impf, confirmation that the action occurred) a lot and **relaxed** (impf, confirmation that the action occurred) very little. Every day, he **had** his lunch (impf, repeated

в кафе «Ёлки-палки». Он **ча́сто вспомина́ет** (impf. present tense) это вре́мя, когда́ ка́ждый день он **сиде́л** у окна́ (impf, action was in progress) в свой обе́денный перерыв, **ел** (impf, action was in progress in the past) вку́сные блины́ и **реша́л** (impf, action was in progress) кроссво́рды. Он та́кже лю́бит вспоми́нать (impf. present tense) один моро́зный зы́мний день. В тот день он бы́стро **реши́л** (pf, single completed action) кроссво́рд, **съел** (pf, single completed action) свой ты́сячный блин и **получи́л** (pf, single completed action) замеча́тельный приз от кафе́ – фотоаппара́т.

action) in the 'lolki-palki' café. He often **remembers** (impf. present tense) the time when he **would sit** (impf, action was in progress) next to a window during his lunch break, **eating** (impf, action was in progress) pancakes and **solving** (impf, action was in progress) a crossword. In addition, he **loves to remember** (impf. present tense) one particular frosty winter's day. On this day he quickly **solved** the crossword (pf, single completed action), **ate** (pf, single completed action) his thousandth pancake and **received** (pf, single completed action) a great prize from the café for this – a camera.

Level
2, 3

20.4.2 Use of imperfective and perfective verbs with an indication of time in the past tense

If a speaker knows the precise duration of an action in the past, the following constructions are used:

- The imperfective verb, followed by an expression of time without a preposition, is used to explain that the action occurred, and lasted for the indicated period, but the goal was not achieved. Alternatively, the result of the action is unknown or not relevant.

Ско́лько вре́мени студе́нт **писа́л** сочи́ние?

Студе́нт **писа́л** сочи́ние **час**.

For how long did the student **write** the essay/**For how long was** the student **writing** the essay?

The student **wrote/was writing** the essay **for an hour**.

It is not known if he completed the essay.

- The perfective verb, followed by the expression of time with the preposition **за** (within), is used to emphasise that the goal of the action was achieved within the indicated period.

За ско́лько вре́мени студе́нт **написа́л** сочи́ние? **How long did it take** the student **to write (to complete)** the essay?

Студе́нт **написа́л** сочи́ние **за час**. The student **wrote/has written** the essay **within an hour**.

- The imperfective verb, followed by an expression of time with the preposition **за** (for), is used to describe ability/skills to achieve a goal in the indicated period. This construction is less frequent.

За сколько времени студент обычно писал сочинения?

Студент обычно писал сочинения за час.

How long did it usually take the student to write/to complete the essays?

The student usually managed/was able to write/to complete the essays within an hour.

Level
3

20.4.3 Use of the verbal aspect to describe completed and reversed actions in the past tense

Several verbs can describe an action in which the result can be reversed.

- All verbs of motion with prefixes (УС 25): приходиться/прийти (to arrive), выносить/вынести (to take out), уезжать/уехать (to depart) etc.
- The verbs открывать/открыть (to open); закрывать/закрывать (to close); брать/взять (to take/to borrow); занимать/занять (to borrow); вставать/встать (to get up); ложиться/лечь (to lie down); садиться/сесть (to sit down); класть/положить (to put); включать/включить (to turn on); выключать/выключить (to turn off) and similar verbs.

If an imperfective verb from the above list is used in the past tense, it implies that the action did take place in the past, but was reversed back to its original point:

Директор приходил.	The director was here (but he is gone now).
Он приезжал в Москву.	He was in Moscow/visited Moscow (but is gone now).
Мы открывали окно.	We opened the window (but closed it again).
Они брали кредит в банке.	They took a loan from the bank (but paid it back).

If the perfective verb from the above list is used in the past tense, it implies that the goal of the action was achieved in the past, but its result is still relevant to the present:

Директор пришёл.	The director has arrived (and he is still here).
Он приехал в Москву.	He has arrived in Moscow (and is still there).
Мы открыли окно.	We have opened the window (and it is still open).
Они взяли кредит в банке.	They have taken a loan from the bank (and still owe money to the bank).

If a speaker knows the precise duration of an action in the examples above, the following constructions are used:

- The imperfective verb, followed by an expression of time with the preposition **на** (for), is used to explain that the action occurred in the past, lasted for the indicated period, but its result was reversed back to its original point.

На сколько (времени) он приезжал в Москву? How long did he stay in Moscow?

Он приезжал (imprf) на два дня. He stayed (came) for two days (but is gone now).

На сколько (времени) они брали кредит в банке? For how long did they take the loan from the bank?

Они брали (imprf) кредит в банке на десять лет. They took the loan from the bank for ten years (they owed money to the bank for ten years, but paid it back).

- The perfective verb, followed by an expression of time with the preposition **на** (for), is used to emphasise that the goal of the action was achieved within the indicated period and its result is still relevant to the present.

На сколько (времени) он **приехал** (pf) в Москву?
Он **приехал** (pf) **на два дня**.

How long does he **intend to stay** in Moscow?
He **has come to stay for two days** (he is still in Moscow).

На сколько (времени) они **взяли** кредит в банке?
Они **взяли** кредит в банке **на десять лет**.

For how long have they **taken** the loan from the bank?
They **have taken the loan** from the bank **for ten years** (they still owe money to the bank).

Level
3

20.4.4 Other additional meanings of verbal aspect in the past tense

Verbal aspect can carry some additional meanings in sentences with an animate subject.

- If a question is asked by using the imperfective aspect, it can imply that the person who carried out the action did something wrong.

Кто **ста́вил** (imprf) книги на полки?
Я не могу́ ничего́ найти́!
Из сказки «Три медведя»: ... Поздно
вечером вошли в дом три медведя ...
смотря́т и ничего́ не понима́ют:

Who **put** the books on the shelves?
I cannot find anything!
Extract from the Russian fairy tale ‘The
Three Bears’: ... Late that night, the three
bears got home ... They look around
and do not understand what has
happened:

– Кто **сиде́л** (imprf) на моём сту́ле?! –
зари́чал Миха́йло Ива́нович.–
А кто **сиде́л** (imprf) на моём сту́ле?! –
спроси́ла Ма́рья Ива́новна.

‘Who’s been sitting in my chair?!’
Mikhailo Ivanovich asked angrily.
‘And who’s been sitting in my chair?!’
Maria Ivanovna asked.

- If a question is asked using the perfective aspect, it can focus on the quality of the single and complete action.

Кто **испе́к** (pf) э́тот **вкúсный торт**?
Кто **так ужáсно вы́мыл** (pf) посу́ду?

Who **made** this **great cake**?
Who **did the washing up so poorly**?

In negative sentences, both aspects are used to convey additional information:

- In negative sentences imperfective verbs emphasise that the action did not occur.
 - Виктор, ты **посла́л** сообщение?
– Нет, я **не посыла́л** (imprf).
- The use of the perfective in the same context emphasises that an attempt was made to achieve the goal, but it was not a success
 - Извини́, я **не смог посла́ть/не посла́л** (pf) сообщение.



‘Victor, **have** you sent/**did** you send a message?’

‘No, I **have not/did not**.’

‘Sorry, but I **did not manage to send** a message (tried, but failed for whatever reason).’

Level
1, 2

20.5 Use of verbal aspect in the future tense

Both the imperfective and perfective aspects can be used in the future tense. For the future tense,  19. Verbal aspect in the future tense follows the general rule outlined in the introduction to this chapter, except for the verbs of motion ( 24.5.3–24.5.5).

In the future tense, the imperfective verb is used:

- To describe the intention to carry out an action without any indication of whether or not the action is intended to be completed. However, the use of the imperfective verb implies that the described action will last for a while.

Завтра мы **будем загорать** на пляже. Tomorrow we **are going to sunbathe** on the beach.

- To describe a repeated/habitual action.

В новом году по вечерам я **буду рабóтать** в клубе. In the New Year, I **will work** in the evenings in a sports club.

- To describe an action in progress. Usually, in this context the duration of the action would be indicated.

С пяти до шести вечера мы **будем разговáривать** с друзьями по скайпу. From 5 pm to 6 pm we will be talking to our friends on Skype.

In the future tense, the perfective verb focuses on the expected result in the future rather than on the intended action. It is used to describe a single complete action. For example:

Я **пошлú** посылку послезавтра. I **will send** the parcel the day after tomorrow.

Translation from/to English depends on context and its interpretation by the speaker. Russian perfective verbs in the future tense are usually translated by using the English simple future tense: Мы **это сделаем**. (We **will do** it.) Russian imperfective verbs in the future tense are usually translated by using the English future continuous tense: Мы **будем это делать**. (We **will be doing** it.)

In the text below, you will see the various possible contexts in which the Russian imperfective and perfective verbs can be used in the future tense:



Господин Смирнов мечтáет о пéнсии

Когда господин Смирнов выйде́т на пéнсию, он **будет жить** (impf, action will occur) в Москве, но **не будет рабóтать** (impf, action will occur) в Кремле. Тогда он **будет** много **отдыхáть** (impf, action will occur). Каждый день он **будет обеда́ть** (impf, repeated action) в кафе «Ёлки-пáлки». Он ча́сто **мечтáет** (impf, present tense) о том вре́мени, когда он каждый день **будет сидéть** у окна́ (impf, repeated action), **будет е́сть** (impf, repeated action) блины́ и **решáть** (impf, repeated action) кроссво́рды. Но до э́того ещё далеко́! А пока́ в кафе **прохо́дит** (impf, present tense)

Mr Smirnoff is dreaming about his retirement

When Mr Smirnoff has retired, **he will be living / will live** (impf, action will occur) in Moscow, but **will not be working / will not work** (impf, action will occur) in the Kremlin. Then he **will be relaxing/will relax** (impf, action will occur) a lot. Every day, he **will have** his lunch (impf, repeated action) in the 'lolki-palki' café. He often dreams about this time, when he **will sit** (impf, repeated action) next to a window, **eat** (impf, repeated action) pancakes and **solve** (impf, repeated action) crosswords. However, this time is far away. Meanwhile, in the café a competition called Who **will eat** (pf, single complete

Господин Смирнов мечтает о пенсии

конткурс «Кто **съест** (pf, single complete action) тысячный блин?». Господин Смирнов **надёется** (impf, present tense), что именно он **съест** (pf, single complete action) тысячный блин, обязательно **выиграет** (pf, single complete action) конкурс и **получит** (pf, single complete action) приз – фотоаппарат.

Mr Smirnoff is dreaming about his retirement

action) the thousandth pancake? **is taking place** (impf, present tense). Mr Smirnoff **hopes** (impf, present tense) that it is he who **will eat** (pf, single complete action) the thousandth pancake and for sure **will win** (pf, single complete action) the prize – a camera.

Level
2, 3**20.5.1 Use of imperfective and perfective verbs with an indication of time in the future tense**

If a speaker knows the precise duration of an action in the future, the following constructions are used:

- The imperfective verb, followed by an expression of time without a preposition, is used to explain that the intended action will last for the indicated period, but the result of the action is unknown.

Сколько времени юрист **будет готовить** документы?
Юрист **будет готовить** документы **три дня**.

For how long will the lawyer **be preparing** the papers?
The lawyer **will be preparing** the papers **for three days**.

- The perfective verb, followed by an expression of time with the preposition **за** (within), is used to emphasise that the goal of the action will certainly be achieved, as expected, within the indicated period.

За сколько времени юрист **подготовит** документы?
Юрист **подготовит** документы **за три дня**.


How long will it **take** the lawyer **to prepare** the papers?
The lawyer **will prepare** the papers **within three days**.


- Perfective verbs are often followed by the preposition **через** (within/in from now).

Юрист **подготовит** документы **через три дня**.

The lawyer **will prepare** the papers **within three days from now**.

Level
3**20.5.2 Use of verbal aspect to describe reversed actions in the future tense**

For verbs that can describe reversed action,  20.4.3.

In the future tense, to describe the duration of an action that can be reversed, perfective verbs are normally used. An exception is the imperfective verbs of motion ( 24.5.3–24.5.5). The imperfective and perfective verbs are followed by a time expression with the preposition **на**: **На сколько** (времени)? (**For how long?**).

In this example, the perfective verb describes the single complete action in the future within the indicated period.

На сколько (времени) они **возьмут** (pf.) кредит в банке?

For how long will they **borrow** the money from the bank?

Они **возьмут** (pf.) кредит (pf) **на два года**.

They **will borrow** the money **for two years**.

In this example, the imperfective verb describes the intention to carry out an action in the future within the indicated period.

На сколько (времени) они будут брать (imprf) кредит в банке?	For how long are they borrowing the money from the bank?
Они будут брать (imprf) на два года .	They are borrowing the money for two years .

Level

1

Упражнения

1. Choose the perfective or imperfective form of the verb in brackets. Put the verb in the correct form.

- Мы только что (учить/выучить) 100 слов.
- Мы всегда (узнавать/узнать) много нового на лекциях.
- Он обычно (обедать/пообедать) в кафе.
- Сегодня на завтрак он (пить/выпить) чашку чая и (есть/съесть) бутерброд.

Level

2,3

2. Choose the appropriate verbal aspect of the verb in brackets. Put the verb in the correct form:

- Вчера студент (сдавать/сдать) экзамен, но не (сдавать/сдать) его.
- Виктор, кто (учить/научить) тебя так хорошо плавать? Ты долго (учиться/научиться)?
- Учёные будут целые дни (проводить/провести) в лаборатории.
- Ты уже (звонить/позвонить) Саше?
- Когда Виктор (заканчивать/закончить) университет, он (поступать/поступить) в аспирантуру.
- Ты не (снимать/снять) ботинки и оставил грязные следы.

Level

2,3


3. Answer the questions using the words in brackets. Add a preposition, if appropriate:


- За сколько времени Вы приготовили обед? (час)
- Как долго он живёт здесь? (10 лет)
- На сколько Вы приехали в Новгород? (2 дня)
- На сколько вы возьмёте ипотеку? (25 лет)
- Когда ты приготовишь обед? (полчасá)


Level

1, 2

20.6 Use of verbal aspect with the infinitive

The infinitive is a basic verb form. It cannot be conjugated and cannot have a tense on its own. However, it can have aspect. The majority of verbs have two infinitives, imperfective and perfective. On using the infinitive in a sentence,  16.1.1–16.1.2.

The imperfective and perfective infinitives convey exactly the same idea as the imperfective and perfective verbs, in the present, past and future tenses ( introduction to this chapter). The imperfective infinitive describes an action in progress, habitual/repeated action, skills/abilities, or denotes that the action is occurring. The perfective infinitive describes a single complete action focusing on its result.

However, the infinitive rarely appears in a sentence on its own ( 16.1.1). Usually the infinitive is used as a complementary part of the verb in a personal form, a modal word or an adverb.

Он **любит отдыхать** (the verb in personal form + the infinitive).

He **loves to relax**.

Ему **надо отдыхать** (a modal word + the infinitive).

He **needs to relax**.

Здесь **хорошо отдыхать!** (an adverb + the infinitive)

It is **great to relax** here!

Therefore, usually, the choice of aspect for the infinitive depends on the meaning of the verb, modal word or adverb that the infinitive complements. Translation between English and Russian also depends on the speaker's personal interpretation of the context. For example:

Мария **хочет** (impf) **читать** (impf).

Maria **wants to do some reading** (now or in general).

Мария **захотела** (pf) **читать** (impf).

Maria **wants/wanted to do some reading** or Maria **feels/felt like doing some reading**.

Мария **хочет** (impf) **прочитать** (pf) **заключительную книгу о Гэри Поттере**.

Maria **wants to read** the final Harry Potter book (to the end).

Мария **захотела** (pf) **прочитать** (pf) **заключительную книгу о Гэри Поттере**.

Maria **wants/wanted to read** the final Harry Potter book (to the end) or Maria **feels like/felt like reading** the final Harry Potter book (to the end).

20.6.1 Special use of the verbal aspect with the infinitive

20.6.1.1 Use of the infinitive with some verbs

If the infinitive complements the following verbs, only the imperfective infinitive can be used. Here, the principal verb, and not the complementary infinitive, conveys the aspect meaning:

Level
1, 2

Imperfective	Perfective	Translation
начинать	начать	to start/to begin
продолжать	продолжить	to continue
кончать	кóнчить	to finish/to end
заканчивать	закóнчить	to finish/to graduate
оканчивать	окóнчить	to finish/to graduate
–	стать (coll)	to start/to begin
переставать	перестать (coll)	to stop
приниматься	приняться (coll)	to start/to begin
надоедать	надоеть	to be fed up
уставать	устать	to be tired

Level
2, 3

Level
1, 2

Imperfective	Perfective	Translation
привыкáть	привы́кнуть	to get used to
отвыкáть	отвы́кнуть	to get out of the habit of
учи́ться	научи́ться	to gain some skills
приучáть	приучи́ть	to train to do something
отучáть	отучи́ть	to train to lose some habits
–	разлю́бить	to lose interest
–	разучи́ться	to lose skills/ability
–	полю́бить	to love
–	пона́равиться	to like
запрещáться (запрещáть)	–	to forbid
избегáть	–	to avoid

After the verbs **нравиться** (impf, to like), **любить** (impf, to love) and **мочь** (impf, to be able) both perfective and imperfective infinitives can be used.

After the verbs **успеть** (pf, to have time to do something/to manage), **суметь** (pf, to be able to manage), **удаться** (pf, to succeed), **забыть** (to forget) only the perfective infinitive is used.

Level
2, 3

20.6.1.2 Use of the infinitive with some modal words

The use of imperfective or perfective infinitive after the following modal words changes the meaning of the phrase:

- The modal words **надо/нужно/необходимо** (need/necessary) and **можно** (possible/to be allowed) followed by the imperfective infinitive convey the idea that 'it is time to act'.
 - Надо **кончáть**. **It is time** to end (something).
 - Можно **накрывáть** на стол. **It is time** to lay the table.
- The modal words **надо/нужно/необходимо** (need/necessary) followed by the perfective infinitive convey the idea of 'necessity to act'.
 - Надо **кóнчить**. **It is necessary** to end (something).
- The modal word **можно** (possible/to be allowed) followed by the perfective infinitive conveys the idea that 'it is permitted to act'.
 - Можно **накрýть** на стол. You **may** lay the table.
- If the word **пора́** means 'it is time', it is usually followed by the imperfective infinitive.
 - Пора́ **обедáть**. It is time **to have lunch**.
- The modal word **нельзя́** (impossible/not permitted) followed by the imperfective infinitive conveys the idea that 'it is not permitted'.
 - В аэропортú **нельзя́ оставлáть** бага́ж без присмóтра. **It is not permitted to leave** your luggage unattended in an airport.
- However, if the word **нельзя́** is followed by the perfective infinitive, it conveys the idea that 'it is not physically possible'.

В аэропорту **нельзя** **оставить** багаж.
Камера хранения закрыта!

It is not possible to leave the luggage in the airport. The left luggage office is closed!

Level
2, 3

20.6.1.3 Other special uses of the verbal aspect with the infinitive

- In negative sentences only the imperfective infinitive can be used after:

не надо (не нужно)/незачем	unnecessary
не следует	should not
бесполезно	it is no use
не полагается/не принято	it is not customary
не разрешается/не разрешено	not permitted
не хочется	do not feel like
не советовать (in personal forms: я не советую, ты не советуешь etc.)	do not advise

For example:

В России **не принято** **здороваться** через порог. In Russia, **it is not customary to shake hands** over the threshold.

Мне **не хочется** **общаться** с ним. I **do not feel like socialising** with him.

- Only the imperfective infinitive is used after words with the meaning 'to have enough' – хватит, довольно, достаточно. For example:

Хватит **говорить** об этом деле. **That's enough talking** about this matter.

Level
1, 2

20.7 The use of verbal aspects in the imperative

The imperative (an instruction/request/invitation) has only two forms: the 2nd person singular and 2nd person plural. However, the imperative is used in both aspects, imperfective and perfective. For the imperative, see 22.2.

The speaker's choice between imperfective and perfective imperatives is based on the general meaning of the verbal aspect (see introduction to this chapter).

The imperfective imperative can contain:

- General advice or an instruction/request to carry out an action for a period of time.

Всегда мойте руки перед едой.	Always wash your hands before eating.
Следите за чистотой в доме.	Keep the house clean.
Говорите медленно и ясно!	Speak slowly and clearly!
- An instruction/request to start an action.

Пишите , пожалуйста!	Please, write (start writing)!
Читайте!	Read!

The perfective imperative

- Is an instruction/request to carry out a single action and to complete it. If a speaker gives an instruction using the perfective imperative, they expect to see the result of the request.

Передайте , пожалуйста, соль.	Pass the salt, please.
Скажите , пожалуйста.	Tell me, please
Прочитайте , пожалуйста, первое предложение.	Please read the first sentence.

Level
2, 3

20.7.1 Some special uses of the perfective and imperfective imperatives

The aspect of the imperative can have some additional meanings. For example, the imperfective imperative is used to convey the sense of a very polite invitation. Conversely, the perfective imperative sounds more like an instruction/an order than an invitation. However, this rule is followed only in some selected contexts, for example 'paying a visit' (especially when verbs of motion are involved).

Compare the situations:

В гостях. Paying a visit.	Разговор с провинившимся учеником. A conversation with a badly behaved pupil.
The imperfective imperative sounds like a very polite invitation:	The perfective imperative sounds like an instruction:
Входите (come in), раздевайтесь (take your coat off), проходите (come through), садитесь (sit down), пожалуйста; почувствуйте себя, как дома (make yourself at home).	Зайди к директору после уроков. (Go and see the headmaster after lessons.)
Берите всё, что хотите/берите/кушайте всё, что на столе (help yourself).	Войди и объясни, почему ты опять опоздал. (Come in and explain why you are late again.)
Берите фрукты, икру (help yourself to some fruit and caviar), наливайте вино (help yourself to wine), пейте (drink), курите (feel free to smoke), пожалуйста.	Замолчи! (Be quiet!)
Заходите к нам в любое время! (Call on us at any time!).	Прекрати вертеться! (Stand still!)
Приезжайте, пожалуйста, в гости. (Do come and visit us)	Перестаньте спорить! (Stop arguing!)

Level
1, 2

20.7.2 Use of aspects of the imperative in negative sentences

Usually, negative imperatives are used in the imperfective form:

Не открывайте окно. Здесь холодно. Don't open the window. It's cold.
Не курите! Don't smoke!

In negative constructions the perfective form of the imperative is used only if a speaker wants to warn against possible undesirable results of an action:

Только, пожалуйста, **не разбей** эту вазу. Она такая дорогая! Please don't break this vase. It is very expensive!
 Не **забуди** закрыть дверь. Вчера ты оставил дверь незапертой. Don't forget to lock the door today. Yesterday you left the door unlocked.

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Complete the sentences using the appropriate form of the infinitive in brackets:

1. Подростки любят (слушать/послушать) рок-музыку.
2. Лена отвыкла рано (вставать/встать).
3. Соба́к надо (выгуливать/выгулять) каждый день.
4. Больно́му нельзя́ (пить/выпить) спиртно́е.
5. Звенит будильник! Пора́ (вставать/встать).
6. Здесь нельзя́ (курить/закурить).
7. Студенты́ скоро́ начнут (заниматься/заняться) в лаборато́рии.
8. Виктор ко́нчил (читать/прочитать) статью́.
9. Депутаты́ Ду́мы продо́лжили (обсуждать/обсудить) прое́кт зако́на.

Level
2, 3

2. Form the imperative from the verb in brackets:

1. Ма́ть говори́т сы́ну: «(Вести́) себя́ прилично́! Не (груби́ть) ста́ршим, (слу́шать) учи́телей.»
 2. Всегда́ (есть) мно́го ове́щей и фрúктов. (Пить) со́ки.
 3. Ни́кому́ не (расска́зывать) о на́шем се́крете. И, пожа́луйста, не (прогово́риться) Ма́ше.
 4. (Говори́ть) гро́мко и ме́дленно, пожа́луйста.
 5. (Заходи́ть) ко мне за́втра. (Принести́) фотогра́фии.
 6. На у́лице гололе́д. Не (упа́сть)!
-

21 Verbs: transitive and intransitive verbs, active and passive voice

The categories of transitivity and voice have strong connections. They explain the relationships between verb, object and subject in sentences.

Level
2, 3

21.1 Transitivity

Transitivity is a grammatical category that helps us to understand the relationship between a verb and object in a sentence, to establish whether the verb can take a direct object and to convey the message correctly. In both Russian and English verbs are either transitive or intransitive (👉 21.1.1 and 21.2 respectively). English and Russian verbs do not fully correspond on transitivity. Therefore, we cannot assume that if a verb is transitive in English it will also be transitive in Russian.

The most distinctive feature for recognising an intransitive Russian verb is the ending **-ТЬСЯ** as all Russian reflexive verbs are intransitive (for reflexive verbs, 👉 23). However, non-reflexive verbs do not have a distinctive feature to indicate transitivity. Reference books and larger dictionaries provide information as to whether the verb is intransitive or transitive or to indicate specific uses of the verb.

21.1.1 Transitive verbs

In a sentence, a transitive verb must be followed by a direct object. The direct object clarifies the transitive verb. If a transitive verb is without a direct object in a sentence, the idea of the sentence sounds incomplete or unclear. For example:

Вероника **моёт (что?) посуду**. Veronica **is washing (what?) the dishes**.

Алексей **надевает (что?) джинсы**. Alex **is putting on (what?) jeans**.

In a sentence, a direct object is represented by a noun or pronoun in the accusative case without a preposition. In a Russian negative sentence a direct object can be represented by a noun or pronoun in the genitive case without a preposition. For example:

Колья купил **книгу** (accusative case). Nick bought a book.

Колья не купил **книги** (genitive case). Nick did not buy a book.

Колья не купил **книгу** (accusative case). Nick did not buy the book (a specific book)

21.2 Intransitive verbs

In a sentence, an intransitive verb cannot take a direct object. If an intransitive verb needs any clarification it must be followed by a phrase with a preposition. A

prepositional construction can be represented by a noun or personal pronoun with a preposition in various cases. For example:

Футболист бежит **за мячом**. A footballer runs **after a ball**.

Баскетболист бежит **с мячом**. A basketball player runs **with a ball**.

Instrumental and dative cases without prepositions can also follow intransitive verbs:

интересоваться спортом (to be interested in sport)

In Russian, the following groups of verbs are always intransitive:

- **All reflexive verbs.** (For reflexive verbs, ¶ 23.)
- Eight of the fourteen verbs of motion and the verbal forms derived from them. (For a list of the verbs of motion, ¶ 24.1).

Level
2, 3

21.3 Voice

Voice is one of the core grammatical categories that clarify relations between the verb and the subject of the sentence. In both Russian and English, there are two voices: *active* and *passive*. The active voice confirms that the subject of the sentence acts itself and explains how. The passive voice describes what is done to the subject of the sentence by someone else or something else that is often called the ‘agent’. In the Russian passive construction, a known ‘agent’ is expressed by the instrumental case with no preposition. Only transitive verbs that take a direct object can have passive voice. Note the following changes when an active construction is converted into a passive one:

- The direct object of an active construction becomes the subject of a passive construction.
- The subject of an active construction becomes the object of a passive construction.

For example:

Active construction	Passive construction
Опытный юрист подготовил все необходимые документы. (The experienced lawyer prepared all the necessary papers.)	Все необходимые документы подготовлены опытным юристом (‘agent’ in the instrumental case). (All the necessary papers are prepared by an experienced lawyer.)
Завтра Московский городской суд будет рассматривать дело против вице-мэра Москвы. (Tomorrow the Moscow City Court will hold hearings against the deputy mayor of Moscow.)	Завтра в Московском городском суде будет рассматриваться дело (‘agent’ is omitted) против вице-мэра Москвы. (Tomorrow hearings will be held against the deputy mayor of Moscow in the Moscow City Court.)

Passive constructions are mainly used in writing. However, passive impersonal sentences (¶ 30.1) and indefinite-personal sentences (¶ 21.5) are common in popular speech.

For example:

Здесь **накурено**. Somebody has been smoking here.

Решено, едем! It is decided, let’s go!

Нас **спросили**. We were asked.

Их **арестовали**. They were arrested.

Level
2, 3

21.4 How to express the passive voice

The passive voice can be expressed:

- By a short-form passive participle. Such participles are used in the perfective aspect only and describe a complete action.
 - For short-form passive participles, 📖 26.2.
 - For the verb-link **быть** (to be) used with short-form passive participles, 📖 26.2.
- By reflexive verbs. Usually imperfective reflexive verbs are used in the passive sense. They describe an ongoing incomplete action. However, when describing natural phenomena, both imperfective and perfective reflexive verbs can be used: 📖 23.4.

👁 In Russian, passive constructions are often replaced by indefinite-personal sentences: 📖 21.5.

Level
3

21.5 Indefinite-personal sentences with omitted subject

This type of sentence has only one core element – the predicate (the verb). The subject of the sentence ('they') is always omitted, but it is implied that it is animate. The verb reflects the form of the omitted subject – the 3rd person plural form of a personal verb. The verb can be used in all three tenses (present, past and future) and in both aspects (perfective and imperfective):

В газéтах мнóго **писа́ли** об э́том преступле́нии. **They wrote** a lot about this crime in the newspapers.

Говоря́т, что он прекра́сный челове́к. **They say** he is a wonderful man.

👁 In Russian, the personal pronoun **они́** (they) is never used in these indefinite-personal sentences as it would imply that we actually know who is acting in the sentences. Note that the same form of the verb, 3rd person plural, is used to describe one unknown person or an unspecified number of people. For example:

Они́ Вас спра́шивают. **They are asking** for you (Implied: we know who is asking.)

Вас спра́шивают. **Someone is asking** for you. (Implied: unknown person/persons are asking.)

Indefinite-personal sentences are common in popular speech. They often replace passive constructions with reflexive verbs or short-form participles. For example:

Мемориа́л **откры́ли** два го́да наза́д (indefinite-personal sentence) **They opened** the memorial two years ago.

Мемориа́л **откры́лся** (reflexive verb) два го́да наза́д. The memorial **opened** two years ago.

Мемориа́л **был откры́т** (short-form participle) два го́да наза́д. The memorial **was opened** two years ago.

👁 Some common transitive English verbs are intransitive in Russian. Therefore, they cannot appear in passive constructions. However, they are commonly used in indefinite-personal sentences. Among these verbs are:

говори́ть	to speak a language	следова́ть	to follow
ве́рить	to believe	наблюда́ть за	to watch/to observe
помога́ть	to help	присма́тривать за	to look after
смотре́ть на	to look at	ду́мать о	to think about

For example:

На како́м языке́ **говоря́т** в
Португа́лии?

What language **is spoken** in Portugal?

За детьми́ прекра́сно
присма́тривают в э́тих я́слях.

The children **are looked after** well in this
nursery.

Level
2, 3

Упражне́ния

1. Translate into Russian. Keep the passive voice where possible:

1. Too much money was spent on the wedding. Many guests were invited, a lot of food was eaten and a lot of wine was drunk.
2. Moscow was not built at once (idiom).
3. This paper must be rewritten.
4. The thief will be caught and sent to prison.
5. New parking is being built next to the offices.
6. Caution! The doors are closing.

Level
3

2. Rewrite the message that Mr Smirnoff's secretary has left him, replacing personal sentences with indefinite-personal sentences with omitted subject:

Уважа́емый Алекса́ндр Дми́триевич!

1. Какáя-то де́вушка звони́ла Вам два́жды.
2. Кто́-то принёс для́ Вас паке́т и оста́вил его́ на столе́.
3. Заходи́л како́й-то мужчи́на и спра́шивал, ко́гда Вы бу́дете?
4. Я уточни́ла, вы́ставка открывáется за́втра.
5. Я провériла, газéты писа́ли о Ва́шем докла́де.



22 Verbs: mood

Level

1, 2, 3

A verb can appear in a sentence in one of four moods:

- 1 *indicative*
- 2 *imperative*
- 3 *conditional*
- 4 *subjunctive*

The verbal mood defines the speaker's attitude towards the action.

Level

1, 2

22.1 The indicative mood

The indicative mood describes an action that the speaker considers real. The indicative mood can be presented by using any verbal form in all three tenses. For example:

Идёт дождь.

На улице дождь?

Какой сильный дождь!

Вчера **шёл** дождь.

Завтра **будет** дождь.

It is **raining**.

Is it **raining** outside?

What heavy rain!

It **rained** yesterday.

It **will rain** tomorrow.

Level

1, 2

22.2 The imperative

The verb in the imperative mood is used to give a command, an instruction or advice, or to make a request. The imperative is used as a predicate in a sentence with the subject omitted. The imperative has only two personal forms, 2nd person singular **ты** (you) and 2nd person plural **вы** (you). **Ты** is used to address someone informally. **Вы** is used to address one person formally or a group of people. The imperative can be used in both aspects, imperfective and perfective. For use of verb aspect in the imperative, see 20.7.

Examples of the imperative:

Саша, **заходи, не стесняйся!**

Соблюдайте правила уличного движения!

Будьте добры! **Передайте**, пожалуйста,

Наталье Сергеевне, что звонил её аспирант
Мáрченко.

Sasha, **come in, don't be shy!**

Follow the traffic regulations!

Would you be so kind as to tell

Natalia Sergeevna that her PhD
student Marchenko called?

In Russian, to make a very polite request the phrase **Будьте добры!**/**Будьте любезны!** (Be so kind) is used with the word **пожалуйста** (please). For example:

В транспорте – **Будьте добры!**

Передайте на билет, **пожалуйста!**

In public transport – **Would you be so kind** as to pass (the money) for the ticket (**please**).

Level
1, 2

22.2.1 Formation of the imperative

Both the imperfective and perfective aspects of the imperative are formed in the same way:

- Use the 3rd person plural of the present tense to form the imperfective imperative and the 3rd person plural of the perfective future tense to form the perfective imperative:
 - **дѣлают** (they do, imperfective)
 - **сдѣлают** (they will do, perfective)
 - **идут** (they go, imperfective)
 - **придут** (they will come, perfective)
 - **готовят** (they cook, imperfective)
 - **приготовят** (they will cook, perfective).

For present tense and future perfective verb formation, see 17 and 19 respectively.

- Drop the ending of that form: **дѣла-/сдѣла-**; **ид-/прид-**; **готов-/приготов-**
- Add the appropriate suffix:
 - add **-й**, if the stem ends in a vowel: **дѣлай**; **сдѣлай**
 - add **-и**, if the stem ends in a consonant: **иди**; **приди**
 - add **-ь**, if the stem ends in a consonant and the stress falls on the stem throughout the conjugation (in all forms of the present or future perfective tense): **готовь**; **приготовь**
- Add nothing after the suffix for the 2nd person singular form; add **-те** for the 2nd person plural form: **дѣлай**, **сдѣлай**, **дѣлайте**, **сдѣлайте**; **иди**, **приди**, **идите**, **придите**; **готовь**, **приготовь**, **готовьте**, **приготовьте**.
- For reflexive verbs (ending with **-ться**): at the end add **-сь** after a vowel and **-ся** after a consonant: **умывайтесь**, **умывайся** (wash yourself).

22.2.2 Formation of irregular imperatives

There are some irregular imperatives whose formation does not follow the regular pattern using the 3rd person plural present tense stem:

	from
ешь/ѣшьте (eat)	есть (они едят)
пей/пѣйте (drink)	пить (они пьют)
поезжай/поезжайте (go)	поѣхать (они поѣдут)
verbs with the suffix -ва-/-ава-	
вставай/вставайте (get up)	вставать (они встают)
давай/давайте (give)	давать (они дают)
доставай/доставайте (get)	доставать (они доставают)
узнавай/узнавайте (find out)	узнавать (они узнают)
продавай/продавайте (to sell)	продавать (они продают)

Level
3

22.2.3 Additional ways to express the imperative mood

There are additional ways to convey the imperative mood. The following compound forms are often used in popular speech:

- The imperative of the verb **давать** (in this context the verb means 'to let') followed by the imperfective infinitive or by the perfective verb in the perfective future tense, in the 1st person plural form:

Давайте говорить друг другу комплименты (Окуджава). **Let us pay** each other compliments.

Давай поманем тех, кто с нами был ... (группа «Любэ»). **Let us remember** who was with us ...

- The particle **пусть/пускай** ('let') followed by a noun/pronoun in the nominative case and a personal verb that agrees with the noun/pronoun. Usually this construction is employed when talking about giving an instruction to a 3rd person. The subject of the sentence can be omitted:

Пусть он сам решает. Let him decide for himself.

Пусть всегда будет солнце, Let the sun be forever,

Пусть всегда будет небо, Let the sky be forever,

Пусть всегда будет мама, Let my mum be forever.

Пусть всегда буду я. (Ошанин) Let me be forever.

- The particle **да** ('let') followed by a personal verb in the 3rd person singular or plural. This construction is frequently used in slogans, toasts and poetry

Да здравствуют музы, **да здравствует** разум! (Пушкин) Hail, muses! Hail, reason!

A very strong command can be given by using the imperfective infinitive: **Сидеть!** (Sit down!) **Лежать!** (Lie down!) **Молчать!** (Be quiet!) Very rarely, an adverb can be used as a command: **Тихо!** (Silence!)

Verbs of motion with the prefix **по-** are frequently used in the past tense to invite someone to start moving (for the verbs of motion with prefixes, see 25.1): **Пошли!** (Let us go!)

Он сказал – **поехали**, он взмахнул рукой, He said, 'Let's go', and waved his hand,

Словно вдоль по Питерской, Питерской As if along Peterskaya street
Пронёсся над Землёй. (Добронравов) He went around the Earth.

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Form the imperatives of the following verbs:

1. уходить

4. есть

2. приготовить

5. пить

3. критиковать

6. садиться

Level
2

Обобщающее упражнение

2. Complete the e-mails sent by Mr Smirnoff:

A. to his girlfriend

B. to his secretary

using imperatives formed from the verbs given:

A. Быть добрым, звонить матери, поздравлять с днём рождения, купить цветы, ждать меня у входа в ресторан.

B. Быть добрым, посылать факс г. Смиты, заказать столик на четверых в ресторане.



Level
2, 3

22.3 Conditional mood

The conditional mood describes a possible or hypothetical action that will/would take place in the past, present or future, if certain conditions are met/would be met. This type of sentence is common in both popular speech and in writing. The choice of verbal aspect in the conditional mood depends on the speaker's interpretation of the situation (for verbal aspect, see 20). The conditional mood is usually expressed by a complex sentence in which a subordinate clause determines conditions to enable the action to occur in the main clause ('if-then'). The subordinate clause can precede or follow the main clause:

Если не будет дождя (condition), я пойду гулять (possible action).	If it doesn't rain I will go out.
Я пойду гулять (possible action), если не будет дождя (condition).	I will go out if it doesn't rain.

22.3.1 Types and structure of conditional sentences

There are two types of conditional sentences. One type sets hypothetical conditions for a hypothetical action:

Если бы я знал, что он не придёт, я бы не сидел весь вечер дома.	If I had known he was not going to come, I would not have spent the evening at home.
--	--

Another type sets real conditions for the action that will occur if these conditions are met:

Если я узнаю, что он не придёт, я не буду сидеть целый вечер дома.	If I find out that he is not going to come, I will not spend the evening at home.
--	---

The sentence structure with hypothetical conditions is as follows:

- The subordinate clause is introduced by the conjunction **если** (if) with the particle **бы – если бы** (if). **Если** and **бы** cannot be separated.
- **Бы** must appear in both the main and subordinate clauses before or after a verb.
- All verbs in the main and subordinate clauses are in the past tense.

The sentence structure with real conditions is as follows:

- The subordinate clause is introduced by the conjunction **если** (if).
- No **бы** in this type of sentence.
- All verbs in the main and subordinate clauses are used in tenses that reflect the actual time of the action.

Level
3

22.3.2 Modified structure of conditional sentences

In informal style, changes can be made to the structure of the conditional sentence:

- The subordinate clause can be omitted, if conditions are set on behalf of the speaker (*If I were you*). The expression '**на Вашем месте**' is equivalent to the English '*If I were you*'. For example:

(На Вашем месте) я бы не хранил деньги в этом банке.	(If I were you), I would not have kept/I wouldn't keep money in this bank.
---	---

- **Если** can be replaced with the words **раз, коль, коли** (if).
Раз ты хочешь, я сделаю. **If you want, I will do it.**

Level
2, 3

22.4 Subjunctive mood

22.4.1 Subjunctive: meaning and use

A verb in the subjunctive mood describes a wishful thought. In a simple sentence with one subject, the particle **бы** added to a verb conveys the idea that the described action is not real, but a desirable one. The English equivalents of the Russian subjunctive mood are sentences with the modal verbs *should*, *would* or *could*. The particle **бы** can only be used with past-tense verbs or an infinitive. In a sentence, the particle **бы** can be added to:

- A verb in the past tense, if a speaker makes a request. **Бы** can be placed before or after the verb:

Послал бы ты Виктору ещё одно сообщение, что-то он не отвечает	Could you please send Victor another e-mail; for some reason he is not
ог Ты бы послал Виктору ещё одно сообщение, что-то он не отвечает.	answering.

- A negative verb in the past tense, if a speaker makes an inquiry:

Ты не послал бы Виктору ещё одно сообщение? ог Ты бы не послал Виктору ещё одно сообщение?	Could you please send Victor another e-mail?
---	---

Note, the negative verb conveys the same idea as the positive one (see the example above), but may sound more polite.

- An infinitive, if the speaker is just thinking aloud. **Бы** is placed after the infinitive:

Съесть бы сейчас мороженое!	I would love to have an ice cream now!
Полежать бы на пляже!	I would love to lie on a beach!

The verbs **хотеть** (to want) and **мочь** (to be able) are often used in the subjunctive mood to express a polite invitation or request:

Я хотел бы пригласить Вас в гости.	I would like to invite you to visit me.
Мы бы хотели попросить вас об одном одолжении.	We would like to ask you to do us a favour.
Вы могли бы убавить звук телевизора?	Could you please turn down the television?

The negative forms of **хотеть** and **мочь** are often used in the subjunctive mood to make an inquiry:

Ты не мог бы зайти в магазин по дороге домой?	Could you please pop into the shop on your way home?
--	---

In the examples above, the particle, **бы** is added to **хотеть** and **мочь**, which are in the past tense.

22.4.2 Using clauses introduced by **чтобы**

If a sentence has more than one subject, a subordinate clause introduced by the conjunction **чтобы** is used to make a request or express desire. The English equivalent of this type of construction is 'I want you to do it'.

In the subordinate clause, all verbs must be used in the past tense regardless of the actual timing of the action described. **Чтобы** cannot be translated into English. For example:

Диспетчер приказал пилоту, чтобы он немедленно посадил самолёт.	A traffic controller instructed the pilot to land the plane immediately.
Попросите Машу, чтобы она мне позвонила.	Ask Masha to call me.

In the main clause, the following words are often used to emphasise a request or express desire:

- Verbs говорить – сказать (to say), просить – попросить (to ask), требовать – потребовать (to demand), передавать – передать (to pass on a message), хотеть – захотеть (to want), желать – пожелать (to wish), предупреждать – предупредить (to warn) etc.
- Modal words надо, нужно, необходимо (need/necessary).
- Adverbs важно (important), желательно (desirable) etc.

Note that the conjunction **чтобы** can be used in other contexts: 📖 29.2.5.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение



1. Complete scenarios A and B below with phrases 1–4 to produce:

A. conditional sentences that describe hypothetical conditions for a hypothetical action.

B. conditional sentences that describe real conditions for an action that will occur, if these conditions are met.

1. съездить в кругосветное путешествие
2. купить замок в Шотландии
3. помочь нуждающимся
4. провести всемирный конкурс кроссвордов

A. Если бы господин Смирнов выиграл лотерейный билет ...

B. Если господин Смирнов выиграет лотерейный билет ...

23 Reflexive verbs

Level
2, 3

The origin of Russian reflexive verbs lies in the combined form of a verb and the pronoun **себя** (yourself) in Old Russian. In contemporary Russian, the particle **-ся** (**-сь**), added to a verb after the verb ending, replaces the pronoun **себя** (yourself). The particle **-ся** is added after a consonant or **-ь**, and **-сь** is added after a vowel.

The majority of reflexive verbs derive from transitive non-reflexive verbs with the same root, and form pairs with them, for example: **мыть** – **мыться** (to wash); **начинать** – **начинаться** (to begin). All reflexive verbs are intransitive: 📖 21.1.

For the reflexive verbs in the present, past and future tenses, 📖 17, 18 and 19 respectively.

The particle **-ся** can modify the meaning of a verb as follows:

- It can stress that an action is directed at oneself (📖 23.1).
- It can describe a reciprocal action (📖 23.2).
- It can emphasise ability or permanent quality (📖 23.3).

Additionally, **-ся** can:

- Make an active verb passive (📖 23.4).
- Make a transitive verb intransitive, but does not add any additional meaning (📖 23.5).

There are a number of reflexive verbs that do not have non-reflexive pairs (📖 23.6).

Level
2, 3

23.1 Reflexive verbs with the meaning of an action directed at oneself

Reflexive verbs in this group derive from transitive non-reflexive verbs and form pairs with them. For example:

Она **моет** (a transitive verb that takes a direct object in the accusative case without a preposition) **руки**. She **washes her hands**.

Она **моется** (an intransitive verb that cannot take a direct object). She **washes herself**.

The most commonly used verbs of this kind describe routine actions of ‘looking after yourself’ and form the following pairs:

Non-reflexive transitive verbs that must take a noun/pronoun in the accusative case without a preposition	Reflexive intransitive verbs that cannot take a noun/pronoun in the accusative case without a preposition
одевать (to dress whom)	одеваться (to dress oneself)
мыть (to wash whom/what)	мыться (to wash oneself)

Non-reflexive transitive verbs that must take a noun/pronoun in the accusative case without a preposition	Reflexive intransitive verbs that cannot take a noun/pronoun in the accusative case without a preposition
умыва́ть (to wash whom/what)	умыва́ться (to wash oneself)
раздева́ть (to undress whom)	раздева́ться (to undress oneself)
вытира́ть (to dry what/whom)	вытира́ться (to dry oneself)
убира́ть (to tidy up what)	убира́ться (to tidy up somewhere)
расчёсыва́ть (to comb what/whom)	расчёсыва́ться (to comb oneself)
причёсыва́ть (to comb what/whom)	причёсыва́ться (to comb oneself)
брить (to shave what/whom)	бри́ться (to shave oneself)
купа́ть (to bathe what/whom)	купа́ться (to bathe oneself)
гото́вить (to cook/to prepare what)	гото́виться (to prepare for something)

Level
2, 3

23.2 Reflexive verbs with reciprocal meaning

Reflexive verbs can describe reciprocal actions. Some reflexive verbs in this group derive from transitive non-reflexive verbs and form pairs with them. For example:

Я **встречаю** (a transitive verb that takes a direct object in the accusative case without a preposition)

I am **meeting Victor** in a café.

Виктора в кафе́.

Мы **встреча́емся** (an intransitive verb that cannot take a direct object) с Викто́ром в кафе́.

Victor and I meet in a café.

Он **обнима́ет** (a transitive verb that takes a direct object in the accusative case without a preposition) **друга́**.

He **hugs his friend**.

Они́ **обнима́ются** (an intransitive verb that cannot take a direct object).

They **hug each other**.

The most common pairs of this verb group are a transitive verb followed by a noun or a personal pronoun in the accusative case and an intransitive reflexive verb followed by a noun or a personal pronoun in the instrumental case:

Non-reflexive transitive verb	Reflexive intransitive verb	
встреча́ть (кого? что?)	встреча́ться (с кем? с чем?)	to meet
ви́деть (кого? что?)	ви́деться (с кем?)	to see
мири́ть (кого? что?)	мири́ться (с кем? с чем?)	to reconcile
ссора́ть (кого? что?)	ссора́ться (с кем?)	to quarrel
руга́ть (кого? что?)	руга́ться (с кем?)	to argue
обнима́ть (кого? что?)	обнима́ться (с кем? с чем?)	to hug
целова́ть (кого? что?)	целова́ться (с кем? с чем?)	to kiss
знако́мить (кого? что?)	знако́миться (с кем? с чем?)	to make an acquaintance
представля́ть (кого? что?)	представля́ться (кому?)	to introduce

There are several reflexive verbs describing reciprocal action that do not have a non-reflexive transitive pair. Often they are followed by an indirect object in the instrumental case with the preposition **с** (with):

здороваться (с кем?)	to say hello
прощаться (с кем?)	to say goodbye
соревноваться (с кем?)	to compete
бороться (с кем?)	to fight (boxing etc.)
драться (с кем?)	to fight (gangs)
переписываться (с кем)/с кем?	to correspond

Level
2, 3

23.3 Reflexive verbs with the meaning of ability or permanent quality

Reflexive verbs can describe ability or permanent quality. Reflexive verbs in this group derive from transitive non-reflexive verbs and form pairs with them. For example:

Кот царапает (a transitive verb that takes a direct object in the accusative case without a preposition) кресло .	A cat is scratching an armchair .
Мой кот царапается (an intransitive verb that cannot take a direct object).	My cat scratches .

Frequently occurring verbs in this group are:

кусать (кого? что?)	кусаться	to bite
колоть (кого? что?)	колоться	to prick
ломать (кого? что?)	ломаться	to break
гнуть (кого? что?)	гнуться	to bend
бодать (кого? что?)	бодаться	to butt
лягать (кого? что?)	лягаться	to kick

Level
2, 3

23.4 Reflexive verbs in passive constructions

The particle **-ся** added to a verb can make the verb passive. For passive sentences, 📖 21.3; for passive participles, 📖 26.1.2.3–4 and 26.1.3.

In passive sentences, reflexive verbs are mainly used in the imperfective aspect to describe an ongoing incomplete action. Conversely, short passive participles without **-ся** are used only in the perfective aspect to describe a single complete action. For example:

Все расходы оплачиваются (incomplete ongoing action) местным советом .	All expenses are paid by the local council.
Все расходы оплачены (a single completed action) местным советом .	All expenses have been paid by the local council.

When describing natural phenomena, a reflexive verb can be used in both perfective and imperfective aspects:

От мороза стекла на окнах покрылись (pf)/ покрываются (impf) замысловатыми узорами .	Because of the frost, the windows were covered/are being covered by a curious pattern.
---	--

The majority of all transitive non-reflexive verbs can form a pair with reflexive verbs with a passive meaning. Compare:

Active construction	Passive construction
Молодые исследователи разрабатывают новые компьютерные программы. (The young researchers develop new computer programs.)	Новые компьютерные программы разрабатываются молодыми исследователями. (New computer programs are developed by young researchers.)

Passive constructions with reflexive verbs are common in writing, especially in literary texts:

Цель эта **достигалась** действиями
народной войны (Толстой).

This purpose has been achieved by
a popular war.

Level
2, 3

23.5 Reflexive verbs without any additional meanings

There are several frequently occurring reflexive verbs in which the added particle **-ся** makes the verb intransitive, but does not modify the verb meaning. Reflexive verbs in this group derive from transitive non-reflexive verbs and form pairs with them. Verbs in this group can describe:

- The beginning, continuation or end of an action. Usually, a reflexive verb is used with an inanimate subject, and its non-reflexive pair with an animate subject: начинать – начинать(ся) (to begin); продолжать – продолжаться (to continue); кончать – кончаться (to finish):

Спектáкль **начался** рано.

The performance **started** early.

Онi **начали** работать в шесть утра.

They **started** working at 6 o'clock
in the morning.

- Some changes in an ongoing process or state of the subject of a sentence or its location: остановить – остановиться (to stop); изменить – измениться (to change); поднимать – подниматься (to lift, to go up); спускать – спускаться (to go down); улучшать – улучшаться (to improve); ухудшать – ухудшаться (to make worse); снижать – снижаться (to lower); повышать – повышаться (to raise/to improve) etc.:

Цены на нефть **повысились** на 20%.

Oil prices went up by 20%.

Правительство **повысило** цены
на бензин на 20%.

The government raised petrol
prices by 20%.

- Emotions and feelings: беспокоить (to worry/to bother) – беспокоиться (to be worried); волновать (to excite/to worry) – волноваться (to be excited /to be worried), etc.:

Информация о новых терактах в
Москве **беспокоит** многих россиян.

Information about the new terrorist
attacks in Moscow **worries** many
Russians.

Многие россияне **беспокоятся**
из-за новых терактов в Москве.

Many Russians are worried
because of the new terrorist
attacks in Moscow.

Level
2, 3

23.6 Reflexive verbs that are used only with the particle -СЯ

There are a number of reflexive verbs that do not have non-reflexive pairs. For example:

заботиться (о ком? о чём?)	to take care of
надёяться (на когó? на что?)	to rely on
надёяться	to hope
гордиться (кем? чем?)	to be proud of
улыбаться (комú?)	to smile
смеяться (над чем?)	to laugh
являться (чем? кем?)	to be/to appear
любоваться (чем? кем?)	to admire

☞ Some reflexive verbs may seem, at first sight, to share a root with a non-reflexive verb pair. However, the reflexive and similar-looking non-reflexive verbs may have completely different meanings. For example:


учиться (to study where?)	Я учусь в университете, а она учится в школе. (I study at university, but she studies at school.)	учить (to learn by heart/to teach)	Студент учит новые слова. (The student learns new vocabulary.)
заниматься (to be occupied/to study)	Он занимается в тренажёрном зале. (He exercises in a gym.)	занимать (to borrow)	Молодожёны заняли деньги в банке на свадебное путешествие. (The newlyweds borrowed money from a bank for their honeymoon.)
состояться (to take place/to be held)	Заседание Думы состоится в следующую среду. (The Parliamentary session will be held next Wednesday.)	состоять из (to consist of)	Доклад состоит из пяти разделов. (The report consists of five chapters.)

Level
2, 3

23.6.1. Reflexive impersonal verbs

Some reflexive verbs are impersonal: ☞ 30.4. A number of reflexive impersonal verbs do not have non-reflexive pairs:

- **нездоровиться** (to feel unwell) – Вам **нездоровится**? (Are you **unwell**?)
- **приходиться/прийтись** (to have to) – **Подозреваемому придётся** ответить на многие вопросы. (The suspect will have to answer many questions.)

- **смеркаться** (to get dark) – **Смеркалось**. (It was getting dark.)
-  The verb **нравиться/понравиться** (кому? что? кто?) – to like – can function as an impersonal verb and appear in impersonal sentences (📖 30.4.1): **Девочке нравится читать книги**. (The girl likes reading books – impersonal.) However, **нравиться/понравиться** can also appear in sentences that have a subject in the nominative case: **Девочке нравится эта книга**. (The girl likes this book.) 📖 5.1.2.

Some reflexive impersonal verbs have non-reflexive pairs that have similar meanings, but are used in personal constructions with the subject in the nominative case:

- **хотеться/захотеться** (to feel like doing something) – **хотеть/захотеть** (to want): **Ей захотелось спать**. (She felt like sleeping.) **Она захотела спать**. (She wanted to sleep.)

Other examples include:

- **работаться** (to be able to work) – **работать/поработать** (to work)
- **спаться** (to be able to sleep) – **спать/поспать** (to sleep)
- **сидеться** (to be able to sit still) – **сидеть/посидеть** (to sit)

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Rewrite the sentences twice, putting the verbs in brackets firstly into the present tense, then in the past tense:

1. Где Вы / (учиться)?
2. Бизнесмены / (расслабляться) после работы в бане.
3. Начальник / (заниматься) срочными делами.
4. Тюлени / (купаться) в заливе.
5. Политик / (бояться) результатов выборов.

2. Insert the appropriate verb in the correct form of the present or the future tense: кусаться, начать, продаваться, разбиваться, спрятаться

1. Завтра спектакль в 6 часов, а не 7.30.
2. Какие товары в новом супермаркете?
3. Я надеюсь, эта собака не?
4. Они от дождя под навесом.
5. Мы будем смотреть пьесу Б. Шоу «Дом, где сердца».

24 Verbs of motion: introduction; verbs of motion without prefixes

Level
1, 2, 3

In Russian, many verbs describe a variety of physical movements, for example, **идти** (to go); **гулять** (to walk); **прыгать** (to jump), **двигать/двигаться** (to move), **класть** (to put) etc. Fourteen of these verbs form a special group called the ‘*verbs of motion*’. The idea of *unidirectional* and *multidirectional* movements is at the heart of the concept of the fourteen Russian verbs of motion and any verbal forms derived from them. The ways in which English and Russian describe a variety of physical movements do not fully coincide. Unlike in Russian, the concept of unidirectional and multidirectional movements does not play a significant role in English grammar. The fourteen Russian verbs of motion can be used with or without prefixes. The verbs of motion with prefixes have different meanings than those without prefixes and are used in different contexts. The verbs of motion without prefixes are explained in this chapter. For those with prefixes, 📖 25. A full list of the dictionary forms of all fourteen verbs of motion can be found in section 24.1.

Level
1, 2, 3

24.1 List of verbs of motion without prefixes

The fourteen Russian verbs that form the special group called the ‘*verbs of motion*’ are listed below in their dictionary forms. All verbs of motion have two dictionary forms; both of them are *imperfective*. (For verbal aspect, 📖 20.) Eight verbs of motion are *intransitive* and six are *transitive*. For the concept of transitivity, 📖 21). The verb conjugation is marked by the numbers I and II. (For verb conjugation, 📖 17).

Intransitive verbs of motion (cannot have a direct object)		
Unidirectional	Multidirectional	Translation
идти (I)	ходить (II)	to go (on foot)
ехать (I)	ездить (II)	to go (by transport)/to ride
бежать (mixed)	бегать (I)	to run
лететь (II)	летать (I)	to fly/to go by air transport
плыть (I)	плавать (I)	to swim/to sail/to go by water transport
лезть (I)	лазить (II)	to climb
ползти (I)	ползать (I)	to crawl
брести (I)	бродить (II)	to wander/to stroll

Transitive verbs of motion (must have a direct object)		
Unidirectional	Multidirectional	Translation
везти́ (I)	вози́ть (II)	to transport
вести́ (I)	води́ть (II)	to lead
нести́ (I)	носи́ть (II)	to carry in one's arms
гнать (II)	гони́ть (I)	to drive (animals)
кати́ть (II)	ката́ть (I)	to roll
тащи́ть (II)	таска́ть (I)	to drag/pull

Level
1, 2

24.2 The meanings of the verbs of motion without prefixes

Each of the fourteen verbs of motion is part of a pair: **идти́–ходи́ть**, **ехать–езди́ть**, **бежа́ть–бега́ть**, **лете́ть–лета́ть** etc. Both forms of each verb of motion are translated into English in the same way: to go – **идти́/ходи́ть**, to run – **бежа́ть / бега́ть** etc. However, in Russian, each part of the pair is used in different contexts.

All verbs listed in the first column of the above table (starting with the verb **идти́**) describe unidirectional movement. Usually unidirectional movement is presented as a movement that is in progress to a known destination in the present, past or future. All verbs listed in the second column of the above table (starting with the verb **ходи́ть**) describe multidirectional movement. This includes a round trip (return), habitual (repeated) movements or movements in unspecified directions (around/zigzag) in the present, past or future. Additionally, the group of multidirectional verbs can indicate one's ability or skills. Only with a clear understanding of the context can a speaker choose between the paired verbs of motion.

Although the concept of Russian verbs of motion is not fully reflected in English, unidirectional Russian verbs are often translated into English using the *continuous* present, past or future tenses (I am going/I was going/I will be going etc.). Multidirectional Russian verbs are translated into English using the *simple* present, past or future tenses (I go/I went/I will go).

Level
1, 2

24.3 The verb to go in Russian

The English verb *to go/to go by* can be translated into Russian by using four different pairs of verbs:

- The verbs **идти́–ходи́ть** describe going on foot (walking). Often the adverb **пешко́м** (on foot) is added to the verbs **идти́–ходи́ть** (to go/to walk) to emphasise the way of travelling: Он **идёт пешко́м**. (He is walking (on foot)). Они́ **лю́бят ходи́ть пешко́м**. (They love walking (on foot)). The English verb *to walk* can also be translated into Russian using the verb **гуля́ть**, which is not part of the verbs of motion group. The verb **гуля́ть** is used with the prepositions **по** (around) or **вдо́ль** (along) and emphasises walking for pleasure.
- The verbs **ехать–езди́ть** describe travelling by any kind of land transport, including riding: Она́ **едет на авто́бусе**. (She is **going by bus**.) В Инди́и **ез́дят на слоно́вах**. (In India, they **ride elephants**.)

- The verbs **лететь–летать** describe travelling by any means of air transport: Она **летит на самолёте**, а он **летит на воздушном шаре**. (She is **going by plane**, but he is **going by balloon**.)
- The verbs **плыть–плавать** describe travelling by any kind of water transport: Мы **плывём на пароме**, а они **плывут на лодке**. (We are **going by ferry**, but they are **going by boat**.)
- The preposition **на** (by) with a noun in the prepositional case is used to specify any means of transport, including riding.

Level
2, 3

24.4 Reflexive verbs of motion without prefixes

The transitive verbs of motion without prefixes and verbs derived from them can have a reflexive intransitive form (with the addition of the particle **-ся**): 📖 23. When a verb of motion becomes reflexive, its meaning changes. The majority of the reflexive verbs of motion are used in a figurative sense: 📖 24.7.

The most frequently occurring reflexive verb of motion is **кататься** (imperfective)–**покататься** (perfective), derived from the verb **катать** (to roll). The verb **кататься** is part of the following idioms and indicates doing something for pleasure: **кататься на лыжах** (to ski); **кататься на коньках** (to skate); **кататься на санках** (to sledge); **кататься на велосипеде** (to cycle); **кататься на лодке** (to sail for pleasure); **кататься на лошади** (to ride a horse). Conversely, the verbs **ехать–ездить/лететь–летать/плыть–плавать** (to go) describe travelling by various kinds of transport (neutral, not pleasure). For example:

Зимой на российских курортах туристы катаются на лыжах и коньках . Летом туристы катаются на велосипеде и на лодке. Я езжу в университет на велосипеде .	In the winter, in Russian resorts, tourists ski and skate . In the summer, tourists cycle and sail . I go to the university by bike /I cycle to the university.
--	--

24.5 Using the verbs of motion without prefixes

Level
1, 2

24.5.1 The most frequent use of the verbs of motion without prefixes in the present tense

The most common use, in the present tense, of the unidirectional verbs of motion is to describe a single movement to a known destination, which is occurring as we speak. Conversely, the multidirectional verbs of motion are used to stress the habitual nature of the movement. For example:

A dialogue on the train

– Извините, Вы едете (unidirectional movement is occurring as we speak) на фестиваль в Эдинбург?	Excuse me; are you going to the Edinburgh festival?
– Да, я еду (unidirectional movement is occurring as we speak) в Эдинбург на фестиваль.	Yes, I am going to the Edinburgh festival.
– Вы ездите (habitual movement) на фестиваль в Эдинбург каждый год?	Do you go to the Edinburgh festival every year?
– Нет, я обычно езжу (habitual movement) туда раз в два года.	No, I usually go there every other year.

A dialogue in the street

– Привёт, Ирина! Сто лет тебя не видел. Куда идёшь (unidirectional movement is occurring as we speak)?	Hi, Irina! I have not seen you for ages. Where are you going ?
– Привёт, Виктор! Я иду (unidirectional movement is occurring as we speak) в тренажёрный зал.	Hi, Victor! I am going to the gym.
– Я хожу (habitual movement) в тренажёрный зал по пятницам.	I go to the gym on Fridays.
– А я не люблю тренажёры. Я плаваю (habitual movement) в бассейне по субботам.	I don't like the machines. I swim in the pool on Saturdays.

Level
1, 2

24.5.2 The most frequent use of the verbs of motion without prefixes in the past tense

The multidirectional verbs are the ones that are most frequently used in the past tense. They are used when describing both a single round-trip movement or multiple round-trip (return) movements in the past and answer the following questions:

- Куда Вы ходили/ездили? (Where did you go?)
- Сколько раз Вы ходили/ездили туда? (How many times did you go there?)

For example:


Прошлым летом мы ездили (single return movement, to the area and back) в Австралию.	Last summer we went to Australia.
Вчера вечером Виктор ходил (single return movement, to the area and back) в кино.	Yesterday evening Victor went to the cinema.
В понедельник Мария везила (single return movement, to the area and back) отца в больницу.	On Monday, Maria took her father to the hospital.
Они ездили (multiple return movement, to the area and back) на Чёрное море дважды.	They went to the Black Sea twice.

Level
1, 2

24.5.3 The most frequent use the verbs of motion without prefixes in the future tense

In the present tense, unidirectional verbs of motion are often used in popular speech to describe one's intentions for the future. This structure is equivalent to when an English verb in the present continuous tense is used to describe an action in the future. For example:

Завтра мы едем (our intentions for the future) в Иркутск.	Tomorrow we are going to Irkutsk.
После работы он идёт (his intentions for the future) на вечеринку.	After work, he is going to a party.
Они летят (their intentions for the future) на море в следующий четверг.	They are flying to the seaside next Thursday.

The perfective verbs of motion with the prefix **по-** are frequently used in the future tense to describe one's definite actions in the future. For verbs of motion with the prefix **по-**,  25.1.4.

Level 2, 3

24.5.4 Less frequent use of the unidirectional verbs of motion in the present, past and future tenses

In the present and past tenses, the unidirectional verbs of motion are also used to emphasise the one-way only nature of a movement, if the context requires. Usually, the direction of the described movement is clearly indicated and the destination is known. The one-way movement can be single or repeated. For example:

Обычно я иду́ на работу пешко́м, а о́братно еду́ на авто́бусе.	Usually I walk to work, but go back home by bus.
Сего́дня я еду́ на работу на метро́.	Today I am going to work by tube/ underground/subway.

Often the emphasis is made on some particular or unusual circumstances surrounding the one-way movement, if it is a one-off event. For example:

Я сего́дня из-за плохой пого́ды еду́ на работу на авто́бусе. Совершенно невозмо́жно идти́ пешко́м!	Today I am going to work by bus because of the bad weather. It is impossible to walk today!
Вчера́ из-за ава́рии на шоссе́ я ехала́ до вокза́ла це́лый час. Я чуть не опозда́ла на по́езд.	Yesterday it took me an hour to get to the railway station because of an accident on the motorway. I almost missed my train.

In the past tense, the unidirectional verbs of motion are also used to describe a background action in support of the principal action. Therefore, the unidirectional verbs usually appear in a complex sentence with subordinate clauses or in a simple sentence with more than one verb. The description of the background action is usually introduced by one of the conjunctions **пока́**, **в то время́ как** (while/meanwhile), **когда́** (when/while) or **и** (and). Sometimes these conjunctions are omitted, but implied. The principal verb can be used in both perfective and imperfective aspects. Note the verbs of motion describing the background action are used in the imperfective aspect only. For example:

Вчера́, когда́ я шла́ (background action) по улице, я встрети́ла (principal action) дру́га.	Yesterday when I was going (I was on my way) along the street I met my friend.
Я шла́, шла́, шла́ (background action). Пирожок нашла́ (principal action).	I was going, going, going . I found a little pie.

The compounded imperfective future tense of unidirectional verbs is very rarely used. It is used only if it is necessary to stress the precise timing of when an action will be occurring in the future. The Russian verb is translated into English using the future continuous tense (I will be going etc.). For example:

Уже́ 5 часо́в. За́втра в это́ время́ мы уже́ бу́дем лететь в Пари́ж.	It is already 5 o'clock. This time tomorrow, we will already be flying to Paris.
Когда́ ты бу́дешь идти́ мимо́ теа́тра, посмотрй́ на афи́шу.	When you pass by/go past (literally: be will passing) the theatre, look at the poster. (This form is rarely used.)

Level
2, 3

24.5.5 Less frequent use of the multidirectional verbs of motion in the present, past and future tenses

In all three tenses, the multidirectional verbs of motion are used to stress movement in non-specified directions (around). For example:

Соба́ка бе́гает по по́лю.	The dog runs/is running around the field.
Ле́тним ве́чером ла́сточки бу́дут летáть над по́лем.	In summer evenings, swallows will be flying/will fly over the field.
Он до́лго ходи́л по ле́су.	He walked/was walking around the forest for a long time.

In all three tenses, the multidirectional verbs of motion are also used to indicate ability or skills. For example:

Сви́ньи не летáют .	Pigs cannot fly .
Как стра́нно! Оле́г так хорошо́ пла́вал , а тепе́рь бо́ится воды́.	How bizarre! Oleg used to swim so well, and now he is scared of water.
Бо́льно́й ребёнок бу́дет ходи́ть то́лько по́сле опера́ции.	The sick child will be able to walk only after an operation.

In the past tense, the multidirectional verbs are used to emphasise a habitual action that is not carried out any more. For example:



Пенсионе́ры ра́ньше всегда́ ходи́ли (they used to it, but do not do it any more) в э́тот клуб игра́ть в би́нго, но клуб за́крыли.	Retired people used to go to that club to play bingo, but the club was closed down.
Когда́-то да́вно здесь был о́гро́мный пруд. Я вспоми́наю, как над ним всегда́ летáли (they used to it, but do not do it any more) ча́йки.	A long time ago, there was a huge pond here. I remember how seagulls used to fly over it.

The compounded imperfective future tense of multidirectional verbs is often used to stress the intention to do something on a regular basis. For example:

По утра́м я бу́ду бе́гать в па́рке.	I intend to jog in the park every morning.
В ста́рших кла́ссах де́ти бу́дут ходи́ть в шко́лу шесть раз в неде́лю.	In the senior classes the schoolchildren will be attending school six times a week.

Level
1, 2, 3

24.6 Verbs of motion in the present and past tenses: internal stem modification

For the present and past tenses of verbs,  17 and 18 respectively. The formation of the compounded future of imperfective verbs is not affected by any irregularities. For the simple future of perfective verbs,  19.1.3.

24.6.1 Present tense stem modification

All verbs of motion without prefixes that are affected by some changes in the present tense stem are listed below. If the verb of motion is not included in the list, its stem is not affected by internal stem modification.

- Changes in the stem concern only the 1st person singular form of the verbs *ходи́ть*, *е́здить*, *лете́ть*, *броди́ть*, *води́ть*, *носи́ть* and *кати́ть*.

- Changes in the stem of the verbs *éхать*, *плыть*, *брести́*, *вести́* and *гнать* remain throughout the conjugation.
- Changes occur in the stem of the verb *бежа́ть* in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural forms.

Infinitive	1st person singular	2nd person singular	3rd person plural
ходи́ть	хожу́	ходишь	ходят
éхать	éду	éдешь	éдут
éздить	éжду	éдишь	éздят
бежа́ть	бегу́	бежи́шь	бегу́т
летéть	лечу́	лети́шь	летя́т
плыть	плыву́	плывёшь	плыву́т
брести́	бреду́	брёдешь	брёдут
броди́ть	брожу́	бро́дишь	бро́дят
вести́	веду́	ведёшь	веду́т
води́ть	вожу́	во́дишь	во́дят
носи́ть	ношу́	но́сишь	но́сят
гнать	гоню́	го́нишь	го́нят
кати́ть	качу́	ка́тишь	ка́тят

24.6.2 Irregular past tense (👉 18.3)

There are several verbs of motion without prefixes that follow a special pattern in the past tense. They are listed below.

- The verb *идти́*. The past tense is formed from a different stem: *шёл, шла, шло, шли*.
- Verbs with infinitives that end with *-ти* (except *идти́*), and the verb *лезть*. Note the absence of suffix *-л-* in the masculine form after consonants *з* and *с* and the appearance of the letter *ѐ* under the stress. Some verbs in *-ти* are exceptions to this rule (see comments below). For example:
вести́ (to transport): *вѐз, везла́, везло́, везли́*
нести́ (to carry): *нѐс, несла́, несло́, несли́*
ползти́ (to crawl): *полз, ползла́, ползло́, ползли́*
лезть (to climb): *лез, лѐзла, лѐзло, лѐзли*
- Verbs whose infinitives end with *-ти* keep the suffix *-л-* in all forms, if their present-tense stems end with *-д-*:

вести́: *веду́, веду́т* (to lead): *вѐл, велá, велó, вели́*

брести́: *бреду́, бреду́т* (to wander/to stroll): *брѐл, брелá, брелó, брели́*

Note that all the verbs listed above follow the same pattern when a prefix is added to them. For the irregular past tense of verbs of motion with prefixes, 👉 25.4.

Level
2, 3

24.7 Figurative use of verbs of motion without prefixes

Verbs of motion without prefixes are frequently used in a figurative sense, especially in popular speech and idioms. If verbs of motion are used in a figurative sense, they may have only a limited number of forms. The following list of verbs of motion used figuratively is not exhaustive, but it contains the most frequently occurring verbs of motion.

The verb **идти** (to go), in all tenses, appears in several idioms. Note neither the verb **ходить** (to go) nor any forms derived from it are used in these idioms:

- **Идти** (to go) replaces **to be** when talking about any event/activity in progress, such as урок (lesson), фильм (film), спектакль (show), экзамен (examination), футбольный матч (football match); for example, Что **идёт** по телевизору/в кино/в театре? (**What's on** TV/at the cinema/at the theatre?) Тихо! Идут экзамены. (Silence! Examinations are in progress.)
- **Идти** (to go) replaces **to be** when talking about some weather conditions (rain or snow); for example, Дождь/снег **идёт**. (It **is** raining/snowing.)
- **Идти** (to go) replaces **to be** when describing the process of communication; for example, Речь/разговор **идёт о ...** (They **are talking** about ... /the conversation about ... **is in progress**.) Спор **идёт о ...** (They are arguing about ...)
- **Идти** can convey the meaning 'to suit someone', when talking about clothes, hairstyle or habits. Тебе так **идёт** новая причёска! (Your new **hairdo suits** you so well!) Курение совсем **не идёт** тебе и портит твой имидж. (**Smoking does not suit** you and damages your image.)

Both **идти** and **ходить** (to go), in all tenses, are used when:

- Talking about how a watch/clock is working; for example, Часы **идут**. (The watch/clock **is working**.) Часы давно **не ходят**. (The watch/clock **has not been working** properly for a long time.)
- Describing the movements of vehicles, mainly public transport; for example, Трамвай, поезд, троллейбус, автобус **идёт**. (The tram, train, trolleybus, bus **goes**.) Раньше трамвай No. 5 часто **ходил**. (The No. 5 tram used to **come** frequently in the past.) However, the verbs **ехать** and **ездить** are used to describe the movement of a car: Машина/такси/грузовик **едет** по автострате (A car/taxi/lorry is driving on a motorway).

Other frequently occurring verbs of motion without prefixes and used in all tenses are:

- **Водить/вести** in the idiom водить/вести машину (to drive). The noun **машина** is an obligatory part of the Russian idiom; for example, Он хорошо **водит машину**. (He **drives** well.)
- **Вести** meaning 'to behave'. The pronoun **себя** is an obligatory part of the idiom; for example, Мальчик хорошо **вёл себя** на уроке. (The boy **behaved himself** at the lesson.)
- **Вести** meaning 'to conduct'; for example, **Вести** урок /войну. (**To conduct** a lesson/a war.) **Вести переписку**. (**To correspond** with.) **Вести хозяйство**. (**To keep house**.) **Вести наблюдение(я)**. (**To observe/watch**.)
- **Водить** in the idiom 'to lie'; for example, Он всех нас **водит за нос**. (He **lies** to all of us.)
- **Носить** (to wear); for example, Он **носит** очки и бороду. (He **wears** glasses and sports a beard.)

To describe a fast-going process, the idioms of time are used with the verbs **идти́** (to go), **бежа́ть** (to run) and **летéть** (to fly) in the present, past and future tenses: **Время идёт/бежит/летит.** (Time **is flying** by.) **Годы/дни/часы идут/бегут/летят.** (The years/days/hours **are flying** by.)

Several reflexive verbs of motion are used figuratively:

- **Нестись/носиться** (to run; to be obsessed with an idea): Дети **носились** по двору́ до са́мого вéчера. (The children **run** around the yard until the evening.) «Русь, куда́ **несёшься** ты? Дай отве́т» (Го́голь). (Russia! Where are you going to so fast? Answer me.) Она́ **носи́лась** с э́тим предложе́нием ме́сяц. (She **has been obsessed** with this proposal for a month.)
- **Обходиться/обойтись** (с кем-либо) хорошо́/плохо́ (to treat someone well/badly): Со спасёнными живóтными пло́хо **обходи́лись** их хозя́ева. (The rescued animals were **treated** badly by their owners.)
- **Гна́ться/гоня́ться** за кем?/за чем? (to run after someone/something hoping to catch someone/something): «За на́ми **гонится** эска́дра по пя́там» (Высо́цкий). (The warships came after us.)
- **Тащи́ться/таска́ться** (to drag oneself along): «Бродя́га, судьбу́ проклиная́, **тащи́лся** с сумо́й на плеча́х» (Наро́дная пе́сня). (The tramp, cursing his luck, was dragging himself along with a bag on his shoulder.)
- **Кати́ться/ката́ться на лы́жах** (to ski)/на са́нках (to skate) etc. – the verb is a part of the idiom: 📖 24.4.

Level
1, 2

Упражнения

1. Replace the English phrases containing the verbs *to go/to ride* by the appropriate Russian equivalent. Put the verbs and nouns into the correct form and add the appropriate preposition:

1. Про́шлым ле́том друзья́ (to ride camels) в Египте.
2. За́втра Та́ня (to go to Moscow) на по́езде?
3. Ма́ша не лю́бит (to go by plane).
4. Обы́чно студéнты (to go by foot) в университет пе́шкóм.
5. Вы ра́ньше ча́сто (to go by bike)?

Level
1, 2

2. Insert the appropriate unidirectional or multidirectional verb of motion without prefix in the correct form:

A. Ка́ждый день:

1. Ва́ня в шко́лу пе́шкóм.
2. Ко́шка на де́рево.
3. Оте́ц до́чку в де́тский сад на маши́не.
4. Ё́ра соба́ку в городско́й парк.

B. Сейча́с:

1. Самолёт из Ло́ндона в Петербу́рг.
2. Студéнты пе́шкóм в библиотéку и кн́иги.
3. Мы на по́езде в Эдинбу́рг.
4. Па́па дете́й на мотоци́кле.

C. На про́шлой неде́ле:

1. Никитины к сы́ну в Австра́лию на самолёте.
2. Ба́бушка вну́ка на маши́не в больни́цу.
3. Студéнты на вечеринку к сосе́дям.
4. Тури́сты в го́ры на велосипéде.

D. Завтра:

1. Мари́на к роди́телям на да́чу.
2. А́ся в го́сти к сосе́дям по до́му.
3. Ми́ша и Ко́ля на вертолётe в Му́рманск.
4. Мари́я дете́й к ба́бушке на маши́не.

Level
2, 3

3. Insert the appropriate verb of motion:

1. Обы́чно Мари́на на рабо́ту на авто́бусе, но вчера́ она́ опáздывала и поэто́му на такси́.
2. Вы не бойте́сь воды́, вы уме́ете?
3. Вчера́ Ви́ктор пешко́м по па́рку и нашёл лоте́рейный биле́т.
4. В но́вом году́ мы в тренажё́рный зал ка́ждый день.
5. Ра́ньше бездо́мный це́лыми дня́ми по горо́ду.
6. Вчера́ па́па на кры́шу, что́бы почини́ть антéну.
7. Черепа́хи о́чень ме́дленно
8. Про́шлой о́сенью пти́цы ста́ями над па́рком.

**Обобщающее упражнение**

4. Fill the gaps with the appropriate form of the Russian equivalents of the verbs *to go by foot/to go by transport, to swim, to jog*:

Level
2, 3

Господи́н Смирно́в встреча́ет ста́рого дру́га

1. – Приве́т, Са́ша! Как дела́? Куда́?
2. – Приве́т, Вале́ра! Спаси́бо, всё норма́льно. Я на рабо́ту. Ты не забы́л, что я рабо́таю в Кре́мле. Там нахо́дится на́ша компа́ния. Я всегда́ на рабо́ту пешко́м. А ты? Куда́ ты?
3. – Я то́же на рабо́ту. То́лько я рабо́таю дале́ко от це́нтра и мне приходи́тся ту́да на метро́. Ну, ино́гда я на рабо́ту на авто́бусе. Ты в бассе́йн по суббо́там?
4. – Конечно́, Я люблю́ спорт. А ты?
5. Я по па́рку по утра́м. Ну ла́дно, изви́ни, мне на́до
6. Пока́. Счастли́во.

25 Verbs of motion: verbs of motion with prefixes

All verbs of motion with prefixes are formed by adding prefixes to the fourteen verbs of motion without prefixes: 🗨 24.1.

The essential characteristics of the verbs of motion with prefixes are:

- Adding a prefix changes the meaning of the verb: **идти/ходить** (to go); **прийти/приходить** (to arrive); **уйти/уходить** (to depart); **зайти/заходить** (to pop in) etc. For the meanings of the prefixes, 🗨 25.1.
- Any of up to 20 different prefixes can be added to the verbs of motion. The most frequently occurring verbs of motion, such as **идти/ходить** (to go), **ехать/ездить** (to go), etc. can take all 20 prefixes. For all possible prefix combinations, 🗨 25.2.
- Each prefix affects all verbs of motion in the same way. For example, **при-** means 'to move here' with all verbs that can be used with **при-**: **прийти/приходить** (to arrive/to come here); **приплывать/приплыть** (to sail here); **приносить/принести** (to bring here) etc.; **у-** means 'to move away' with all verbs that can be used with **-у-**: **уходить/уйти** (to depart/to move away); **уплывать/уплыть** (to sail away); **уносить/унести** (to take away), etc.
- Some changes may occur in the stem of the verb when a prefix is added; for example: **ид-й**: **идти** – **прийти**; **д-ж**: **ездить** – **езжать** etc.: 🗨 25.3.
- All verbs of motion with prefixes have one imperfective and one perfective verb with the same prefix. All *perfective* verbs are formed from the *unidirectional* verbs of motion without prefixes. All *imperfective* verbs are formed from the *multidirectional* verbs of motion without prefixes; for example, **приходить** (imperfective, from multidirectional verb **ходить**) – **прийти** (perfective, from unidirectional verb **идти**); **езжать** (imperfective, from multidirectional verb **ездить**) – **ехать** (perfective, from unidirectional verb **ехать**), etc. For exceptions to this rule, 🗨 25.1.3–25.1.5; for the complete list of unidirectional and multidirectional verbs, 🗨 24.1.

Level
2, 3

25.1 Meanings of the prefixes used with verbs of motion

25.1.1 The prefixes **при-**, **у-**, **в-**, **вы-**, **под-**, **от-**, **вз-**, **раз-** and **с-**

The prefixes **при-** and **у-**, **в-** and **вы-**, **под-** and **от-**, **вз-** and **с-**, and **раз-** and **с-** form pairs of prefixes with opposite meanings. When added to a verb of motion, the prefixes emphasise the start and end of a movement (see Summary Table 25.I below – all verbs given as examples in the table are perfective.). Note that if a prefix ends in a consonant and is followed by the letters **й**, **ш** or **гн** the vowel **о** is added to the prefix, and if it is followed by the vowel **е** the letter **ъ** is added to the prefix.

Summary Table 25.1

Prefix meaning	Examples	Preposition that the verb takes and case of the noun that follows
при- : move here (arrive)	прийти́/прие́хать (to arrive) прине́сти/приве́сти (to bring) приве́зти (to deliver)	куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative к + dative
		отку́да (where from): из + genitive с + genitive от + genitive
у- : move from here (depart)	уйти́/уе́хать (to depart/to leave) уне́сти/уве́сти (to take away)	отку́да (where from): из/с/из-за/из-под/от + genitive
		куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative к + dative
в(о)- : move in (inside)	войти́/въе́хать (come in/ to enter) вне́сти (to bring inside); ввезти́ (to import)	куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative
		отку́да (where from): из + genitive с + genitive
вы- : move out (outside)	вы́йти/вы́ехать (to get out/to exit) вы́нести (to take away from inside); вы́везти (to export)	отку́да (where from): из/с/из-за/из-под + genitive
		куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative
под(о)- : approach/come up to	подойти́/подъе́хать (to approach) подне́сти (to bring to); подвезти́ (to give a lift)	куда́ (where to): к + dative
от(о)- : move from	отойти́/отъе́хать (to go away from/to step away) отне́сти/отвезти́ (to take away from)	отку́да (where from): от + genitive
		куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative к + dative

Prefix meaning	Examples	Preposition that the verb takes and case of the noun that follows
вз(о) /воз- : move up (has limited use)	взлететь (to take off) влезть (to climb)	куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative
		откуда́ (where from): с + genitive
с(о)- : move down (has limited use)	слететь (to fly down) слезть (to climb down)	откуда́ (where from): с + genitive
		куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative
раз(о)- : to deliver in many different points or to disperse something (the prefix is used only with transitive verbs)	разнести́ (to deliver) развести́ (to deliver)	куда́ (where to): по + dative
с(о) : to deliver to one point from many different points (the prefix is used only with transitive verbs)	снести́ (to deliver) свезти́ (to deliver)	куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative
раз(о)- (ся) : disperse from one point; the prefix is used only with reflexive verbs	разъехаться/разбежаться (to disperse)	куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative по + dative
с(о)- (ся) : gather to one point; the prefix is used only with reflexive verbs	съехаться/сбежаться (to gather)	откуда́ (where from): из + genitive с + genitive от + genitive
		куда́ (where to): в + accusative на + accusative к + dative

Level
3

Additional information:

- Verbs with prefixes **вы-** and **от-** have the additional temporal meaning 'to be away for a short while': Дирéктор **вышел**. (The director **is out for a minute**.) Я **отойду́** на мину́ту. (I **will be back** in a minute.)
- The prefix **от-** added to the transitive verbs of motion (**относи́ть–отнести́**; **отвози́ть–отвезти́**; **отводи́ть–отвести́**) emphasises the end point of the movement rather than the start point: Он **отнёс** кни́ги в библиотеку. (He **returned** the books to the library.) Я **отвезу́** тебя́ в аэропорт. I **will give you a lift** to the airport. For a complete list of the verbs of motion without prefixes, 📖 24.1.
- The prefixes **вз-** and **с-** are used in specific contexts, mainly with the verbs лететь/летать (to fly) and лезть/лазить (to climb). In Russian, verbs other than

the verbs of motion are used to convey the idea *to go upstairs/to go up* – **подниматься** (impf)/**подняться** (pf) and *to go downstairs/to go down* – **спускаться** (impf)/**спуститься** (pf). For example: Он с лёгкостью **поднялся** на третий этаж. (He easily **climbed** to the third floor.) Она **спустилась** в погреб за вином. (She **went down** to the cellar to get some wine.) To describe upwards movement in any means of air transport, the verb of motion is used: **взлетать/взлететь** (to take off). However, to convey the idea of landing, verbs other than verbs of motion are used: **приземляться /приземлиться** or **садиться/сесть** (to land).

- The prefixes **с-**, **про-** and **за-** have additional temporal meanings (☞ 25.1.5).

Level
2, 3

25.1.2 Prefixes **про-**, **пере-**, **за-**, **до-** and **обо-**

The prefixes **про-**, **пере-**, **за-**, **до-** and **обо-** do not form semantic pairs. When added to a verb of motion, the prefixes **про-**, **пере-**, **за-** and **обо-** clarify the details of a speaker's route (see Summary Table 25.II below – all verbs given as examples in the table are perfective.). Note, the prefixes **про-**, **пере-**, and **за-** have multiple meanings. The prefix **до-** describes the end point of a movement. If the prefix **об-** is followed by the letters **й**, **ш** or **гн** the vowel **о** is added to the prefix, and if it is followed by the vowel **е** the letter **ь** is added to the prefix.

Summary Table 25.II

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	Preposition that the verb takes and case of the noun that follows
про-	move through/pass by/move under/move above; the meaning depends on the following preposition	пройти мимо (to pass by) пролететь над (to fly above)	где? (where?) через + accusative под + instrumental мимо + genitive над + instrumental
	other meanings: to miss something (a stop, a street etc)	проехать останóвку (to miss one's stop)	по preposition + accusative (свою останóвку)
	to move how far? (a distance)/to move how long? (timing)	проехать 5 килоméтров/ 5 часóв (to travel for 5 km/5 hours)	по preposition + accusative (скóлько килоméтров/часóв)
пере-	across	перейти úлицу (to cross the street)	что? (what?) по preposition + accusative (úлицу)
		перейти чéрез мост (to cross over the bridge)	чéрез (что?) + accusative
	other meanings: to move house	переéхать (to move house)	откúда? (from where?) из + genitive с + genitive

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	Preposition that the verb takes and case of the noun that follows
			куда? (to where?) в + accusative на + accusative
за-	pop in/call on/call for	зайти в магазин (to pop in)	куда? (where to?) в + accusative на + accusative
		зайти к другу (call on a person)	к кому? (on whom?) к + dative
	other meanings: move behind	зайти за хлебом (to call for)	за кем?/чем? (for whom/what) за + instrumental
		зайти за дом (to go behind a house)	куда? (where to?) за + accusative
до-	reach the point/to go as far as	дойти до (to go as far as)	до куда? (where to?) до + genitive
об(о)-	move around	обойти (to go around)	вокруг чего? (around what?) вокруг + genitive что? (what?) no preposition + accusative (дом)

Level
2, 3

25.1.3 Prefixes with temporal meaning **по-**, **с-**, **за-** and **про-**

The prefixes **по-**, **с-**, **за-**, and **про-** added to the verbs of motion can emphasise either the beginning or length of a movement. Note that if the prefix **с-** is followed by a vowel the letter **ъ** is added to the prefix: **съездить**.

The verbs of motion with prefixes that have temporal meaning (**по-**, **с-**, **за-**, and **про-**) form their aspect pairs differently than verbs of motion with other prefixes (☞ 25.1.1 and 25.1.2.). In this situation, the verbs without a prefix are imperfectives and the verbs with added prefixes are their perfective pairs. For example:

идти (impf) – пойти (pf)	ходить (impf) – походить (pf)
ехать (impf) – поехать (pf)	ездить (impf) – поездить (pf)
бежать (impf) – побежать (pf)	бегать (impf) – побегать (pf)

☞ Note that the prefixes **с-**, **за-** and **про-** can have other meanings and can be used in different ways (☞ 25.1.1 and 25.1.2).

Level
2, 3

25.1.4 Verbs of motion with the prefix **по-**

The prefix **по-** added to a unidirectional verb of motion makes the verb perfective and changes the verb in the following way:

- In the future tense and the infinitive form, **по-** stresses an intention: Завтра я **поеду** в Москву. (I **will go** to Moscow tomorrow.) A verb of motion, in the infinitive form, with **по-** is frequently used with the verbs **решать–решить**

(to decide) and **хотеть–захотеть** (to wish): Лето́м мы **реши́ли по́ехать** в Испáнию. (We **decided to go** to Spain in the summer.) Я **хочу́ пойти́** в кино́. (I would like to go to the cinema.)

👁 In the past tense **по-** can be used:

- When emphasising the beginning of a movement (*setting off*): Я не застáла подру́гу, она́ **по́ехала** в Лондон. (I missed my friend; she **had set off** for London.)
- When describing a sequence of movements: Он **вы́шел** из до́ма **и пошёл** к авто́бусной остано́вке. (He **left** the house **and began walking** towards the bus stop.) Нача́ла мы **éхали** по шоссе́, пото́м **по́ехали** по узко́й лесно́й доро́ге. (At first, we **were driving along** the motorway, then we **began driving along** the narrow forest road.) Note, neither the verb **ходить** nor **идти** can be used in this context. **Ходить** in the past tense describes a single round trip, from and to the start point; **идти** describes an on-going background action that is never completed.
- When giving an instruction: Дава́й **пошли́!**/Пошли́! (**Let's go!**) Ну что ж, **по́ехали!** (Well, let's **go!**)

Level 3 The prefix **по-**, added to multidirectional verbs of motion without prefixes, stresses the short length of a movement in all tenses and the infinitive form: Она́ **похо́дила** по ко́мнате и легла́ спать. (She **walked for a short while** around the room and went to bed.) Он реши́л **попла́вать**. (He has decided to **go for a swim**.)

Level 3 25.1.5 Verbs of motion with the prefixes **с-**, **про-** and **за-**

The prefixes **с-**, **про-** and **за-** are used only with multidirectional verbs of motion if the timing is being emphasised.

- The prefix **с-** added to a multidirectional verb makes the verb perfective and conveys the idea of a quick return movement/round trip in the past or future. In popular speech, a verb of motion with **с-** is frequently used in the imperative or infinitive forms: Го́сти **иду́т**, а я забы́ла купи́ть хлéба. **Сбега́й**, пожа́луйста, в бу́лочную, купи́ па́ру бухáнок. (The guests are arriving now, but I forgot to buy some bread. Could you please **go** to the bakery **now and get** a couple of loaves.) За́втра мне **на́до съéздить** в библио́теку. (Tomorrow I need to **go** to the library (**and come back quickly**)).
- Conversely, the prefix **про-** added to multidirectional verbs makes them perfective and conveys the idea of a prolonged multidirectional movement in the past and future: Тури́сты **весь день прохо́дили по** музе́ям. (The tourists **spent all day** in the museums. – **For the whole day**, the tourists **were going around** the museums.)
- The prefix **за-** added to a multidirectional verb makes the verb perfective and emphasises the beginning of the multidirectional movement in the past or future: Она́ **не́рвно захо́дила** по ко́мнате, ожида́я звонка́. (While waiting for a call, she became tense and **started walking around** the room.)

Level 2, 3 25.2 Combinations of verbs of motion with prefixes

Various verbs of motion can take a different number of prefixes. All common combinations of verbs of motion with prefixes are presented in Summary Table 25.III. All the prefixes listed describe the start and end points of the movement or its route.

Summary Table 25.III

идти–ходить	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, вз-/с-, раз(о)-(ся)/с(о)-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-, об(о)-
ехать–ездить	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, вз-/с-, разъ-(ся)/съ-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-, объ-
лететь–летать	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, вз-/с-, раз-(ся)/с-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-, об-
бежать–бегать	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, вз-/с-, раз-(ся)/с-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-, о-
плыть–плавать	при-/у-, вы-, под-/от-, вс-, рас-(ся)/с-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-
нести–носить	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, раз-/с-, за-, про-, до-, пере-, об-
везти–возить	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, раз-/с-, за-, про-, до-, пере-, об-
вести–водить	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, раз-/с-, за-, про-, до-, пере-, об-
лезть–лазить	в-/вы-, с-, за-, про-, до-, пере-
ползти–ползать	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, рас-(ся)/с-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-, с-
гнать–гонять	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-(о)/от-, разо-/со-, за-, про-, до-, пере-, об-
катить–катать	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, рас-(ся)/с-(ся), за-, про-, до-, пере-, с-
тащить–таскать	при-/у-, в-/вы-, под-/от-, рас-/с-, за-, про-, до-, пере-, с-
брести–бродить	при-, раз-(ся), за-, про-, до-

👁 The **two prefixes with temporal meaning по-** and **про-** are used with all fourteen verbs of motion. The **prefixes с-** and **за-** with temporal meaning have a limited use, mainly with the verbs **ходить**, **ездить**, **бегать** and **летать**. Additionally, in everyday speech the prefix **из-(ис-)** is added to the verbs **ходить**, **ездить**, **лазить** to emphasise that one has exhausted all possible destinations: **исходить** весь город (to go everywhere in the city).

Level
2, 3

25.3 Verbs of motion with prefixes in the present and the future tenses: internal stem modification

Most verbs of motion with prefixes are affected by some internal stem changes in the present and future tenses. These changes are similar to the changes that occur in the present-tense stems of verbs of motion without prefixes (👁 24.6.1). Each added prefix affects all stems of verbs of motion in the same way. Summary Tables 25.IV and 25.V explain these changes.

Summary Table 25.IV

Comments	Future tense of perfective verbs – examples			
Changes affect	Infinitive	1st person singular	2nd person singular	3rd person plural
All forms	идти: й/йд Infinitive stem has -й- : дойти, зйти etc. Future tense stem has -йд- : дойду, зайду	дойду, зайду	дойдёшь, зайдёшь The verb прийти has -д- in all future tense forms (see comments below)	дойдут, зайдут
All forms	ехать: х/д	доеду, заеду	доедёшь, заедёшь	доедут, заедут
Only 1st person singular	лететь: т/ч	долечу, залечу	долетишь, залетишь	долетят, залетят
All forms	плыть: в	доплыву, заплыву	доплывёшь, заплывёшь	доплывут, заплывут
1st person singular and 3rd person plural	бежать: ж/г	добегу, забегу	добежишь, забежишь	добегут, забегут
All forms	вести: с/д	довежу, завежу	доведёшь, заведёшь	доведут, заведут
All forms	бредить: ст/д	добреду, забреду	добредёшь, забредёшь	добредут, забредут
All forms	гнать: гн/гон	догоню, загоню	догонишь, загонишь	догонят, загонят
1st person singular	катить: т/ч	докачу, закачу	докачишь, закачишь	докачат, закачат

- An exception to this pattern is the verb **прийти**:

я приду	мы придём
ты придёшь	вы придёте
он придёт	они придут

Summary Table 25.V

Comments	Present tense of imperfective verbs – examples			
	Infinitive	1st person singular	2nd person singular	3rd person plural
Only 1st person singular	ходи́ть: д/ж	дохожу́, захожу́	доходи́шь, заходи́шь	доходя́т, заходя́т
All forms	э́здить: езди- / ежа-	доезжа́ю, заезжа́ю	доезжа́ешь, заезжа́ешь	доезжа́ют, заезжа́ют
All forms	пла́вать: плава/плыва-	доплыва́ю, заплыва́ю	доплыва́ешь, заплыва́ешь	доплыва́ют, заплыва́ют
Only 1st person singular	води́ть: д/ж	довожу́, завожу́	доводи́шь, заводи́шь	доводя́т, заводя́т
Only 1st person singular	вози́ть: з/ж	довожу́, завожу́	довози́шь, завози́шь	довозя́т, завозя́т
Only 1st person singular	носи́ть: с/ш	доношу́, заношу́	доноси́шь, заноси́шь	донося́т, занося́т
All forms	ла́зить: лази-/ леза-	долеза́ю, залеза́ю	долеза́ешь, залеза́ешь	долеза́ют, залеза́ют
All forms	ката́ть: ката-/ катыва-	дока́тываю, закáтываю	дока́тываешь, закáтываешь	дока́тывают, закáтывают
All forms	таска́ть: таска-/ таскива-	дота́скиваю, зата́скиваю	дота́скиваешь, зата́скиваешь	дота́скивают, зата́скивают
All forms	броди́ть: броди-/брета-	добреда́ю, забреда́ю	добреда́ешь, забреда́ешь	добреда́ют, забреда́ют

The stems of the following verbs are not affected by internal changes in any tense: летать, бегать, нести́, везти́, тащить, ползать, ползти́, гонять, лезть.

25.4 Irregular verbs of motion with prefixes in the past tense (👉 18.3)

There are several verbs of motion with prefixes that follow a special pattern in the past tense:

- The verb **идти́** and any verbs with prefixes derived from **идти́**: **шёл, шла, шло, шли, пришёл, пришла́, пришло́, пришли́, ушёл, ушла́, ушло́, ушли́** etc. If the prefix ends with a consonant, the vowel **-о-** is added to the prefix: **вошёл, вошла́, обошёл** etc.
- Verbs whose infinitives end with **-ти** (except **идти́**), the verb **лэзть** and their derived forms exhibit absence of the suffix **-л-** in the masculine form after the

consonants **з** and **с** and the appearance of the letter **ѐ** under the stress. Some verbs ending in **-ти** are exceptions to this rule (see comments below). For example:

везти (to transport): **привѐз, привезла́, привезло́, привезли́** etc.

нести (to carry): **унѐс, унесла́, унесло́, унесли́** etc.

ползти (to crawl): **допóлз, доползла́, доползло́, доползли́** etc.

лезть (to climb): **залѐз, залѐзла, залѐзло, залѐзли** etc.

- Verbs whose infinitives end with **-ти** and their derived forms keep the suffix **-л-** in all forms, if their present and future tense stems end with **-д**:

вести: **веду́, веду́т** (to lead): **привѐл, привела́, привело́, привели́** etc.

бредти: **бреду́, бреду́т** (to wander/to stroll): **добрѐл, добрела́, добрело́, добрели́** etc.

Level
2, 3

Упражне́ния

1. Complete the sentences using a suitable verb of motion with prefixes **в-/вы-/при-/у-/под-/от-/вз-/с-**. Put the verb into the appropriate form:

1. Росси́я нефть, газ и лес, а гото́вую проду́кцию.
2. Хозя́ин свою́ соба́ку на прогу́лку в любую́ пого́ду.
3. Шко́льник посту́чал в дверь ка́бинета́ дире́ктора и спроси́л: «Мо́жно?». «Да,», – отве́тил дире́ктор.
4. Дава́й бы́стрее! Наш по́езд че́рез 5 мину́т.
5. в го́сти в па́тницу. Смо́жешь?
6. Ка́ждый день врач на рабо́ту в 8 утра́, а домо́й в 6 ве́чера.
7. Извини́те, вы не меня́ до вокза́ла?
8. Ко́т заболѐл. На́до его́ к ветери́нару.
9. Ба́бушка к окну́.
10. Пти́ца с ве́тки на зе́млю.
11. Стуа́рдесса о́бъявила́, что самоле́т че́рез 5 мину́т.

Level
2, 3

2. Complete the sentences using a suitable verb of motion with prefixes **про-/пере-/за-/до-/об-**. Put the verb in the required form:

1. Ло́шади краси́во че́рез мост.
2. У́лицу сле́дует на зеле́ный свет.
3. Мой зна́комый ми́мо меня́ и да́же не поздоро́вался.
4. Проѐзд был закрѐг, и нам пришлос́ь вокру́г пло́щади.
5. По доро́ге в аэропо́рт я к дру́гу за посыл́кой.
6. Пти́ца к нам в окно́.
7. Ты смо́жешь э́ту бу́рную ре́ку?
8. «Извини́те, мы смо́жем до Не́вского проспеќта на метро́?». «Э́то недале́ко. Вы смо́жете туда́ пешко́м».

Level
2, 3

3. Complete the sentences using a suitable form of a verb of motion with prefix **по-**:

1. Ле́том мы реши́ли на Байка́л на по́езде.
2. Ви́ктор вы́шел из до́ма и к ста́нции метро́.
3. Вы со мной на да́чу?
4. Говоря́т, что Гага́рин сказа́л пе́ред взлѐтом: «Ну что,!»
5. Снача́ла мы до́лго шли по незна́комой у́лице, пото́м перешли́ че́рез доро́гу и по па́рку. За́тем мы остано́вились, прове́рили наш ма́ршру́т по ка́рте и да́льше.
6. К сожа́лению, я не заста́ла свою́ подру́гу до́ма. Она́ у́же в аэропо́рт.

Level
2, 3

4. Complete the sentences using a suitable form of a verb of motion with prefixes that have temporal meaning **по-/про-/за-/с-**:

1. Нам так понравилась картина этого художника, что мы целый день по выставке.
2. Мама попросила сына за хлебом.
3. Старая собака немножко по парку и устала.
4. Прочитав эсэмэску (SMS, text-message), Марина взволнованно по комнате.

Level
2, 3

25.5 Using verbal aspect with verbs of motion with prefixes

The meanings of imperfective and perfective verbs of motion with prefixes correspond to the general concept of the verbal aspects: 📖 20. For example:

По субботам наш друг Виктор **приходил** (impf, a repeated action) к нам в гости и **приносил** (impf, a repeated action) вкусный торт. Но в прошлую субботу, первый раз за много лет, он заболел и не **пришёл** (pf, a single complete action).

Every Saturday Victor **used to come to visit us and bring** a nice cake. Last Saturday for the first time in many years he was ill and **did not come**.

Завтра мы **зайдём** (pf, a single complete action) к Виктору и **принесём** (pf, a single complete action) ему его любимый торт.

Tomorrow we **will call on** Victor and **will bring** him his favourite cake.

Additionally, in Russian the verbal aspect of the verbs of motion with prefixes can emphasise some very specific meanings: 📖 25.5.1–3.

25.5.1 Special meanings of the verbal aspect in the past tense: actions with reversed results

📖 20.4.3 and 20.5.2.

Level
3

All verbs of motion with prefixes can describe an action in which the result can be reversed. In the past tense, any imperfective verb of motion with a prefix can convey the idea that the action did take place in the past, but was reversed back to its original point. This meaning is similar to a description of a round trip in the past using a multidirectional verb of motion without a prefix. For example:

Example	Translation	Meaning (literal translation)
Он <i>и</i> ёздили в Москв <i>у</i> .	They went to Moscow.	They were in Moscow, but are not there now .
Он <i>и</i> приезжали в Москв <i>у</i> .	They came to Moscow (stayed there for a while and went back home).	
Мама водила ребёнка в шк <i>о</i> лу.	The mother took the child to school (and took him back home).	The child was taken/brought to school but is not there now .
Мама приводила ребёнка в шк <i>о</i> лу.	The mother brought the child to school (and brought him back home).	

A perfective verb of motion with a prefix can emphasise that the goal of the action was achieved in the past once, its result was not modified in any way and it is still relevant to the present.

Compare:

Imperfective	Perfective
Ваш друг заходил . (Your friend called on you, was here, but he is gone now.)	Ваш друг пришёл . (Your friend has arrived and is still here.)
Я знаю человека, который входил в комнату. (I know the person, who came into the room and left again.)	Я знаю человека, который вошёл в комнату. (I know the person who came into the room and is still here.)
Какой запах! Кто-нибудь приносил свежий кофе? (Such a nice smell! Did someone bring some fresh coffee? – There is no coffee here any more, but one can still smell it.)	Какой запах! Кто-нибудь принёс свежий кофе? (Such a nice smell! Did someone bring some fresh coffee?)

Level
2, 3

25.5.2 Use of the imperfective and perfective verbs of motion with an indication of time in the past tense

If, in the examples above, a speaker knows the precise duration of an action, time expressions are used thus:

- With the preposition **на** (for): **На сколько времени заходил** (impf) Ваш друг? (**How long** was your friend here (but he is not here any more)?) Мой друг **заходил на пару минут** (impf). (My friend **called on me, was here for a couple of minutes, but he is gone now.**) **На сколько времени зашёл** (impf) Ваш друг? (**How long** has your friend come here for (and will be staying)?) Мой друг **зашёл на пару минут**. (My friend **has arrived and will stay here for couple of minutes.**)

Note that in the examples above the imperfective verbs of motion describe an action in the past that lasted for the indicated period, but is over now. The perfective verbs of motion describe an action which has occurred in the past, but whose consequences would be felt in the future for the indicated period.

- The perfective verb followed by a time expression with the preposition **за** (within) is used to emphasise that the goal of the action was achieved within the indicated period: **За сколько времени они доехали до Москвы?** (**How long** did it take for them to reach Moscow?) **Они доехали до Москвы за восемь часов.** (They **reached** Moscow **within eight hours.**)
- In the past tense, the imperfective verb followed by a time expression with the preposition **за** (for) is used to describe ability/skills to achieve a goal within the indicated period. This construction is less frequent: **За сколько времени они обычно доезжали до Москвы?** (**How long** did it take for them to reach Moscow (usually)?) **Они доезжали до Москвы за восемь часов.** (They usually **reached** Moscow **within eight hours.**)

25.5.3 Special meanings of the verbal aspect in the past tense: negative sentences

In negative sentences both aspects are used to convey some additional information:

- In negative sentences, imperfective verbs emphasise that the action has not occurred: Виктор не приходил (impf)? (Has Victor come?) Нет, **не приходил** (impf). (No, he **has not**.) Почтальон **приносил** (impf) посылку? (Has the postman **brought** the parcel?) Нет, **не приносил**. (No, he **has not**.)
- The use of the perfective in the same context emphasises that an attempt was made to achieve the goal, but it was not a success: Извини, я **не пришёл** (pf). (I am sorry, I **could not make it**.) Почтальон **не принёс** (pf) посылку. (The postman **could not (was not able to) deliver** the parcel.)

25.5.4 Using the verbs of motion with prefixes in the future tense

Both imperfective verbs of motion with prefixes and unidirectional verbs of motion without prefixes are often used in popular speech to describe one's intentions for the future. This structure is equivalent to when an English verb in the present continuous tense is used to describe an action in the future (☞ also 24.5.5). For example:

Compare:

Они **уезжают** завтра домой.

They **are leaving** for home tomorrow.

Они **едут** завтра.

They **are going** home tomorrow.

If, in the examples above, a speaker knows the precise duration of an action, time expressions are used thus:

- With the preposition **на** (for). Both imperfective and perfective verbs are used to convey the idea of the start point of the journey/movement/stay in the future: **На сколько времени** приезжают/приедут Ваши родители? (**How long** will your parents be staying?)
- The perfective verb followed by a time expression with the preposition **за** (within) is used to emphasise that the goal of the action will be achieved within the indicated period: **За сколько времени** они **долетят** до Иркутска? (**How long** will it take for them to reach Irkutsk?) Они **долетят до** Иркутска **за шесть часов**. (They will have **reached** Irkutsk **within six hours**.)

Level
2, 3

25.6 Figurative meaning of verbs of motion with prefixes

Verbs of motion with prefixes form an essential part of many Russian idioms. Some examples are given below. All verbs in these examples can be used in both the imperfective and perfective verbal aspects and in all tenses.

Verbs of motion with the prefix **вы-**:

- **Выходить/выйти замуж** за + a noun/pronoun in the accusative case (to get married – for women only): Она **выходила замуж** три раза. (She **got married** three times.) Note, the verb **жениться** на + a noun/pronoun in the instrumental case is used to convey the same idea for a man: Он **только что женился**. (He **has just got married**.)

- **Выходить/выйти из себя** (to lose one's temper): Он **вышел из себя** и начал кричать. (He **lost his temper** and started shouting.)
- **Выводить/вывести (кого-либо) из себя** (to drive someone mad): Своим поведением она **выводит меня из себя**. (She drives me mad because of her behaviour.)
- **Выносить/вынести сор из избы** (to reveal unpleasant secrets to the public): На заседании парламентской комиссии было решено **не выносить сора из избы**. (At the meeting of the parliamentary committee they decided **not to go public**.)

Verbs of motion with the prefix **с-**:

- **Сходить/сойти с ума** (to go mad): Как ты можешь такие говорить! Ты **сошла с ума!** (How can you say such things! Have you **gone mad!**) The adjective сумасшедший (mad) derived from the verb is often used in popular speech.
- **Сводить/свести (кого-либо) с ума** (to drive someone mad, often out of love): «Твои глаза зелёные **свели меня с ума**» (Русский романс). (Your green eyes have driven me mad.)
- **Сводить/свести (с кем -либо) счёты** (to take revenge): В конце концов, мафия **свела с ним счёты**. (Finally, the Mafia has got him.)
- **Сводить/свести концы с концами** (to make ends meet): После роста инфляции многие семьи не могут **свести концы с концами**. (After inflation shot up a lot of families cannot make ends meet.)

Verbs of motion with the prefix **об-**:

- **Обводить/обвести (кого-либо) вокруг пальца** (to deceive/to cheat): Обвиняемый **обвёл вокруг пальца** следователей и судью. (The accused **deceived** the detectives and the judge.)
- **Обходить/обойти что-то** (to avoid something): В своём докладе он **обошёл все острые вопросы**. (In his paper, he avoided all difficult points.)

The verbs of motion **уходить/уйти** are used in the following idioms:

- **Поезд ушёл** (to be too late/to miss the boat): Извини, я не могу тебе помочь, **поезд ушёл**. (I am sorry, I cannot help you, it is too late.)
- **Уйти в себя** (to keep oneself to oneself): Она **ушла в себя** и перестала общаться с друзьями. (She **kept herself to herself** and stopped talking to her friends.)
- **Душа ушла в пятки** (to be scared): Моя **душа ушла в пятки** при одной мысли о встрече с новым начальником. (I **got scared** just thinking about a meeting with my new boss.)

The verbs of motion **проходить/пройти** (to take place) and **проводить/провести** (to conduct/to hold) are often used when talking about events and activities in the present, past and future tenses. For example:

- Конференция **прошла** очень успешно. (The conference **was** a success.) В Петербурге ежегодно **проходит** фестиваль «Белые ночи». (Every year in St Petersburg the festival White Nights **takes place**.)
- Популярная поп-группа **провела** благотворительный концерт. (The popular pop group **conducted** a charity concert.)

To describe a fast-going process the idioms of time with the verbs **проходить/пройти** (to pass); **пробегать/пробежать** (to pass); **пролетать/пролететь** (to pass) are used. For example:

- Вре́мя пройдёт/**пробежит/пролетит**. (The time **will fly** by.)
- Го́ды/дни/часы **пробегают /проходят/пролетают**. (The years/days/hours **are flying** by.) Вот и день **прошёл**. (The day is over.)

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Complete the sentences, choosing between the perfective and imperfective verbs of motion given in brackets:

1. «К вам (приходить/прийти) деловые партнёры. Они ждут Вас в кабинете», – сообщила секретарь своему начальнику.
2. Известная фотомодель (приезжать/приехать) в наш клуб всего на несколько часов. После встречи с поклонниками она уехала в Москву.
3. Как пахнет розами, но где же цветы? Наверное, кто-то (входить/войти) сюда с букетом.
4. Прошлым летом аспирант (прилетать/прилететь) в Иркутск на два дня.
5. Почтальон почему-то не (приносить/принести) мне посылку.
6. Я (уезжать/уехать) в командировку завтра.
7. Мы пригласили наших друзей (приезжать/приехать) к нам в гости на неделю.
8. Сколько коробок и чемоданов. Вы, что (переезжать/переехать)?
9. Наш друг всегда (заходить/зайти) к нам по субботам и (приносить/принести) торт. А сегодня он (приносить/принести) шампанское.

Level
2, 3

2. Translate into Russian, using verbs of motion in the figurative sense as appropriate:

1. When I think of the forthcoming operation, I get very scared.
2. My friend (f) got married three times.
3. They could not help us. It was too late.
4. The swindler easily defrauded the trustful people.
5. After the accident the patient kept himself to himself.

Level
2, 3

25.7 Prepositions used after verbs of motion and other verbs describing movement

25.7.1 Prepositions used after verbs of motion and other verbs describing a directed movement: **в, из; на, с; к** and **от**

The fourteen verbs of motion and any other verbs describing movement have something in common. All verbs that describe a single or repeated directed movement to a precise destination (movement to a point) commonly take the prepositions **на** (to) or **в** (to) and the noun in the accusative case: Бизнесмен **идёт в** банк. (The businessman **is going to** the bank.) Кот **прыгнул на** полку. (The cat **has jumped on to** a shelf.) Виктор **положил** словарь **в** портфель. (Victor **put** the dictionary **in** his brief case.)

If the verb describes a straightforward movement from a precise place (movement from a point), it usually takes the prepositions **из** (from) or **с** (from) and the noun

is in the genitive case: Бизнесмэн **идёт из** банка. (The businessman **is coming from** the bank.) Кот **прыгнул с** полки. (The cat **has jumped off** the shelf.) Виктор **вынул** словарь **из** портфеля. (Victor **took** a dictionary **out of** his briefcase.)

If the verb conveys the meaning of 'visiting someone', the preposition **к** (to) and the noun in the dative case is used after the verb: Я **еду к родителям**. (I **am visiting** my **parents**.)

If the verb conveys the meaning of 'coming from someone', the verb takes the preposition **от** (from) and the noun in the genitive case: Я **еду от родителей**. (I **am coming from** my **parents' (home)**.)

The preposition **к** can also mean *towards*. The preposition **от** (from) is used as the prepositional pair of **к** in this context: Мальчик **подшёл к** окну. (The boy **moved towards** the window.) Мальчик **отошёл от** окна. (The boy **moved away from** the window.)

The choice between **в** and **на** (to) and **из** and **с** (from) depends on the meaning of the noun. For **в** and **на**, see 6.3.1.1 and 10.2.1; for **из** and **с**, see 7.3.2.2.

Summary Table 25.VI

Где? Where? в банке (в + prepositional): in the bank	Куда? Where to? в банк (в + accusative): to the bank	Откуда? Where from? из банка (из + genitive): from the bank
Где? Where? на работе (на + prepositional): at work	Куда? Where to? на работу (в + accusative): to work	Откуда? Where from? с работы (с + genitive): from work
Где? Where? у друга/у окна (у + genitive): at a friend's place/ at a window	Куда? Where to? к другу/к окну (к + dative): to visit a friend/ towards the window	Откуда? Where from? от друга/от окна (от + genitive): from a friend/ from the window

25.7.2 Other prepositions used after verbs of motion and other verbs describing movement: **за, из-за, под, из-под, над, через, сквозь, по, вдоль, мимо, от and до**

The fourteen verbs of motion and other verbs that describe a single or repeated directed movement to a point and from a point take the following prepositions: **за, из-за, под, из-под, через, сквозь, вдоль, мимо, от and до**. Summary Table 25.VII below shows that the prepositions **за** and **из-за**; **под** and **из-под**, **до** and **от** form pairs and can be used to describe a directed movement.

Summary Table 25.VII

Где? Where? девочка за столом/ машина за углом (за + instrumental): the girl is at (behind) the table/the car is round the corner	Куда? Where to? сидеться за стол/ ехать за угол (за + accusative): to take a seat at (behind) the table/ to go round the corner	Откуда? Where from? вставать из-за стола/ выезжать из-за угла (из-за + genitive): to get up from the table/to come round the corner
--	---	--

Где? Where? кот под дивáном (под + instrumental): the cat is under the sofa	Кудá? Where to? лезть под дивáн (под + accusative): to get under the sofa	Откúда? Where from? вылезáть из-под дивáна (из-пóд + genitive): to get out from under the sofa
N/A	Кудá? Where to? дойтí до двéри (до + genitive): to reach as far as the door	Откúда? Where from? отойтí от двéри (от + genitive): to move away from the door

The prepositions **над**, **через**, **сквозь**, **вдоль**, **по** and **мимо** are also used to describe a single or repeated directed movement. They do not form pairs:

через (through/across) + accusative: перепрыгнуть **через барьер** (to jump over a barrier); перейти **через поле** (to cross a field)

сквозь (through) + accusative: пройти/проникнуть **сквозь стекло** (to come through the glass)

вдоль (along) + genitive: идти/гулять **вдоль берега** (to go/to stroll along the shore)

по (along/by) + dative: ехать **по проспекту** (to go along the avenue); плыть **по морю** (to sail on the sea); лететь **по небу** (to fly in the sky)

мимо (past) + genitive: пройти **мимо ларька** (to go past the kiosk)

над (above) + instrumental: пролететь **над озером** (to fly above the lake, unidirectional sense)

25.7.3 Prepositions used after verbs of motion and other verbs describing non-directed movement: **по**, **вокруг**, **над**

If the fourteen verbs of motion and any other verbs describe a non-directed movement, for example, 'wandering around' etc., the prepositions **по** and **вокруг** are usually used.

вокруг (around): чайки летают **вокруг корабля** (the seagulls are flying around a ship)

по (around): расстроенный человек без цели **бродил по городу** (an unhappy person was wandering around the city aimlessly)

над (above) + instrumental: пролететь **над озером** (to fly above the lake, unidirectional sense); кружить **над озером** (to circle above the lake)

The prepositions **по**, **над** and **под** can be used to describe both directed and undirected movement. ☞ above.

The verbs of motion or any other verb can indicate the location where an undirected movement takes place:

Где бéгают дéти?
Дéти бéгают в пáрке/на ўлице/
рýдом с дóмом.

Where are the children running?
The children are running about
in a park/on a street/next to a
house.

For the use of cases with the meaning of location, ☞ 7.3.2.1, 8.3, 9.3, 10.2.1.

25.7.4 Adverbs used after verbs of motion and other verbs describing movement

All verbs that describe straightforward movement to and from a precise destination are commonly used with adverbs that indicate movement. Summary Table 25.VIII lists adverbs of location and movement.

Summary Table 25.VIII

Meaning: location, no movement is involved	Meaning: moving towards	Meaning: moving from
Question word: Где? (where?)	Question word: Куда? (where to?)	Question word: Откуда? (where from?)
здесь/тут (here)	сюда (moving here)	отсюда (moving from here)
там (there)	туда (moving there)	оттуда (moving from there)
слева (on the left)	налево (moving to the left)	слева (moving from the left)
справа (on the right)	направо (moving to the right)	справа (moving from the right)
наверху (above)	наверх (moving up)	сверху (moving from the top)
внизу (below)	вниз (moving down)	снизу (moving from the bottom)

Level
2, 3

Упражнение

1. Insert the appropriate preposition:

- Подснежники с трудом пробивались ... замёрзшую землю.
- Мы гуляем ... парку.
- Виктор повесил куртку ... вешалку, поставил чемодан ... шкаф, положил деньги ... сейф и с удовольствием сел ... мягкое кресло.
- Выскочив ... угла, машина проехала ... дома и въехала ... открытые ворота.
- Незнакомец легко перепрыгнул ... забор, пробежал ... ограды и скрылся ... домом.

Level
2, 3

Обобщающее упражнение

2. Complete the text by using a verb of motion (listed below) in the required form. Add a suitable prefix to the verb as appropriate:

ездить, ехать, возить, идти, ходить, нести, плыть



Поездка в Петербург

- В прошлые выходные господин Смирнов в Петербург.
- Он туда своих родственников из Англии, которые в первый раз в Россию.
- Они решили в Петербург на ночном поезде.
- Сначала они до вокзала на маршрутке (private minibus).
- У здания вокзала они из автобуса, нашли нужную платформу и в вагон поезда.
- Поезд от платформы точно по расписанию.
- Гостям господина Смирнова понравился ночной поезд. Поезд до Петербурга всю ночь.
- Они хорошо выспались, а утром проводница в купе завтрак.

9. Пóезд в Петербúрг рано úтром. 10. С вокзала онé в гóстиницу в сáмом цéнтре гóрода. 11. Немнóжко отдохнóв, онé гулять по Нёвскому проспéкту – глáвной úлице гóрода. 12. Онé чéрез нёсколько мáленьких мóстиков, мéмо Казáнского собóра, в магазéн за сувенирами, и наконéц, до Дворцóвой плóщади, на котóрой нахóдится знаменéтый Эрмитáж. 13. Нёсколько раз онé вокрúг плóщади, на Дворцóвую нáбережную и решéли покатáться по Невé на теплохóде. 14. Онé купéли билéты на экскúрсию по рéкам и канáлам гóрода, сéли на теплохóд и вдоль нáбережной. 15. Как хорошó, что у них впередé цéлых два дня. Мóжно бúдет в нёсколько музéев, а ёсли остáнется врéмя, в Петергóф. 16. Рóдственникам господéна Смирнóва так понрáвился гóрод, что онé обязáтельно решéлисюдá ещё раз.

26 Participles

Level
2, 3

The participle (or verbal adjective) is a verbal form that combines characteristics of verb and adjective. Participles are most common in writing.

As with adjectives (👁️ 11), participles can have a long and a short form. In a sentence, long-form participles function like long-form adjectives and can qualify any noun in a sentence. They usually describe qualities linked to some activity: **летящий** (flying), **влюблённый** (someone in love), **потерявшийся** (someone/thing who got lost) etc. In Russian, the following types of long-form participles are frequently used: present imperfective active participle, past imperfective active participle, past perfective active participle, present imperfective passive participle and past perfective passive participle. The English equivalents of Russian long-form participles are as follows:

Russian long-form participle	English equivalent
present imperfective active: делающий ; говорящий	verbal form ending in <i>-ing</i> : doing ; speaking
past imperfective and perfective active: делавший ; говори́вший (impf); сделавший ; сказа́вший (pf)	verb in the past tense: (who) did/was doing/has done; spoke/was speaking/has spoken
present imperfective passive: описываемый ; производимый	passive verbal forms 'being done': 'being described', 'being produced'
past perfective passive: сделанный ; приготовленный ; выпитый	passive verbal forms 'done': done/made; cooked; drunk

Only passive participles can have a short form. A short-form participle is the predicate to the subject of a sentence. Short-form passive participles function like passive verbs (👁️ 21.3); they are translated into English using the passive verbal form (e.g. 'done'). The passive verbal form is connected to the subject of the sentence by **быть** (to be): 'is done/was done/has been done/had been done/will be done'. The short form can be used in the present, past and future: **Фильм снят**. (The film **is shot**.) **Фильм был снят**. (The film **was/has been shot**.) **Фильм будет снят**. (The film **will be shot**.)

Level
2, 3

26.1 The long-form participles

26.1.1 Grammatical characteristics of long-form participles

Long-form participles combine the grammatical characteristics of verbs and long-form adjectives. A participle takes tense, aspect and voice from the verb from which it is derived, and agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies. Long-form active participles decline like adjectives with a stem ending in **-ш/-щ**; long-form passive participles decline like adjectives with a hard stem (👁️ 11.1):

Essential verbal characteristics of long-form participles:

- **Tense:** present and past; participles do not have the future tense (for tenses and verb conjugation, 📖 17, 18).
- **Aspect:** perfective or imperfective (for verbal aspect, 📖 20). In the present tense, only imperfective participles can be used, because the perfective present tense of verbs does not exist in Russian. In the past tense perfective and imperfective participles are used.
- **Voice:** active and passive (for voice, 📖 21.3–4). Active participles can be formed from transitive and intransitive verbs. Passive participles can be formed only from transitive verbs (for transitive and intransitive verbs, 📖 21.1–2).

Essential adjectival characteristics of long-form participles:

- **Gender:** masculine, feminine or neuter (for genders, 📖 2.3)
- **Number:** singular or plural (for number, 📖 3)
- **Case:** all six cases (for cases, 📖 4–10)

26.1.2 Formation of long-form participles

Level 2, 3

26.1.2.1 Formation of present active participles

Both transitive and intransitive verbs can form active participles. However, only imperfective participles can be formed in the present tense.

To form the present active participle:

- Take the present tense, 3rd person plural form of the verb, for example *делают* (they do), *идут* (they go), *учат* (they study), *курят* (they smoke).
- Drop the ending: *дела-*, *ид-*, *уч-*, *кур-*.
- Add the suffix **-ущ/-ющ** for first-conjugation verbs. The suffix **-ущ** is used if the present tense stem ends in a consonant: *идущ-*. The suffix **-ющ** is used if the present tense stem ends in a vowel: *делающ-*. For verb conjugations, 📖 17.1–2.
- Add the suffix **-ащ/-ящ** for second-conjugation verbs. The suffix **-ащ** is used if the present tense stem ends in any consonant affected by spelling rule 3: *учащ-* (for spelling rule 1, 📖 1.3.3). The suffix **-ящ** is used if the present tense stem ends in any other consonant or in a vowel: *куращ-*. Note, a second-conjugation verb stem never ends with a vowel.
- Add the appropriate adjective ending; a participle must agree in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies.
- If a participle is formed from a reflexive verb, the particle **-ся** is added to the ending of the participle, after either a consonant or a vowel; for example, *смеющийся мальчик* (laughing boy), *улыбающаяся девочка* (smiling girl).

Level 2, 3

26.1.2.2 Formation of past active participles

Both transitive and intransitive verbs can form active participles. Both perfective and imperfective participles can be formed in the past tense.

To form the past active participle:

- Take the masculine form of the past tense verb; for example, *работал* (he worked). Some irregular verbs in the masculine past tense do not have the suffix **-л**: *принёс* (brought).
- Drop the suffix **-л** to get the appropriate stem: *работа-*. Drop nothing, if the masculine past tense does not have **-л**: *принёс-*.

- Add the suffix **-вш/-ш**. The suffix **-вш** is used if the stem ends in a vowel: рабó**т**ав**ш**-. The suffix **-ш** is used if the stem ends in a consonant: принё**с**ш-.
- Add the appropriate adjective ending; a participle must agree in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies.
- If a participle is formed from a reflexive verb, the particle **-ся** is added to the ending of a participle, after either a consonant or a vowel. For example, смея**в**ши**й**ся ма́льчик (boy who laughed), улыба́в**ш**ая**с**я де́вочка (girl who smiled).

Level
2, 3

26.1.2.3 Formation of present passive participles

Only transitive verbs can form passive participles. Therefore, reflexive verbs, some verbs of motion and any other intransitive verbs do not have passive participles. In the present tense, only imperfective participles are used.

To form the present passive participle:

- Take the present-tense, 1st person plural form of the verb; for example, отпра**в**ля**ем** (we send), нес**ём** (we carry).
- Drop the ending: отпра**в**ля**я**-, нес**я**-.
- Add the suffix **-ем** for first-conjugation verbs: отпра**в**ля**ем**-. If the 1st person plural ends in **-ём** (нес**ём**, вез**ём**) add the suffix **-ом**.
- Add the suffix **-им** for second-conjugation verbs: ви**д**им-.
- Add the appropriate adjective ending. A participle must agree in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies.

Exceptions

Note the following irregularity in the present passive participles:

- If a participle is formed from an infinitive that ends with **-авать**, keep the suffix **-ава-** in a participle: дава́ть (to give) – дава́**е**мый (-ая, -ое, -ые).

Some transitive verbs do not have a present passive participle:

- Some monosyllabic verbs: пить (to drink); есть (to eat); быть (to be); бить (to beat), знать (to know) etc.
- Some first-conjugation verbs; for example, писа́ть (to write).
- Many second-conjugation verbs without prefixes: гото́вить (to cook, to prepare); держа́ть (to hold); плати́ть (to pay); смотре́ть (to watch, to look after); ста́вить (to put); стро́ить (to build) etc.

Present passive participles are mainly used in formal documents or scientific research; for example, С това́ров, **декларир**уемых на границе, не **в**зима́ется по́шлина. (The tax is not levied on goods that **are declared** at customs.) Present passive participles are rare in spoken language unless they have changes to their function and are used as adjectives (👉 26.1.3.2).

26.1.2.4 Formation of past passive participles

Only perfective participles are used in the past tense. They are formed from perfective transitive verbs.

To form the past passive participle:

- Use the stem of the past tense masculine form; for example, сде́лал (did), изучи́л (studied), унёс (took away), изогну́л (bend), выпил (drunk). Some irregular verbs in the masculine past tense do not have the suffix **-л**: унёс (took away).

- Drop the suffix **-л**: *сдела-*, *изучи-*, *унёс*, *изогну-*, *выпи-*. Drop nothing, if the masculine past tense does not have **-л**: *унёс*-
- Add the suffix **-нн** if the stem ends with a vowel other than **и**: *сделанн-*.
- Add the suffix **-енн** if the stem ends with the vowel **и** or a consonant and the stress does not fall on the suffix: *изученн-*.
- Add the suffix **-ённ** if the stem ends with the vowel **и** or a consonant and the stress falls on the suffix: *унесённ-*. See comments below.
- Add the suffix **-т** if the stem ends with **-ну**, **-ер** or **-оло-**: *изогну-*.
- Most monosyllabic verbs, with and without prefixes, will also have the suffix **-т**: *выпит-* (*выпит-* is formed from *пить-выпить*).
- Add the appropriate adjective ending. A participle must agree in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies.

Comments:

The past participle formation of verbs ending in **-ить** can be complicated by the following consonant changes in the stem:

Consonant changes	Example	
	Verb	Participle
б–бл в–вл м–мл п–пл ф–фл	погубить (to destroy) приготовить (to cook/prepare) сломить (to break) затопить (to flood) разграфить (to rule paper)	погубленный приготовленный сло́мленный зато́пленный разграфлённый
т–ч т–щ	встретить (to meet) возвратить (to return)	встреченный возвращённый
д–жд д–ж	возбудить (to excite) разбудить (to wake up)	возбуждённый разбужженный
с–ш	допросить (to interrogate)	допро́шенный
ст–щ	подсластить (to sweeten)	подслащённый
з–ж	преобразить (to transform)	преображённый

Level
2, 3

26.1.3 Using the long-form participles

26.1.3.1 Replacement of a relative clause

In writing, constructions with a long-form participle are frequently used to replace a relative clause introduced by the relative pronoun **ко́торый** (which, that, who, whom). This can only be done if **ко́торый** is used in the nominative or accusative cases.

For relative clauses introduced by **ко́торый**,  14.8.1.

To replace a relative clause by a construction using a long-form participle:

- Omit **ко́торый** (which, that, who, whom) and the predicate in the relative clause.
- Replace **ко́торый** used in the nominative case, and the predicate (a verb), with the appropriate active participle. The participle is based on the verb it replaces.
- Replace **ко́торый** used in the accusative case, and the predicate (a verb), with the appropriate passive participle. The participle is based on the verb it replaces.

- The participle must agree in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies.
- The standard position of the participle in a sentence is after the noun it qualifies.
- The participle and the noun it qualifies are separated by a comma.

For example:

<p>Я знаю пожилого мужчину, который (nominative) читает газету и курит трубку (a relative clause introduced by который).</p> <p>Я знаю пожилого мужчину, читающего (active participle) газету и курящего (active participle) трубку.</p> <p>Около стола гуляла курочка, которую (accusative) привязали за ногу (a relative clause introduced by который).</p> <p>Около стола гуляла привязанная (passive participle) за ногу курочка. (Толстой)</p>	<p>I know the old man who is reading the newspaper and smoking a pipe.</p> <p>I know the old man reading the newspaper and smoking a pipe.</p> <p>A hen which they had tied by its leg, was wandering around near a table.</p> <p>A hen, tied by its leg, was wandering around near a table.</p>
---	--

Level
2, 3

26.1.3.2 Other uses and functions of long-form participles

A participle can function:

- As a noun; for example, учащиеся (pupils; original participle 'studying').
Учащиеся сдают экзамены. (The pupils are sitting their exams.)
- As an adjective; for example, любимый (favourite, original participle 'being loved').
Хоккей – любимый вид спорта многих россиян. (Ice hockey is the favourite sport of many Russians.)

26.2 Short-form participles

Level
2, 3

26.2.1 Formation and essential characteristics of the short-form participles

Only passive participles have a short-form participle. The short-form participle is formed by dropping the ending of the long-form participle. If the long-form participle has two letters **н** in the suffix, one **н** must also be dropped; for example, сделанный (long form) – сделан (short form); унесённый (long form) – унесён (short form); выпитый (long form) – выпит (short-form).

The short-form participle retains all the verbal characteristics of the long-form participle, such as tense, aspect and voice (☞ 26.1.1). However, unlike the long-form participle, the short-form participle has the adjectival characteristics of a short-form adjective (for short-form adjectives, ☞ 12.5). This means that a short-form participle has number and gender, but cannot express case; for example, сделан (done; masculine singular); сделана (done; feminine singular); сделано (done; neuter singular); сделаны (done; plural): Работа **сделана**. (The work is done.)

26.2.2 Using short-form participles

In a sentence, the short-form participle functions as a predicative passive verb. It must agree with the subject of the sentence in number and gender. The participle is connected to the subject of the sentence by the verbal link – **быть** (to be). In the

Russian present tense, **быть** (to be) is omitted: Выставка **открыта**. (The exhibition **is opened**.) In the past and future tenses, **быть** (to be) is present in sentences. In the past tense, a short-form participle must agree with **быть** in number and gender: Выставка **была открыта**. (The exhibition **was opened**.) In the future tense, a short-form participle must agree with **быть** in person and number: Выставки **будут открыты**. (The exhibitions **will be opened**.)

The imperfective past and present short-form participles are used extremely rarely: Целебные источники всегда **были почитаемы** (passive present participle) в народе. (Healing springs **were** always **worshipped** by ordinary people.) Где это **видано** (impf. passive past participle)? Где это **слыхано** (impf. passive past participle)? (Драгунский). (Where **was** it **heard** about? Where **was** it **seen**?)

Conversely, the perfective past short-form participles are frequently used in both written and spoken Russian: Чёрным по белому **написано**. (It **is written** in black and white.) Извините, этот столик **занят**? (Excuse me, is this table occupied?)

☞ Both the long and short forms of participles can be translated into English in a similar way by using a passive verbal form, for example 'done', except that the long form implies 'which was':

На столе лежит книга, написанная (long-form participle) Толстым.	The book, which was written by Tolstoy, is (lying) on the table.
Книга написана (short-form participle) Толстым.	The book is written by Tolstoy.

However, long and short forms of the past passive participle function in the sentence in two different ways. The long form of the past passive participle functions as an adjective that is not the core part of the sentence and that could be omitted without destroying the sentence. The short form of the past passive participle functions as a predicate: it is the core part of the sentence and cannot be omitted without destroying the sentence.

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Give the infinitive form of the verb from which these participles are formed:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. написанный | 6. взявший |
| 2. несущий | 7. едущий |
| 3. привыкший | 8. унесённый |
| 4. танцующий | 9. купленный |
| 5. живущий | 10. выпитый |

Level
2, 3

2. A. Form the active present participle of the following verbs:

- | | |
|-----------|-----------------|
| 1. пить | 4. искать |
| 2. беречь | 5. смеяться |
| 3. класть | 6. использовать |

B. Form the active past participle of the following verbs:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. прийти | 4. встречаться |
| 2. съесть | 5. присесть |
| 3. интересоваться | 6. отдохнуть |

Level
2, 3

3. A. Form the passive present participle of the following verbs:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------|
| 1. экспортировать | 3. изучать |
| 2. любить | 4. нести |

B. Form the passive past participle of the following verbs:

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. сказа́ть | 4. расста́вить |
| 2. изучи́ть | 5. запрети́ть |
| 3. пригласи́ть | 6. откры́ть |

Level 2, 3 4. Replace the participles with relative clauses introduced by **ко́торый**. Rephrase the sentence as appropriate:

1. Не ве́рьте дана́йцам да́ры принося́щим (idiom: Beware of Greeks bearing gifts).
2. Тури́сты купи́ли все понра́вившиеся им сувени́ры.
3. Лю́ди, прожи́вшие всю жизнь в дере́вне, не лю́бят городско́й суе́ты.
4. При Ста́лине десятки тысяч несправедли́во осужде́нных и пригово́ренных к раз́ным сро́кам сове́тских люде́й, пребыва́ли наказа́ние в ГУЛА́ге.
5. Кни́ги, напи́санные В. Пеле́виным и переведе́нные на мно́гие язы́ки ми́ра, по́льзуются большо́й популя́рностью.
6. Мы купи́ли жаропонижа́ющие таблётки.

Level 2, 3 5. Replace the relative clauses introduced by **ко́торый** by constructions with participles:

1. Иностран́ные студе́нты, кото́рые приезжа́ют из раз́ных стран, должны́ сдать экза́мен по ру́сскому язы́ку.
2. Мы нашли́ докла́д, кото́рый потеря́л рассе́янный профе́ссор.
3. Тури́сты купа́ются в горя́чих исто́чниках, кото́рые никогда́ не замерза́ют.
4. Па́пку, кото́рую оста́вил на сто́лике пассажи́р, переда́ли в «Бюро́ находок».
5. Мы рабо́таем в компáнии, кото́рую основа́л изве́стный бизне́сме́н 10 лет наза́д.
6. Нача́лось восстано́вление зда́ний, кото́рые разру́шил урага́н.

Level 2, 3 6. Choose between the short and long form of the participles given in brackets. Put the participle in the correct form:

1. Мы прочита́ли статью́ (опублико́ванный/опублико́ван) на са́йте.
 2. Иссле́дователь (заинтересо́ванный/заинтересо́ван) в получе́нии то́чных результа́тов.
 3. Отдыха́ющие (разочаро́ванный/разочаро́ван) кру́йзом.
 4. Нам привезли́ (отремонти́рованный/отремонти́рован) компью́тер.
 5. Ви́ктор съел пиро́жок (ку́пленный/ку́плен) в ки́оске.
-

27 Gerunds

Level
2, 3

The gerund (or verbal adverb) is an unchangeable verbal form that combines characteristics of verbs and adverbs. Gerunds are common in writing. In Russian, there are only two types of gerund: imperfective and perfective, formed from imperfective and perfective verbs respectively (ИЗ 20). The Russian imperfective gerund is the equivalent of the English verbal form in *-ing*: *делаю* (**doing**), *работая* (**working**). The perfective gerund is the equivalent of the English verbal form ‘*having done*’: *написа́в* (**having written**); *отпра́вив* (**having sent**).

In Russian, gerunds can be used only in sentences with **one subject and more than one verb**. In this type of sentence, the verb always describes the main action. Imperfective gerunds can clarify a background action/actions that occur at the same time as the main action. Perfective gerunds can clarify an action/actions that occurred before the main action:

Слу́шая (impf gerund) му́зыку и гро́мко
разговáривая (impf gerund), студéнты
(subject) гото́вят (principal action described
by the verb) у́жин.

While listening to music and
chatting loudly, the students
are preparing dinner.

Пло́тно по́ужинав (pf gerund), тури́сты
(subject) пошли́ (principal action described
by the verb) в но́чной клуб.

Having had a big meal, the
tourists went to a nightclub.

Level
2, 3

27.1 Essential characteristics of gerunds

All gerunds take their aspect from the verbs from which they are derived. However, gerunds have neither tense nor the voice. Like adverbs, gerunds are unchangeable and can clarify the time, place and manner in which the main action is carried out.

Level
2, 3

27.1.1 Gerund formation

27.1.1.1 Imperfective gerund formation

To form the imperfective gerund:

- Take the present tense, 3rd person plural form of the verb; for example, *делают* (they do), *молчат* (they study), *говорят* (to speak).
- Drop the ending: *дела-*; *молч-*; *говор-*.
- Add the gerund suffix **-а** after consonants affected by spelling rule 3 (ИЗ 1.3.3); for example, *молча*.
- Add the gerund suffix **-я** after any other vowels or consonants: *делаю*, *говоря*.
- If the gerund is formed from a reflexive verb, add **-сь** after the gerund suffix: *смеяться* (to laugh) – *смеясь*; *заниматься* (to be occupied) – *занимаясь*.

Exceptions

Note the following irregularities in the formation of the imperfective gerund:

- If a verb's imperfective infinitive ends with **-авать** keep the suffix **-ава-** in the imperfective gerund: **давать** (to give) – **давая**; **продавать** (to sell) – **продавая**.
- The verb **быть** (to be) forms an irregular imperfective gerund: **будучи** (being)
- In folklore, poetry and popular speech some imperfective verbs retain old forms with the suffix **-учи/-ючи**: **играючи** (playing); **припеваючи** (singing; sense is 'living in clover'); **жалёючи** (feeling sorry for); **идучи** (going): **Они живут припеваючи**. (They are **living in clover**.)

Some verbs do not have an imperfective gerund:

- Many monosyllabic verbs: **пить** (to drink); **есть** (to eat); **петь** (to sing).
- Verbs ending with **-чь**: **мочь** (to be able to); **печь** (to bake); **беречь** (to take care of); **жечь** (to burn).
- Verbs ending with **-нуть**: **гаснуть** (to go out); **тонуть** (to drown).
- Verbs ending with **-ереть**: **тереть** (to rub/to grate).
- Verbs with **с-ш, х-ш, з-ж** stem consonant changes: **писать** – **пишú** (to write), **пахать** – **пахú** (to plough); **вязать** (to knit/to tie) – **вязú**.
- Some verbs of motion: **ехать** (to go); **бежать** (to run); **лететь** (to fly); **гнать** (to drive).

Level
2, 3

27.1.1.2 Perfective gerund formation

To form the perfective gerund:

- Take the perfective infinitive; for example, **сделать** (to do).
- Drop the ending **-ть**: **сдела-**
- Add the imperfective gerund suffix **-в**: **сделав** (having done).
- To form the perfective gerund from reflexive verbs, drop the ending **-ться** and add the suffix **-вшись**: **засмеяться** (to laugh) – **засмеявшись** (having laughed).

Exceptions

Note the following irregularities in the perfective gerund:

- If a perfective gerund is formed from a perfective infinitive that ends with **-ти**, it has the suffix **-я**: **доставить** (to deliver) – **доставя** (having delivered); **унести** (to take away) – **унеся** (having taking away) etc. Unlike the other perfective gerunds, gerunds formed from perfective infinitives ending in **-ти**, follow the rules of formation of imperfective gerunds (☞ 27.1.1.1). They are formed from the future perfective stems and not from the past tense stems. Compare: **идти** (to go) – **идут** (3rd person plural present) – **-ид-** (present tense stem) – **идя** (imperfective gerund); **зайти** (to call on) – **зайдут** (3rd person plural future perfective) – **-зайд-** (future perfective stem) – **зайдя** (perfective gerund).
- If a perfective gerund is formed from a perfective infinitive that ends with **-сти, -чь** or **-зть**, it has the prefix **-ши**: **вырасти** – **выросши**, **зацвести** – **зацвётши**, **спечь** – **спékши**. Formation of these gerunds may be complicated by various internal changes in the stem.

Level
2, 3

27.2 Using the gerund

27.2.1 Using the imperfective gerund

The imperfective gerund can be used **only in a sentence with one subject** and more than one verb and where all actions occur simultaneously. Imperfective gerunds usually describe background action/actions. Imperfective gerunds are frequently used to replace:

- A subordinate clause of time introduced by conjunctions **когда** (when); **пока** (while/meanwhile); **в то время как** (when/meanwhile); **так как** (since/because); **потому что** (because). When replacing a subordinate clause by a gerund, the conjunction is omitted:

Complex sentence with subordinate clause	Sentence with gerund
Когда он обедал (subordinate clause), он слушал музыку. (While he was having his lunch, he was listening to music.)	Обедая (impf gerund), он слушал музыку. (While having lunch , he was listening to music.)

- One of multiple verbs in a simple sentence with one subject. Often, in a sentence with multiple verbs, the choice of principal verb depends on the speaker's interpretation:

Студенты отдыхают (verb), развлекаются (verb), и танцуют (verb). (The students relax, have fun and dance.)	Студенты отдыхают (principal verb), развлекаясь и танцую (gerunds). (The students relax, having fun and dancing .)	Студенты развлекаются (principal verb), отдыхая и танцую (gerunds). (The students have fun, relaxing and dancing .)
---	---	--

The gerund is an unchangeable verbal form. Therefore, in a sentence, it is the principal verb which expresses the idea of present, past or future:

Present	Past	Future
Работая (gerund) в банке, Мария обслуживает русских клиентов. (Working in the bank, Maria is serving/serves Russian customers.)	Работая (gerund) в банке, Мария обслуживала русских клиентов. (Working in the bank, Maria was serving/served Russian customers.)	Работая (gerund) в банке, Мария будет обслуживать русских клиентов. (Working in the bank, Maria will be serving/will serve Russian customers.)

27.2.2 Using the perfective gerund

The perfective gerund can be used in a sentence **with one subject** and more than one verb, where all actions occur as a sequence of events. The perfective gerund usually describes the action/actions that occur before the principal event.

Perfective gerunds are frequently used to replace a subordinate clause introduced by conjunctions **когда/как только** (when/immediately when); **после того как**

(after); **до того как** (before); **сначала ... потом ...** (at first ... then ...), **так как** (because of):

Complex sentence with subordinate clause	Sentence with gerund
Когда он пообедал (subordinate clause), он вымыл посуду. (When he had had his lunch , he washed the dishes.)	Пообедав (pf gerund), он вымыл посуду. (Having had his lunch, he washed the dishes.)

👁 When replacing a subordinate clause by the gerund, the following changes to the structure of the sentence need to be made:

- Drop the conjunction that introduces the subordinate clause.
- Drop the subject of the main clause, if applicable.
- The perfective gerund/gerunds replace the verb/verbs that describe the first action/actions in the sequence of action/s.
- The gerund usually opens the rephrased sentence, although it can appear after a time or location description.

For example:

Complex sentence with subordinate clause	Sentence with gerund
Когда (conjunction) Виктория приготовила обед и вымыла посуду, она (subject of main clause) позвонила подруге. (When Victoria had cooked the dinner and washed up the dishes, she called her friend.)	Приготовив обед и вымыв посуду, Виктория позвонила подруге. (Having cooked the dinner and washed up the dishes, Victoria called her friend.)

The gerund is an unchangeable verbal form. Therefore, in a sentence, it is the principal verb that expresses the idea of present, past or future.

Present	Past	Future
Отправив сообщение, Виктор звонит другу. (Having sent an e-mail, Victor rings his friend.)	Отправив сообщение, Виктор позвонил другу. (Having sent an e-mail, Victor rang his friend.)	Отправив сообщение, Виктор позвонит другу. (Having sent an e-mail, Victor will ring his friend.)

27.3 Use of gerunds in idioms; as prepositions; adverbs that are derived from gerunds

In Russian, some gerunds have become essential parts of idioms. For example:

- работать **спустя рукава** – to work in a slipshod manner
- трудиться/работать **не покладая рук** – to work tirelessly (literally: to work without giving one's hands a rest)
- сидеть **сложá руки** – to sit doing nothing (twiddling one's thumbs)
- уйти несолона **нахлебáвшись** – to leave without achieving the goal (literally: to leave having had an unsalted meal)

- нести́сь **сломя́** го́лову – to run too fast (literally: to run risking breaking one's head)
- (де́лать что́-либо) **игра́ючи** – to be at ease
- откровенно́ **говоря́** – frankly speaking

Some frequently occurring prepositions are derived from gerunds. For example:

- спустя́ – after/later; два́дцать лет **спустя́** (twenty years later)
- благода́ря – thanks to/because of, followed by the dative case: **благода́ря** его́ самоотве́ренным де́йстви́ям (thanks to his selfless actions)
- включа́я – including, followed by the accusative case: **все, включа́я** президе́нта (everyone, including the president)
- исключа́я – excluding, followed by the accusative case: **все, исключа́я** президе́нта (everyone, excluding the president)

Some gerunds have similar meanings to adverbs ending in **-юще**. These adverbs are formed from the present active participles.

- умоля́я (pleading for) – умоля́юще: смотре́ть умоля́юще (to look with pleading in one's eyes)
- ожида́я (expecting) – ожида́юще: смотре́ть ожида́юще (to look with expectation in one's eyes)
- негоду́я (to be indignant) – негоду́юще: крича́ть негоду́юще (to shout with indignation)

Упражнения

Level
2, 3

1. **A.** Give the infinitive forms of the verbs from which these gerunds are formed.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. зако́нчив | 6. бо́ясь |
| 2. существу́я | 7. дава́я |
| 3. интересу́ясь | 8. переда́в |
| 4. попроща́вшись | 9. бу́дучи |
| 5. вы́росши | 10. уне́ся |

B. Form the gerunds of the following verbs.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. прии́ти | 6. иска́ть |
| 2. пога́снуть | 7. улы́бнутьс́я |
| 3. бра́ть | 8. най́ти |
| 4. рисова́ть | 9. жи́ть |
| 5. зацвеси́ть | 10. спече́ть |

Level
2, 3

2. **A.** Replace the gerunds in the following sentences with the appropriate verbs. Rephrase the sentences if appropriate:

- «Блестя́ на со́лнце, снег лежи́т». (Пу́шкин)
- Учёные бу́дут рабо́тать над но́вой вакци́ной, испо́льзуя специа́льное обо́рудование.
- «Он про́жил в Пари́же четы́ре го́да, рабо́тая с утра́ до ве́чера, почти́ ничего́ не чита́я и ниче́м о́собенным не интересу́ясь». (Бу́нин)
- В 1994-м году́, прожи́в мно́го лет в Аме́рике, А. Солже́ницын верну́лся на ро́дину.
- Приди́я домо́й, она́ тут же включа́ила компью́тер и прове́рила свои́ сообще́ния.
- Официа́нт оступи́лся и упáл, не донес́я подно́с до на́шего сто́лика.
- Услы́шав печальны́е но́вости о боле́зни де́душки, семья́ пригото́вилась к ху́дшему.

B. Replace the verbs in bold by gerunds. Rephrase the sentences if appropriate:

1. Дети **бегают** по двору́, они игра́ют и шумя́т.
2. Когда́ наш гость рассказывал о своём путеше́ствии, он **шутил** и **показывал** смешные фотогра́фии.
3. Когда́ мы **поднима́лись** на холм, мы наслажда́лись прекра́сным ви́дом го́рода.
4. Урага́ны нано́сят большо́й уще́рб, та́к как они́ **разруша́ют** дома́, **лома́ют** дере́вья, **перевора́чивают** маши́ны и **оставля́ют** жителе́й без электр́чества.
5. «Когда́ я **верну́сь**, я пойду́ в тот единственны́й дом ...». (Га́лич)
6. «Андре́й Андре́евич Си́доров **получи́л** в насле́дство четы́ре ты́сячи рубле́й и реши́л откры́ть на эти́ де́ньги кни́жный магази́н». (Че́хов)
7. Иностран́ные тури́сты сна́чала **заполни́ли** тамо́женные декла́рации, пото́м **прошли́** па́спортный контро́ль и пошли́ получа́ть бага́ж.
8. Когда́ Пётр **зако́нчит** универси́тет, он бу́дет иска́ть рабо́ту за гра́ницей.

Level
3

3. Replace the phrases in bold by suitable idioms that use a gerund.

1. Он был настоя́щим трудого́ликом и не мог **сиде́ть без де́ла**.
2. Опа́здывая на по́езд, они́ **с огро́мной ско́ростью бежа́ли по** перрону́, раста́лкивая пасса́жиров и перепры́гивая че́рез чемода́ны.
3. В то вре́мя, когда́ студе́нт писа́л диссертаци́ю, он **рабо́тал без выходны́х**.
4. Должно́ же мне хоть раз повезти́! Я **не теря́ю наде́жды** ...

Level
2, 3

Обобща́ющее упражне́ние

4. Replace the gerunds in the following sentences with verbs. Rephrase the sentences if appropriate:



Господи́н Смирно́в рабо́тает над но́вым прое́ктом

1. Господи́н Смирно́в рабо́тает не покла́дая рук, без выходны́х.
2. Занима́ясь но́вым прое́ктом, он в то же са́мое вре́мя пи́шет отче́т о сво́ей рабо́те.
3. У него́ нет вре́мени сиде́ть, сложа́ ру́ки.
4. Откровенно́ говоря́, у него́ сейча́с нет вре́мени да́же на его́ люби́мые кроссво́рды.
5. Наприме́р, вчера́ господи́н Смирно́в встав ра́но, приня́в холо́дный душ, оде́вшись и вы́пив ча́шку ча́я, побежа́л к сво́ей маши́не.
6. Сев в маши́ну и вклю́чив мото́р, он заме́тил, что в ба́ке нет бензи́на. Просто́ кошма́р!
7. Оста́вив маши́ну во дворе́, он побежа́л на сто́янку такси́.
8. Добра́вшись, наконце́ц, до о́фиса, сев за свой стол и прове́рив все электро́нные сообще́ния (e-mails), он при́нялся за де́ло.
9. Он рабо́тал усер́дно, сердя́сь ка́ждый раз, когда́ ему́ приходи́лось отве́чать на вопро́сы колле́г.
10. В два часа́, на́спех перекусив в кафе́ «Ёлки-па́лки», он верну́лся на рабо́ту.
11. Господи́н Смирно́в писа́л отче́т, ду́мая о прое́кте и оче́нь беспоко́ясь, что не успе́ет зако́нчить рабо́ту в срок. И та́к ка́ждый де́нь! Что за жизнь!

28 Prepositions

Prepositions clarify the various relationships between a noun, pronoun or a noun phrase and other words in a sentence. Prepositions are mainly used when talking about time, location, start and end points of movement, when indicating ownership, reasons and consequences of an action. Prepositions play an important role in governing nouns or pronouns (see noun declension (13) 4, see pronoun declension (13) 14). Some prepositions can be used in several cases and their use depends on the context.

👁 Prepositions in Russian and English rarely match. The examples below show the use/absence of prepositions in the two languages:

На ужин мы купили бутылку вина́.	For dinner, we bought a bottle of wine.
Мы идём на лекцию.	We are going to the lecture.
Внук пишет письмо бабушке.	The grandchild is writing a letter to his grandmother.

Prepositions can be divided into two groups according to their origin:

- **Primary** prepositions that are not derived from other words.
- **Secondary** prepositions that are derived from adverbs, nouns, verbs or gerunds.

Level
1, 2

28.1 Primary prepositions

Primary prepositions form the largest and most frequently used group of prepositions. Most primary prepositions consist of just one letter or syllable: **к, у, на, про**. A few are formed by using two prepositions joined together with a hyphen: **из-за, из-под**. Many primary prepositions can appear with more than one case. The use and meaning of prepositions depends on the context. Summary Table 28.1 gives the most common primary prepositions, along with the cases with which the preposition can be used and a translation. The chapters in this book on cases all have sections on prepositions. Numbers in brackets indicate where information can be found on using each preposition.

Summary Table 28.1: Primary prepositions

Preposition's meaning	Cases with which the preposition can be used				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
without		без (7.3)			
in/into/to/at/on	в (6.3)				в (10.2, 10.3)
on/on to/to/at/for/by	на (6.3)				на (10.2, 10.3, 10.3.2)

Preposition's meaning	Cases with which the preposition can be used				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
for		для (7.3)			
up to/to/until		до (7.3)			
for/behind/beyond/ during/in order to/at	за (6.3)			за (9.3)	
out of/from		из (7.3)			
except/besides		кро́ме (7.3)			
towards/ <i>no translation; used in the construction 'visiting a friend'</i>			к (8.3)		
between				ме́жду (9.3)	
above				над (9.3)	
about/against	о (6.3)				о (10.3.2)
from/against		от (7.3)			
in front of/before				пе́ред (9.3)	
under/underneath	под (6.3)			под (9.3)	
up to/along/ around/on/by	по (6.3)		по (8.3)		
in the time of					при (10.3.1)
about	про (6.3)				
for the sake of		ра́ди (7.3)			
from/with		с (7.3)		с (9.3)	
through	сквозь (6.3)				
at/at one's place/ <i>no translation; used in the possessive construction</i>		у (7.3)			
across/over/ through/within/ every other (day) /by some means	че́рез (6.3)				
from behind/ beyond/because of		из-за (7.3)			

Preposition's meaning	Cases with which the preposition can be used				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
from under/ <i>no translation; used to indicate purpose of container</i>		из-под (7.3)			
against		прóтив (7.3)			
from ... to		с ... до (7.3)			
next to				рýдом с (9.3)	

Level
2, 3

28.2 Secondary prepositions

Secondary prepositions are derived from adverbs, nouns, verbs or gerunds. The secondary preposition looks identical to the word from which the preposition is derived, but has a different function. For example:

Наш дом совсём ужé **блízко** (adverb),
мы почтí дошли.

Наш дом нахóдится **блízко от**
(preposition) рекí.

Дирéктор óчень серди́лся, **исключáя**
(gerund) ученикá из школý.

Все нáши гóсти, **исключáя**
(preposition, takes the genitive case)
детéй, сидéли за столóм.

Our home is **very near**;
we are almost there.

Our home **is near by** the river.

The head-teacher was furious
whilst he was excluding the
pupil from the school.

All our guests, except the
children, were sitting at the
table.

Secondary prepositions are common in writing. Unlike primary prepositions, secondary prepositions are usually used with one particular case. Secondary prepositions may consist of only one word: **спустя́** (after), **впередí** (in front of). They can also appear in a compound form accompanied by a primary preposition: **далеко́ от** (far away from), **несмотря́ на** (despite) etc. Summary Table 28.II gives an overview of the most common secondary prepositions. The table indicates the cases with which the prepositions can be used and provides a translation of the prepositions. Numbers in brackets indicate where information can be found on using each preposition. Examples of less common prepositions are given below the table.

Summary Table 28.II: Prepositions derived from adverbs, nouns and gerunds

Preposition's meaning	Case with which the preposition can be used				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
near/near by		блízко/вблизí от (7.3.2)			
instead of		вмéсто (7.3.2)			

Preposition's meaning	Case with which the preposition can be used				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
along		вдоль (7.3.2, 7.3.2)			
beyond/ outside of		вне (7.3.2)			
inside		внутри (7.3.2, 7.3.2.1)			
close to		возле (7.3.2, 7.3.2.1)			
around		вокруг (7.3.2, 7.3.2.1)			
despite			вопреки (8.3)		
in front of		впереді (7.3.2)			
past/by		мімо (7.3.2)			
towards			навстрéчу (8.3)		
on the eve of		накануне			
opposite		напрóтив (7.3.2)			
near		óколо (7.3.2, 7.3.2.1)			
behind		позаді/сзáди (7.3.2, 7.3.2.1)			
after		пóсле (7.3.2)			
against		прóтив (7.3.2)			
more than/ above		свѳше / сверх			
in the middle of		посреді/среді (7.3.2)			
among		среді			
through	сквозь (6.3)				
according to			согласно (8.3)		
together with				вмѳсте с (9.3)	
next to				рядом с (9.3)	

Preposition's meaning	Case with which the preposition can be used				
	Accusative	Genitive	Dative	Instrumental	Prepositional
thanks to			благодаря		
in connection with				в СВЯЗИ С	
after	спустя́ (27.3)				
in view of		ввиду́			
during		во вре́мя/в те́чение			
alongside				наряду́ с	

Examples of some less frequently used prepositions:

Накану́не выбо́ров все па́ртии должны́ прекра́тить агита́цию.

Это **свы́ше мои́х сил**.

Свы́ше ты́сячи челове́к пришло́ на ми́тинг.

Среди́ студе́нтов на́шего универси́тета́ мно́го иностранце́в.

Наряду́ с есте́ственными нау́ками здесь то́же преподаю́т гума́нитарные предме́ты.

Вам на́до обрати́ться к адво́кату **в связи́ с э́тим де́лом**.

Благодаря́ усил́иям журна́листов всё та́йное ста́ло я́вным.

Во вре́мя прове́дения демонстра́ции дви́жение тра́нспорта бу́дет приоста́новлено.

On the eve of the elections all parties must stop campaigning.

It is beyond my abilities.

More than a thousand people arrived for the meeting.

Among the students at our university there are a lot of foreigners.

Alongside the natural sciences, they also teach the humanities here.

You need to consult a solicitor to discuss this matter.

Thanks to the journalists' efforts all the secrets became known.

During the demonstration traffic will be stopped.

Level
1, 2

Упражне́ния

1. Complete the sentences with an appropriate primary preposition:

1. Де́ти выхо́дят ... шко́лы.
2. ... Ива́на есть соба́ка.
3. Маши́на стои́т ... у́лице ... углу́м.
4. Инже́нер рабо́тает ... заво́де.
5. Ве́ра игра́ет ... те́ннис ... друзья́ми.
6. Ви́ктор е́дет ... Ита́лию.
7. Музе́й закрýт ... понеде́льник.
8. Магази́н рабо́тает ... шести́ ... десяти́.

9. ... вокзале есть ки́оск.
10. Ни́на лю́бит чай ... са́хара, но ... молоко́м.

Level
2, 3

2. Complete the sentences with an appropriate primary preposition:

1. ... сожалéнию, я не могу́ Вам помо́чь.
 2. Сотрудника отстрани́ли ... рабо́ты.
 3. Депута́ты проголо́совали ... приня́тие зако́на.
 4. ... слеза́ми ... глаза́х ребёнок смотре́л на мать.
 5. Аспи́ранты выполня́ют рабо́ту ... руково́дством профе́ссора.
 6. Мари́не приходи́тся подрабо́тывать в кафе́ ... суббо́там.
 7. Предприя́тие произво́дит това́ры ... э́кспорт.
 8. Мать беспоко́илась ... здоро́вье дете́й.
 9. ... заво́де ... сотрудни́ков мно́го специа́листов ... ви́сшим образо́ванием.
 10. Друзья́ встреча́ются ... клубе́ ... пя́тницам.
-

29 Conjunctions and particles

Level
2, 3

Conjunctions are indeclinable link words. They can link individual words within the sentence or clauses in compound and complex sentences (on types of sentence, 📖 31.1). Conjunctions can govern neither a noun nor a pronoun nor have a role in their declension.

Conjunctions can be divided into two large groups depending on the type of the connections they support:

- Co-ordinating conjunctions (📖 29.1).
- Subordinating conjunctions (📖 29.2).

Some conjunctions can appear in either category depending on use.

29.1 Co-ordinating conjunctions

Co-ordinating conjunctions can connect either words that have a similar role within one sentence or independent clauses in compound sentences.

- Я люблю слу́шать му́зыку **и** петь пе́сни. (I like listening to music **and** singing songs.) **И** (and) connects two verbs within a sentence.
- Я живу́ в Великобри́тании, **а** она́ в Росси́и. (I live in Great Britain **and** she lives in Russia.) **А** (and) connects two independent clauses in the compound sentence.

Different types of conjunction support different types of connection between words and clauses.

29.1.1 Conjunctions that link words or clauses that have similar meanings

These include:

и (and)

а (and/but)

да (also)

та́кже/то́же (also)

не то́лько ... но и (not only ... but also)

и ... и (both ... and)

как ... так и (and)

ни ... ни (neither ... nor)

да и (too, also)

Examples:

Ребе́нок не лю́бит **ни** мя́со, **ни** ры́бу.
nor fish.

The child likes neither meat

Щи **да** ка́ша – пи́ща на́ша. (Посло́вица)

Cabbage soup and porridge are
our food. (Proverb)

29.1.2 Conjunctions that link words or clauses with opposite meanings

These include:

но/а/да (but)

зато́ (but/on the other hand)

одна́ко (however, though)

Examples:

Он уже неплохо понимает по-ру́сски, **но** ещё плохо говорит. Они хоте́ли прие́хать в го́сти, **одна́ко** переду́мали в послед́ний моме́нт.

He already understands Russian well, but is not able to speak. They wanted to come and visit us; however, they changed their minds at the last moment.

29.1.3 Conjunctions that express the idea of choice

These include:

и́ли (or)

ли́бо (or)

то ... то (translation may vary; indicates some change)

то́ ли ... то́ ли (maybe)

и́ли ... и́ли (either ... or)

ли́бо ... ли́бо (either...or)

не то́ ... не то́ (neither ... nor)

Examples:

Что бу́дете пить? Вино́ **или** во́дку?
То́ тут, **то** там.

What would you like to drink?
Wine **or** vodka?
Now here, now there.

29.1.4 Explanatory conjunctions

Explanatory conjunctions explain a sentence further and include:

то есть (that means, that is), abbreviated to **т.е.** (i.e.) **а и́менно** (namely).

Example: Учёбная програ́мма рассчита́на на 2 семестра, **т.е.** на 22 учёбных неде́ли. (The programme consists of 2 semesters, i.e. 22 teaching weeks.)

29.2 Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions link the main clause of a complex sentence to a subordinate clause or clauses. The subordinate clause(s) clarifies the complete idea expressed by the main clause: Его́ нет сегодня́ на рабо́те, **потому́ что он заболел**. (He is not at work today, because he is ill.)

29.2.1 Conjunctions that show cause and consequence

These conjunctions link to a subordinate clause explaining the reason for action in the main clause and include:

потому́ что/та́к как/поско́льку
(because)

в си́лу того́ что (on the strength of the fact that)

всле́дствие того́ что (in consequence of)

ввиду́ того́ что (in view of the fact that)

Examples:

Он записался на курсы, потому что хотел научиться водить машину.	He enrolled for the course because he wanted to learn to drive.
В силу того что сократили бюджет, городской Совет закрыл библиотеку.	Because of the funding cuts, the city council closed the library.

29.2.2 Concessive conjunctions

These conjunctions link to a clause that ‘concedes’ the point in the main clause and puts forward a contrasting point; they include:

Хотя (although/even if)	Несмотря на то что (in spite of the fact that)
--------------------------------	---

Examples:

Хотя врачи сделали всё возможное, больного не удалось спасти.	Although the doctors did their best, they could not save the patient.
Несмотря на то что были получены государственные дотации, завод обанкротился.	In spite of the fact that they received the government subsidies, the factory closed.

29.2.3 Conjunctions showing comparison

These conjunctions link a clause that shows comparison.

как (as)	будто/как будто/будто бы/словно (as if)
чем (than)	

Examples:

Они одеваются как близнецы .	They dress like twins.
Он оказался намного умнее, чем все думали.	He turned out to be much cleverer than everybody thought.

Чем is common in constructions with comparative adjectives and adverbs (☞ 12.3 and 13.3.3).

29.2.4 Time conjunctions

These conjunctions link to a clause that gives an indication of time:

когда/как (when)	как только/лишь только (as soon as)
едва (just)	пока (while)
пока не (until)	в то время как (while)
тогда как (when/while)	после того как (after)
прежде чем (before)	перед тем как (before)
до того как (before)	с тех пор как (since)

Example: *Пока* мама готовила обед, *дети* играли в саду. (While their mother was cooking, the children were playing in the garden.)

☞ The Russian equivalent of *before* and *after* translate in two different ways:

- The prepositions **до/перед** (before), and **после** (after) when a noun follows: до обеда (before lunch), после ужина (after dinner).
- The conjunctions **до того как** (before), **перед тем как** (before), **прежде чем как** (before) and **после того как** (after) when a verbal phrase follows: до того как мы пообедали (before we had our lunch), после того как мы пообедали (after we had our lunch).

29.2.5 Conjunctions indicating purpose or result

**чтобы/для того чтобы/затем
чтобы/с тем чтобы** (in order to)

чтобы (not translated when indicating an instruction or a wish)

Чтобы can be used in two different contexts:

- A subordinate clause introduced by **чтобы** can be used to make a request or express desire. The English equivalent of this type of construction is 'I want you to do it': Посетителям музея **сказали, чтобы они выключили** свои мобильники. (The visitors in the museum *were told to* switch off their mobiles.) (On sentence structure and the use of verbal tenses, ¶ 22.4.2.)
- A subordinate clause introduced by **чтобы** can clarify the purpose or reason for the action described in the main clause. In this type of sentence, **чтобы** is followed by an infinitive. All actions described in both clauses are related to the same subject: Студенты должны много заниматься, **чтобы свободно говорить** по-русски. (Students must work hard *in order to* speak Russian well.) Я выключила мобильник, **чтобы не мешать** другим посетителям музея. (I switched off my mobile *in order not to* disturb the other visitors in the museum.)

29.2.6 Conjunctions of reason

These conjunctions link the clause that clarifies the reason for the action described in the main clause and include:

поэтому (therefore)

так что (so/so that)

Example: Я устал, **поэтому** не пошёл в бар. (I got tired and therefore did not go to a bar.)

29.2.7 Explanatory conjunctions

These conjunctions link a clause that clarifies the action in the main clause and include:

что (that)

как (not translated)

Example: Я слышу, **как** кто-то поёт. (I can hear someone singing.)

Что frequently introduces the subordinate clause clarifying the verbs **говорить**, **писать**, **думать**, **знать** when they appear in the main clause; for example:

Я думаю, **что** они не придут.

I think (that) they are not coming.

Говорят, **что** погода

They say (that) the weather will change for the

изменится к лучшему.

better.

29.2.8 Conditional conjunctions

These conjunctions link to the clause that determines conditions for an action described in the main clause. ¶ Conditional constructions are explained in section 22.3.

Level
3

29.3 Particles

Particles are indeclinable words that do not have a meaning of their own; they are common in informal speech. Their main role is to bring emotional emphasis to the word, phrase or sentence (¶ 29.3.1). Additionally, particles are used in negative constructions, conditional sentences and some verbal forms (¶ 29.3.3). Particles are derived from conjunctions, verbs or adverbs; some look identical to the words of their origin.

29.3.1 Particles that bring emotional emphasis to a word, phrase or sentence

Use of particles is determined by context and often by the speaker's intonation. Compare:

Neutral information	Message with emotional emphasis on the quality of the story
Он написáл рассказ. (He wrote a story.)	Ну уж и рассказ он написáл! (He wrote a story (of poor quality).)
Он написáл рассказ. (He wrote a story.)	Он написáл тако́й рассказ! (He wrote a story (of high quality).)

Particles are frequently used to:

- **Point out** someone or something: **вот/вон, а вот/а вон:**

Где туалет? Вот он!	Where is the toilet? There it is!
А вон там! Смотри!	Over there! Look!
- **Intensify the original meaning** of a word, phrase or sentence: **ведь** (surely/you must know), **да́же/да́же и** (even), **прóсто** (so), **уже́/уж** (so), **ещё** (what do you mean?), **же** (but), **всё-таки** (and yet). Note, particles **уже́**, **ещё**, **прóсто** look identical to the adverbs **уже́** (already), **ещё** (yet), **прóсто** (simply) from which they are derived:

« И всё-таки она́ вёртится! » (Галилේй)	‘ And yet it moves! ’ (Galileo)
Тебе́ ведь сто раз говори́ли!	You’ve been told a hundred times!
Да́же дура́к смо́жет э́то сде́лать!	Even an idiot can do it!
Ты прóсто прелес́ть!	You are so charming!
Тепе́рь всё уже́ не так пло́хо.	Now everything is not so bad.
Како́й ещё Ива́н?	Ivan, who do you mean?
Он же всё всегда́ знаёт!	But he always knows everything!
- **Emphasise the limitation** of a person's ability, quantity or time: **лишь/то́лько/лишь то́лько** (only/just), **еди́нственно/исключи́тельно** (only, exceptionally), **почти́/чу́ть ли не** (almost):

Лишь то́лько подсне́жник распу́стится в срок ... (Матусо́вский)	When one snowdrop will bloom just in time ...
И всё э́то – исключи́тельно для Вас!	This is all only for you!
Ко́шка съела́ почти́ все соси́ски!	The cat has eaten almost all the sausages!
- **Express doubts:** **аво́сь/пожа́луй** (probably, perhaps), **вряд ли** (hardly, I wish), **едва́ ли** (hardly). **Аво́сь** is a favourite Russian word and is often used in idioms as a synonym for **уда́ча** (luck):

Аво́сь пове́зёт!	I hope I will be lucky!
Наде́яться на аво́сь.	To rely on luck.
Э́то, пожа́луй , о́страя пробле́ма.	This is probably a serious problem
По́едешь домо́й? Вряд ли.	Are you going home? Hardly.
- **Defining** something: **и́менно** (even, namely, exactly), **то́чно** (sure/exactly), **ро́вно** (exactly), **прибли́зительно** (approximately), **почти́** (nearly), **точь-в-то́чь** (exactly):
These particles are often used in time expressions:

И́менно э́ту кни́гу я люблю́.	This is the book I love.
То́чно так.	Sure.

- **Confirm** a fact: **да/так** (yes), **точно/конечно** (yes, of course/sure):
Встретимся после работы? **Конечно!** Are we going to meet up after work? Sure!
- **Exclamations**: **Как/что за** (what/such), **вот это да!** (wow!). In contemporary Russian, the Anglicism **вау!** is becoming popular in the spoken language: **Вау!** Такого не ждал никто! (Wow! No one expected this!)
- **Questions**, to emphasise the information that is important for a speaker: **ли** (whether/if), **разве?** (really?), **неужели?** (really? is it possible?):

Разве Вы не слышали? Haven't you heard, then?

Неужели это правда? So it is really true then?

Note that **ли** always follows the word to which the question refers:

Знаете ли вы историю своей страны? Do you know the history of your country?

Ты не знаешь, **здорова ли** она сегодня? Do you know whether or not she is well today?

29.3.2 Other particles

- **Было** is used to emphasise an unsuccessful attempt to complete an action:
Он побежал, **было**, но споткнулся и упал. He started running, but tripped and fell down.
- **Бывало** is used to emphasise habitual action in the past:
Бывало Пушкина читал всю ночь до зорь ... I used to read Pushkin all night until daybreak ...
(Высоцкий)
- **-ка, -то** and **-с** (old-fashioned) are added to a word, following a hyphen. They express friendly encouragement:

А **ну-ка** песню нам пропой,
Весёлый ветер ...
(Лёбедев-Кумач)

Come on, cheerful wind,
sing a song for us ...

29.3.3 Particles used in formation of constructions and word forms

Several particles are used in forming conditional sentences and negative verbal forms.

29.3.3.1 The following particles are used in negative constructions

- **не** (not) always precedes the word to which it is referring:
Мы ещё **не** ели. We have not yet eaten.
Это **не** совсем точный ответ. It is not quite the correct answer.
- **ни** is used in negative constructions to reinforce negativity. Usually, **ни** precedes any word other than the verb:
На небе не было **ни** звёздочки. There was not a single star in the sky.
- However, **ни** can replace **не** and precede the verb in complex sentences, when several verbs in each subordinate clause express similar meanings. This type of negative construction is common in writing:

Как **ни** старались люди ... изуродовать ... However much people tried ... to
землю, как **ни** обрзывали деревья ... disfigure ... the land ..., however
и **ни** выгоняли всех животных ... much they cut down trees and carted

и птиц, – весна была весной
даже и в городе. (Толстой)

off all the animals and birds, spring
was really spring, even in the city.

29.3.3.2

The particle **бы** (cannot be translated into English) is used to form conditional constructions (☞ 22.3).

29.3.3.3

The particles **пусть/пускай/давай/да** (let) are used as alternative ways of forming the imperative (☞ 22.2.3).

Упражнения

Level
2, 3

1. Translate into Russian, using complex sentences with subordinate clauses:

1. The businessman has asked his secretary to cancel a meeting.
2. The housewife went to a market to get food.
3. Although the foreign students had not been in Russia long, they had already started to feel at home.
4. We did not have enough money, and therefore we decided not to eat out.
5. Victor was as tired as if he had run a marathon.

Level
3

6. The students were awarded first-class marks because they were working really hard.
7. Do you understand the Russian proverb: 'The further into the forest, the more woods'?
8. They wanted to go to the party, but turned down the invitation.

Обобщающее упражнение

2. Insert the appropriate conjunctions:



Господин Смирнов планирует свой отпуск

1. до отпуска ещё целых шесть месяцев, господин Смирнов думает о новых поездках и приключениях, и всё планирует заранее. 2. Он и его подруга пока не решили, лучше, поехать на Алтай, на Камчатку, на озеро Селигер. 3. Везде так красиво! только появилась возможность побывать сразу во всех уголках России, они с удовольствием поехали бы! 4. Говорили, на сайте компании «Спутник» появились дешёвые туры. 5. господин Смирнов искал подходящий тур по интернету, его подруга Ирина позвонила своим друзьям, попросить у них совета. 6. она выключила свой мобильник, господин Смирнов сказал, он нашёл недорогие туры на Алтай.

Ну что ж, господин Смирнов, желаем Вам счастливого пути! И до новых встреч!

30 Impersonal sentences

Level
2, 3

👁 Unlike English, Russian sentences can have only one core element, a subject or a predicate. In Russian, a large number of sentences have neither actual subject in the nominative case nor an implied subject. Unlike in English, in Russian the formal subject 'it' is not used to replace an absent subject. Sentences without a subject are called *impersonal*. The predicate that remains the core element of an impersonal sentence clarifies a state or action that occurs as if without external forces. Impersonal sentences are used to describe natural phenomena, weather conditions, physical or emotional states, rules and customs etc. Russian impersonal sentences are short and expressive and are therefore very common in popular speech, literature and poetry.

👁 Russian impersonal sentences do not fully correspond to English sentences that convey similar ideas. Usually, a Russian impersonal sentence describing natural phenomena or the weather is translated into English using sentences starting with the formal subject *it* and the verbs *to be* (is) or *to get* (is getting) in the present, past or future continuous tense: Темно́. (**It is** dark.) Темне́ет. (**It is getting** dark.) If a Russian impersonal sentence refers to a person, it is commonly translated into English using a personal sentence with a noun or pronoun as a subject: Мне нездоровится. (**I am** unwell.) Больно́го зноби́т. (**A sick person feels** shivery.) If the context of an impersonal sentences requires explaining who experiences a certain condition, this information is usually conveyed by a noun or personal pronoun in the dative case: Студе́нту скучно́ на ле́кции. (The **student** is bored at the lecture (literally, it is boring to a student at the lecture).)

The predicate of an impersonal sentence has no subject in the nominative case to agree with. Therefore, it is usually expressed by indeclinable words with a verbal link (👁 30.1) or the neuter form of the verb (👁 30.4).

Level
2, 3

30.1 Using adverbs, modal words, participles or nouns in impersonal sentences

The following indeclinable words can function as the predicate in an impersonal sentence:

- Adverbs ending in **-о** that describe quality, conditions or manner: холо́дно (cold), тепло́ (warm), светло́ (light), интере́сно (interesting), скучно́ (boring), пло́хо (bad), доро́го (expensive), дёшево (cheap).
- The modal words надо́ (need), ну́жно (need), необходи́мо (necessary), мо́жно (may/permitted), нельзя́ (forbidden), возмо́жно (possible), невозмо́жно (impossible).
- Comparative adjectives or adverbs that describe quality, conditions or manner: ху́же (worse), лу́чше (better) etc.

The following words can function as the predicate in an impersonal sentence, if they describe quality, conditions or manner:

- Short form of participle in neuter singular form: **накúрено** (smokey), **прíнято** (customary), **решенó** (decided) etc.
- Nouns: **жаль** (pity), **лень** (laziness), **охóта** (desire), **неохóта** (no desire), **порá** (it is time), **грех** (sin) etc.

The link-verbs **быть** (to be) or **станови́ться/стать** (to become) are used in this type of sentence to indicate the timing of an event: present, past or future. The verb **быть** (to be) is omitted in the present tense. The imperfective verb **станови́ться** (to become) is often used in the present or past tenses to emphasise a process. All link-verbs can be used in the neuter singular form in the present and past tenses, if applicable, and in the 3rd person singular in the future tense. **Быть** can precede or follow a predicate. **Станови́ться/стать** precede the predicate. For example:

Хóлодно.	It is cold.
Бы́ло хóлодно.	It was cold.
Бúдет хóлодно.	It will be cold.
Стáло тíхо.	It became quiet.
Станóвится тíхо.	It is getting quiet.
Станови́лось тíхо.	It was getting quiet.
Бы́ло нáдо написáть ог Нáдо	It was necessary to write down.
бы́ло написáть.	

If the context of an impersonal sentence requires explaining who experiences a certain condition, this information is usually conveyed by a noun or personal pronoun in the dative case. The predicate of the sentence is often followed by an infinitive:

Тáне (комú? dative case) хóлодно (adverb)	It is too cold for Tanya to walk.
гуля́ть (что де́лать? infinitive).	
Им (комú? dative case) нáдо (modal word)	They need to speak Russian.
говори́ть по-ру́сски (что де́лать? infinitive).	

30.1.1 Expressing necessity and obligation

Impersonal sentences are often used to convey necessity and obligation. The following indeclinable modal words (☞ 30.1) and impersonal verbs (☞ 30.4) commonly appear in this context (☞ 20.6 on the use of the verbal aspect with an infinitive):

Russian modal words/short-form adjectives/impersonal verbs	Examples
нáдо/нúжно (не нáдо/не нúжно) - need (no need) - indeclinable modal words followed by an infinitive <i>also see comments below</i>	Мне нáдо/нúжно позвони́ть. I need to make a call. Мне не нáдо/не нúжно звони́ть. I do no need to make a call.
необходи́мо - necessary/need - indeclinable modal words followed by an infinitive	Вам необходи́мо обрати́ться к врачú. You need to see a doctor.

(не) приходится/прийтись – to have to, impersonal verb followed by an infinitive; note that in different contexts the verb can have the meanings to be/ to happen	Нам пришлось уехать. We had to leave. Other meanings: Мне приходилось бывать за границей. I have been abroad (Literally: I happened to be abroad).
(не) следовать – ought to/should - impersonal verb followed by an infinitive	Студенту следует посоветоваться с профессором. A student ought to seek a professor's advice.

The predicative short-form adjectives *должен*, -á, -ó, -ы́ (must); *обязан*, -а, -о, -ы́ (obliged) and *нужен*, -á, -о, -ы́ (need) are also used to convey necessity and obligation. They can appear only in a sentence that has a subject in the nominative case and must agree with the subject in gender and number (📖 12.5-6).

👁 Russian impersonal sentences with the adverbs **надо**, **нужно**, **необходимо** (need, necessary) are often replaced by using a sentence with the subject in the nominative case and a short-form adjective **должен** (must) as the predicate:

Ему́ (dative) **надо** (adverb) позвонить. He **needs to/must** call.
Он (nominative) **должен** (short-form adjective)
позвонить.

👁 The English verb *to need* is translated into Russian by two different types of sentence depending on what a speaker needs:

- If a speaker needs ‘a material or abstract object’ that is expressed by a noun, the word *need* is translated by using the short-form adjective **нужен** (-á, -о, -ы́) followed by a noun or pronoun in the nominative case. An adjective must agree with a noun or pronoun in gender and number. The person who is ‘in need’ is in the dative case.

Виктору́ (dative) **нужна́** книга Victor **needs a book**.
(both words nominative, feminine, singular).
Виктору́ (dative) **нужен** Ваш совет Victor **needs your advice**.
(both words nominative, masculine, singular).

- When describing the *need* to ‘do something’, the word *need* is translated by an adverb (**надо**, **нужно**, **необходимо**) followed by an infinitive. The person who is in need is an indirect object in the dative case:

Виктору́ **надо** купить книгу. Victor **needs to buy** a book.

Level
3

30.2 Using an infinitive in impersonal sentences

For more information on the infinitive, 📖 16.1–16.1.2, 20.6–20.6.1.3.

Impersonal sentences can have an infinitive as their core element. Adverbs, modal words, participles and other verbs that are usually used with the infinitive need not be in the sentence, but can be implied. The infinitive can be used in perfective and imperfective aspects and in negative or affirmative forms. If the context requires explaining who experiences a certain condition, this information is usually conveyed by a noun or personal pronoun in the dative case. For example:

Может быть, (надо/следует/стоит) Maybe we should give him a ring?
позвонить ему́?
Мне **не решить** этой задачи I cannot solve this problem.
(Мне невозможно решить эту задачу).

30.2.1 Using an infinitive with the particle **ли**

In a question, the infinitive is often followed by the particle **ли** (if/whether) to emphasise the meaning of the question:

Не заняться ли нам ремо́нтом
квартиры?

Shall we do some renovation work
in the flat?

If **ли** follows the noun or personal pronoun in the dative case and is placed before the negative infinitive, the sentence emphasises a speaker's certainty about the described action:

Им **ли не выиграть** э́тот матч?

Sure, they will win the match.

Вам **ли не знать** отве́та на э́тот вопро́с?

Sure, you know the answer to
this question.

30.2.2 Using an infinitive in the subjunctive mood

Impersonal infinitive sentences are common in the subjunctive mood. They can express a speaker's wishful thought:

Поката́ться бы на сло́не!
Слета́ть бы на Лу́ну!

I wish I could ride an elephant!
I wish I could fly to the Moon.

Level
3

30.3 Using negative pronouns and adverbs in an impersonal sentence

Negative pronouns and adverbs with the particle **не-** attached to them can be used as an essential part of the predicate along with an infinitive in a Russian impersonal sentence. Negative pronouns and adverbs convey an idea of absence of someone or something. They can indicate lack of time, of reason or of course of action, absence of place where one can go, absence of an object, a person etc.; for example:

Мне **не́куда** пойти́.

There is **nowhere** for me **to go**.

Ему́ **не́чего** де́лать.

He has **nothing to do**.

Извини́, мне **некогда**.

I am sorry, I **have no time**.

This type of sentence is very common in popular speech as it can convey the idea of an absence of someone or something by using a limited number of words and a simple and clear sentence structure. A complex sentence with the relative pronoun **ко́торый** (who, whose, that, which) can convey the same idea as the impersonal sentence and can, therefore, replace it in writing;

for example:

Complex sentence with ко́торый	В фи́рме нет сотру́дников, ко́торые мо́гут рабо́тать с но́вой компью́терной програ́ммой.	Нет челове́ка, с ко́торым Ви́ктор мо́жет обща́ться .
Impersonal sentence with negative pronoun or adverb	В фи́рме не́кому рабо́тать с но́вой компью́терной програ́ммой.	Ви́ктору не́ с кем обща́ться .
Translation	In the company, there are no staff who can work with the new computer program.	There is no person with whom Victor can communicate .

30.3.1 Characteristics of impersonal sentences with negative pronouns or adverbs

There are some important characteristics of impersonal sentences with negative pronouns or adverbs:

- There is no subject in an impersonal sentence with a negative pronoun or adverb. However, if the context requires explaining who experiences a certain condition, this information is expressed by using a noun or personal pronoun in the dative case:

Емú (dative) нéкогда.

He does not have any time.

Марíи (dative) нéкуда пойтí.

Maria has no place to go.

- If the context requires describing an action, this is done by using an infinitive in the affirmative form. Both perfective and imperfective infinitives can be used, depending on the meaning of the sentence (for the infinitive, § 16.1 and 20.6). An infinitive usually follows the negative pronoun or adverb:

Ей нé с кем поделítся.

She has no one to share with.

Им нéчего дéлать.

They have nothing to do.

- Both negative pronoun and adverb retain their grammatical characteristics; for example, all negative pronouns decline and adverbs are indeclinable. For personal pronouns, § 14; for adverbs and negative adverbs, § 13; for declension of negative pronouns, § 30.3.2.
- The particle **не-** always takes the stress.

30.3.2 Negative adverbs and pronouns with particle не-

The negative adverbs that use the particle **не-** are **нéкуда** (nowhere), **нéгде** (nowhere), **нéоткуда** (from nowhere), **нéкогда** (no time) and **нéзачем** (no reason). The negative pronouns that use the particle **не-** are **нéкого** (no one) and **нéчего** (nothing).

Нéкого and **нéчего** do not have a nominative case form. The indefinite pronouns **нéкто** (someone) and **нéчто** (something) may look like negative pronouns, but they have different meanings and use. Negative pronouns decline in the same way as **кто?** and **что?** If a preposition is used with any case, it is inserted between the particle **не-** and the pronoun (see Table 30.I). Most of the prepositions that can be used with a case can appear with a negative pronoun.

Table 30.I: Declension of negative pronouns with the particle не-

Nominative	–	–
Accusative	нéкого/нé (за) кого	нéчего/нé (на) что
Genitive	нéкого/нé (у) кого	нéчего/нé (у) чего
Dative	нéкому/нé (к) кому	нéчему/нé (к) чему
Instrumental	нéкем/нé (с) кем	нéчем/нé (с) чем
Prepositional	нé (о) ком	нé (о) чем

30.3.3 Personal and impersonal sentences with negative pronouns and adverbs

👁 Negative pronouns and adverbs using the particle **не-** must not be confused with negative pronouns and adverbs using the particle **ни-**. They are translated in the same way into English, but they have different function, use and meaning in Russian (for the pronouns, 📖 14).

Comparison of negative pronouns and adverbs using the particles ни- and не-	
ни-	не-
Used in personal sentences with the negative verb in personal form (preceded by the particle не) that agrees with the subject of the sentence (noun or pronoun in the nominative case).	Used in impersonal sentences with no subject. The action is described by an infinitive.
Function: non-core element of a sentence, can describe an object, place, time etc.	Function: core element of a sentence, an essential part of the predicate; along with an infinitive forms a compound predicate.
Meaning: indication of absence of an action	Meaning: indication of absence of something or someone. The action is described by an infinitive.
Я ничего не выучил. (I learned nothing.)	Мне нечего учить. (I have nothing to learn.)
Я ни о ком не хочу говорить. (I don't want to talk about anyone.)	Мне не о ком говорить. (There is no one to talk about.)
Я никого не люблю. (I love nobody.)	Мне некого любить. (I have no one to love.)
Я никуда не пойду сегодня вечером. (I will not go out anywhere tonight.)	Мне некуда пойти сегодня вечером. (I have nowhere to go tonight.)

The negative adverbs are indeclinable. As with negative pronouns with **не-**, negative pronouns with **ни-** decline in the same way as **кто? что? какой? и чей?**

For negative pronouns with the particle **ни-**, 📖 14.10.1; for negative adverbs with the particle **ни-**, 📖 13.2.8.

Level
3

30.4 Using impersonal verbs in impersonal sentences

So-called *impersonal* verbs can be used only in impersonal sentences. Impersonal verbs have a limited number of verbal forms: the 3rd person singular in the present and future tenses and neuter singular form in the past tense. Many impersonal verbs have imperfective and perfective aspects; some have only imperfective. Impersonal verbs are most frequently used to describe natural phenomena and physical/emotional conditions.

Natural phenomena with no reference to a person: *вечереть* (impf, to grow dark), *светать* (impf, to get light), *смеркаться* (to get dark), *холодать* (impf, to turn cold)/*похолодать* (pf), *морозить* (impf, to freeze)/*подморозить* (pf), *теплеть* (impf, to

get warm)/потеплѣть (pf), тянуть (impf, to blow (of wind))/потянуть (pf), вѣять (impf, to blow (of wind))/повѣять (pf) etc. Скоро ли **рассветѣт**? (**Will it get light soon?**)

Physical and emotional conditions: in this context impersonal verbs usually refer to the animate object that experiences these conditions. The object can be used in the dative or genitive case.

- The following verbs take an animate object in the genitive case:

тошнить (impf)/затошнить (pf) – to feel sick
 мутить (impf)/замутить (pf) – to feel sick
 знобить (impf)/зазнобить (pf) – to feel shivery
 лихорадить (impf)/залихорадить (pf) – to feel feverish

- The following verbs take an animate object in the dative case:

стоить (impf) – to be worth
 хватать (impf)/хватить (pf) – to have enough
 недоставать (impf) – to be short of
 надоедать (impf)/надоесть (pf) – to be fed up
 везти (impf)/повезти (pf) – to be lucky
 удаваться (impf)/удаться (pf) – to manage
 слѣдовать (impf) – ought to/should
 приходиться (impf)/прийтись (pf) – to be obliged to, to have to
 оставаться (impf)/остаться (pf) – to be left with
 хотѣться (impf)/захотѣться (pf) – to feel like
 казаться (impf)/показаться (pf) – to seem
 нездоровиться (impf) – to feel unwell

For example:

Пациѣнта (genitive) знобит.


The patient feels shivery.

Нам (dative) пришлось поменять билет.

We had to change our ticket.

30.4.1 Using verbs that can appear in either impersonal or personal sentences

Some verbs can appear in either impersonal or personal sentences, depending on the context. Compare:

Impersonal	Personal
В домѣ вкусно пахнет пирогами. (It smells (nicely) of pies in the house.)	Пирогѣ пахнут вкусно. (The pies smell good.)
Водой залило окрѣстные луга. (It flooded (with water) over the neighbouring meadows.)	Водá залила окрѣстные луга. (The water flooded over the neighbouring meadows.)
 (see comments below) Бизнесмѣнам понравилось ужинать в русском ресторaне. (The businessmen liked dining in the Russian restaurant.)	Бизнесмѣнам понравился ужин в русском ресторaне. (The businessmen liked the dinner in the Russian restaurant (literally: The dinner pleased ...).)

👁 Note the use of the verb **нравиться** (impf)/**понравиться** (pf) (to like) in the last example. In a Russian sentence, the person who 'likes' or 'dislikes' always appears in the dative case (👁 8.2.3). Then, if **нравиться/понравиться** is followed by an infinitive, it functions as an impersonal verb with a limited number of forms. However, **нравиться/понравиться** can appear in a personal sentence that has a noun or pronoun in the nominative case (👁 5.1.2). In a personal sentence **нравиться/понравиться** must agree with the subject in person and number in the present and future tenses and in gender and number in the past tense.

Level

2

30.5 Impersonal negative genitive sentences

For the use of the genitive case, 👁 7.

Russian negative sentences that convey the idea of absence of an object or a person from a place, or absence of a possession, are impersonal. These Russian sentences are equivalent to the English constructions 'there are no/there is no someone/something somewhere'.

In Russian negative constructions, the noun that indicates the absent object is in the genitive case. It can be used with both singular and plural numbers.

As negative genitive constructions have no subject, the predicate of the sentence (the verb) does not have a subject with which to agree. Therefore, unchangeable verbal forms express the predicate of the sentence. They are the negative word **нет** (there is no/there are no) in the present tense and the negative forms **быть** (to be) in the past and the future tenses. In the past tense, the singular neuter form **не было** (there was no/there were no) is used. In the future tense the 3rd person singular form **не будет** (there will be no) is used. Note that **нет**, **не было** and **не будет** are the Russian equivalents of the English expressions *there is no/there are no* in the present, past and future tenses respectively; for example:

На свете счастья (genitive) нет , но есть покой и воля. (Пушкин)	There is no happiness in this world, but there is peace and freedom.
У него́ (genitive) не было денег (genitive).	He did not have any money.

Level

3

Additional comments:

- The negative particles **ни** (none) or **ни... ни** (neither) intensify the negativity. In the present tense, **нет**, **не было**, **не будет** are often omitted; for example:

И ни души в степи́, ни кустика , ни деревца́ . (Бунин)	There is not a soul in the steppe, nor a bush, nor a tree.
В зале́ садятся́ завтракать, а в гости́ной ни души . (Чехов)	They are about to start their breakfast in the hall; and there is no one in the sitting room.
- The idea of a person being absent can be conveyed by a personal or an impersonal sentence with a slightly different implication. Compare:

Студенты́ не́ были на лекции́.	Студентов не́ было на лекции́.
The students were not at the lecture.	There were no students at the lecture.

- Russian negative sentences have as many negative terms as are necessary to the logic of the sentence:

Мы никогда никого ни о чём не просили.	We never asked anyone for anything.
Нам никогда никого ни о чём не приходилось просить.	We never had to ask anyone about anything.

Level
2, 3

Упражнения

1. Translate into Russian using impersonal sentences:

1. It is getting stuffy.
2. They did not feel like working.
3. We have to hurry.
4. It is forbidden to smoke here.
5. I'd love to fly to the Moon.
6. There was no one with me in the woods. I got scared.
7. I don't have time.
8. I need your advice.
9. I like your hairdo!
10. Sorry, I need to go.
11. Most of all I like walking in the woods at dawn.

Level
2, 3

2. Replace the negative pronouns or adverbs using the particle **ни-** with negative pronouns or adverbs using the particle **не-**. Rephrase the sentences as appropriate:

1. Нина никуда не ездила этим летом.
 2. Онí ничемú не удивляются.
 3. Мáльчик ни с кéм не играёт сегодня.
 4. Комéдия была́ глúпой. Мы ни над чéм не смеялись.
 5. Вíктор никуда не спешит.
-

31 Essentials of syntax

Level
3

This section covers basic information on Russian sentence structure, types of sentence, word order and punctuation.

31.1 Types of Russian sentence

Russian and English sentence structures have much in common. Russian sentences fall into several categories depending on the number of clauses and the relationship between them. All Russian sentences fall into one of the following categories:

- **Simple sentences** that contain just one independent clause and one complete idea: У меня есть друг. (I have a friend.)
- **Compound sentences** that can have two or more simple sentences joined together by co-ordinating conjunctions: all parts of a compound sentence are equal and can exist independently. Compound sentences may contain several complete ideas:

В комнатах было душно, а улицы на улицах вихрем носилась пыль ... (Чехов) The rooms were stuffy, and the streets (co-ordinating conjunction) swirled with dust.

- **Complex sentences** that usually have one main clause and one or more subordinate clauses connected by subordinate conjunctions or conjunction words. The main clause contains the complete idea. Subordinate clauses clarify or expand on information provided in the main clause and cannot exist independently:

Чтобы сделать что-нибудь великое (subordinate clause), нужно все силы души устремлять в одну точку. (Толстой) To do something great, you need all the power of the soul to strive to one point.

- **Compound-complex sentences** that contain independent and subordinate clauses: Каждый должен был рассказывать что-нибудь фантастическое из своей жизни (independent clause), а так как умение рассказывать даётся не всякому (independent clause), то к рассказам с художественной стороны не придирались (subordinate clause). Everybody has to tell some fantastical story from their life, and because not everyone can have a storyteller's ability, the literary worth of the stories was not judged harshly.

For conjunctions, see 29.

However, there are some **important differences** between English and Russian sentences:

- Unlike English, Russian sentences **may only have one core element**, either a subject or a predicate. Дом (subject). (It is a house (see 5.1.3).) Стало холодно (predicate). (It **has** got cold (see 30.1).

- Unlike in English, in Russian the absent subject is not replaced by the ‘*formal*’ subject ‘*it*’:

Трудно изучать русский язык.

It is difficult to study Russian.

На солнце стало слишком жарко.

It got too hot under the sun

(☞ 30–30.1).

- The Russian equivalent of English indefinite-personal sentences (such as ‘They say ...’, ‘They reported ...’) does not have a subject. The pronoun ‘they’ is always omitted from Russian indefinite-personal sentences:

Говорят, сегодня будет жарко.

They say it is going to be hot today.

Что сегодня обсуждали на собрании?

What did they discuss at the meeting

today? (☞ 21.5).

- Russian does not have an equivalent of the English pronoun ‘*one*’. The pronoun ‘*one*’ translates into Russian in many different ways depending on the context. If ‘*one*’ is the subject of the English sentence, it is often translated into Russian by using an impersonal sentence with an adverb (☞ 30–30.1):

One must not drink and drive a car.

Нельзя пить за рулём/когда ведёте

One can never tell.

машину. Трудно сказать.

If ‘*one*’ is the object of the English sentence, it is often omitted when translating into Russian:

There are ten different sorts of cake on sale today. Which one do you want?

Сегодня в продаже десять сортов пирожных. Какой Вы хотите?

- Unlike in English, in Russian the verb **быть** (to be) (☞ 16.2) is not used in the present tense: Окно закрыто. (The window **is** closed.)

31.2 Word order

In Russian sentences, word order is **flexible** owing to the concepts of declension (☞ 4) and agreement between different elements of a sentence (☞ 11, 14.4–14.6, 15.2). However, word order plays an important role in determining the style of spoken or written speech, such as formal style, informal style or slang. The basic principles of word order can be summarised as follows:

- If a simple neutral message contains a subject, verb and object, it follows the order ‘*Subject – Verb – Object*’:

Весёлая старуха (subject) поймала (verb)
золотую рыбку (object).

The merry old woman caught
a goldfish.

- Often a simple message is limited to just the subject and verb.
- Any changes to word order are made for a reason. The word that contains the most important or unknown information usually occupies the last position in the sentence. If the above example is rephrased, it can convey modified meanings. Note that words that qualify a noun or verb are not usually separated from them:

Поймала (verb) весёлая старуха
(subject) **золотую рыбку** (object).
Золотую рыбку (object) поймала
(verb) **весёлая старуха** (subject).
Золотую рыбку (object) весёлая
старуха (subject) **поймала** (verb).

The sentence emphasises **what**
the old woman caught.

The sentence emphasises **who**
caught the goldfish.

The sentence emphasises **how**
the old woman got the goldfish.

In impersonal sentences (☞ 30), the person who experiences a certain condition is in the dative or genitive case and usually starts the sentence:

Мальчика зноби́ло.

The boy had fever.

Де́тям вёсело.

The children are joyful.

Informal speech, poetry, folklore and idioms are more expressive and have more flexibility in their word order. For example, one of the distinctive features of informal style is when the verb precedes the subject:

Жи́ли-были дед да ба́ба.
(Ска́зочный зачи́н)

Once upon a time there lived an old man and an old woman. (Traditional fairy-tale opening)

Над мра́чной Э́льбю́ **носи́лась**
тишина́. (Пу́шкин)

Over the dark Elbe the silence **spread**.

31.3 Punctuation

Russian and English punctuation have much in common. In Russian, the use of full stop, question and exclamation marks corresponds to their use in English. However, the use of the comma in Russian is highly formalised.

In a simple sentence or clause, the comma is used:

- In lists of words with a similar function in a sentence. For example:

Да́ма сдава́ла в бага́ж:

A lady was handing over her luggage:

Дива́н, чемодáн, сакво́йж,

A sofa, a suitcase, a bag,

Картину́, корзи́ну, карто́нку

A picture, a basket, a hatbox

И ма́ленькую собачо́нку.

And a little dog.

(Марша́к)

- To separate words with a similar function that are linked by conjunctions such as *или ... или* (either), *но* (but), *а* (but), *ни ... ни*, (neither ... nor):

Ни рыба́, **ни** мя́со. (Посло́вица)

Neither fish, nor meat. (Proverb; meaning someone who lacks personality)

- To separate parenthetical words and expressions from other words in a sentence, such as: *ка́жется* (it seems), *наприме́р* (for example), *пожа́луйста* (please), *конечно́* (of course), *к сожа́лению* (unfortunately), *мо́жет быть* (perhaps), *по-мо́ему* (in my opinion), *наве́рное* (probably), *с одной/с друго́й сторо́ны* (on the one/on the other hand), *допу́стим* (let's assume)

Переда́йте, **пожа́луйста**, соль.

- To separate the main and any type of subordinate clauses in a complex sentence:

Мы не зна́ли (main clause), что тако́е **квас** (subordinate clause). We did not know what 'kvas' was.

- To separate independent clauses in compound sentences linked by conjunctions:

Соба́ки ла́ют, а карава́н иде́т.

Though the dog may bark, the caravan

(Rúсский ва́риант ара́бской

moves on. (Russian variant of Arabic proverb)

посло́вицы)

The colon is used in a similar way as in English, including introduction of direct speech or a quotation.

The dash is used:

- To indicate the omitted predicate: *Сего́дня тури́сты ката́ются на лы́жах, за́втра – на конька́х.* (Today the tourists are skiing, tomorrow they are skating.)

- To replace the omitted present tense verbal link **быть** (to be) between two nouns in the nominative case:

Нóвгород – дрéвний **гóрод**. Novgorod **is** an old city.

- To replace the omitted present-tense verbal link **быть** (to be) before the words **это** (this), **значит** (means), **вот** (here), if it is part of the explanatory comment:

Прича́стие – **это одна из глагольных форм**. The participle is one of the verbal forms.

- To indicate direct speech, if it is presented in the form of the dialogue:

– Когда ты прие́дешь? When are you coming?
– Завтра. Tomorrow.

The guillemets « » are used:

- As quotation marks:

«Тяжело в учении, легко в бою.» (Суво́ров) 'It's hard to learn, easy in battle.'

- To indicate direct speech, if it is part of continuous text. Note that the colon precedes the guillemets; for example,

Сестра спросила: «Когда ты прие́дешь?» My sister asked, 'When are you coming?'

- To indicate proper nouns:

- when naming literary, art or music work, newspapers, magazines, artistic and film productions, websites and other Internet resources, social networks etc: роман «Лолита» (the novel *Lolita*), газе́та «Извёстия» (newspaper *Izvestiia*), ро́ссийский блокба́стер «Т-34» (the Russian blockbuster film-*T-34*), социáльные се́ти «Фейсбúк» (Facebook social network).
- when naming shops, stations, parks etc: ста́нция метро́ «Моско́вская» (*Moskovskaya* metro station).
- when naming groups and organizations: ро́ссийская эколо́гическая па́ртия «Зелёные» (The Russian Ecological Green Party).
- when using a word or a phrase in its figurative or unusual meaning: Молоде́жные СМИ ча́сто пи́шут на «лёгкие» те́мы. (Youth media often writes on 'light' topics).

Additionally note:

- The given fictional names are not declined when used as a part of the phrase with a generic common noun: Наш профе́ссор расска́зал о ромáне «Лолита». (Our professor talked about the novel *Lolita*). However, the given fictional names are declined when they appear in a sentence as an independent word: Наш профе́ссор расска́зал о «Лолите». (Our professor talked about *Lolita*).
- The guillemets are not used when indicating the names of people, pets or fictional characters, and established geographical names (countries, continents, districts, cities, mountains, seas, rivers, streets etc): городá Росси́и (Russian cities), гру́ппа альпини́стов подня́лась на Э́верэ́ст (a group of alpinists climbed up Everest).
- The guillemets are not used when a word or a phrase becomes an established idiomatic expression: звезда́ (star), meaning a famous person; вели́кий немóй (great silent cinematography), горя́чая ли́ния (hot line).
- The guillemets are not used if foreign proper names are presented in a foreign alphabet: авиако́мпания British Airways (airline British Airways), ресто́ран La Fontana (restaurant La Fontana).
- In contemporary Russian, especially in on-line publications, the above listed requirements are not always observed.

Bibliography

Dictionaries and reference books

Даль, В. И. 1996. *Пословицы русского народа*. Санкт-Петербург: Диамант.

Ожегов, С. И. 1989. *Словарь русского языка*, 20-ое изд. Москва: Русский язык.

Wheeler, M. 2000. *The Oxford Russian Dictionary*, 3rd edn. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Grammars

Dunn, J., Khairov, Sh. 2009. *Modern Russian Grammar*. Oxford: Routledge.

Levine, J. 2009. *Schaum's Outline of Russian Grammar*, 2nd edn. New York: The McGraw-Hill Companies.

Offord, D., Gogolitsyna, N. 2005. *Using Russian: A Guide to Contemporary Usage*, 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Pekhlivanova K. L., Lebedeva, M. N. 1994. *Russian Grammar in Illustrations*. Москва: Русский язык.

Пулькина, И. М., Захава-Некрасова, Е. В. 1994. *Русский язык: Практическая грамматика с упражнениями*. Москва: Русский язык.

Wade, T. 1998. *A Comprehensive Russian Grammar*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Валгина, Н. С., Розенталь, Д. Е. 2002. *Современный русский язык*. Москва: Логос.

Other books on the Russian language

Murav'eva, L. S. 1986. *Verbs of Motion in Russian*. Москва: Русский язык.

Одинцова, И. В., Малашенко, Н. М., Бахкударова Е. Л. 2008. *Русская грамматика в упражнениях*, Москва: Русский язык.

Розенталь, Д. Е. 2004. *Пособие по русскому языку*. Москва: Оникс.

Хавроница, С. А., Широцкая, А. И. 1993. *Русский язык в упражнениях*. Москва: Русский язык.

Literary sources

Бунин, И. А. 1983. *Рассказы*. Москва: Правда.

Высоцкий, В., Галич, А., Окуджава, Б. 1990. *Я выбираю свободу: стихи, песни*. Кемерово: Книжное издательство.

Гоголь, Н. В. 1985. *Избранные произведения*. Кишинёв: Лит-артистикэ.

Горький, М. 1982. *Избранное*. Москва: Детская литература.

Довлатов, С. Д. 1995. *Собрание прозы*. Санкт-Петербург: Лимбус-пресс.

Драгунский В. Ю. 1998. *Избранное*. Москва: Детская литература

Лермонтов, М. Ю. 1998. *Сочинения в 2-х т.* Москва: Правда.

Лесков, Н. С. 1997. *Повести и рассказы*. Москва: Олимп.

Маршак, С. Я. 1999. *Стихи*. Москва: Малыш.

Народные песни. 1999. Москва: Олма-Пресс.

Пушкин, А. С. 1986. *Сочинения в 3-х томах.* Москва: Художественная литература.

Русские советские песни. 1977. Москва: Художественная литература.

Толстой, Л. Н. 1997. *Собрание сочинений в 20-ти томах*, Т. 4–5. Москва: Терра.

Тургенев, И. С. 1998. *Избранное.* Магнитогорск: ПМП.

Чехов, А. П. 2000. *Избранное.* Москва: ЭКСМО-Пресс.

Internet sources

www.newsru.com

Links to news on current affairs, sport, photos and celebrities from across Russia and the world.

www.sovsport.ru

Links to sports newspaper *Sovetsky Sport*, which publishes news on football, tennis, ice hockey, athletics, volleyball, Formula 1, swimming, skiing and other sports tournaments.

The Internet is a great resource for learners of Russian. Simply search for keywords in your area of interest, in either English or Russian. Be aware that websites are ephemeral and sometimes contain inappropriate or offensive material.

Key to exercises

Chapter 1

1. 1. книги 2. следующем 3. лежат игрушки 4. испанцы 5. Большом
2.

I	II
стул	словарь
окно	Австралия
погода	собрание
	чай
	врач
	психология
	площадь

Chapter 2

1. А, I, А, I, А, I, I, А, А, I, А, А
2.

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Урал	Москва	окно
чай	комната	упражнение
человек	ярмарка	время
план	площадь	дело
январь		животное

3. **А.** молодой юноша (m), молодая девушка (f), молодой маэстро (m), молодое млекопитающее (n), молодой водопроводчик (m) **В.** большое Онтарио (n), большое такси (n), большая ООН (f) **С.** интересное хобби (n), интересный концерт (m), интересное заявление (n)

Chapter 3

1. лошади, сады, книги, сестры, братья, машины, собаки, преподаватели, моря, окна, карандаши, англичане, города, упражнения, край.
2. **А.** дома, глаза, уши, яблоки, дети, граждане, щенята/щенки, матери, времена. **В.** друг, судно, англичанин, поросенок, паспорт, дочь, плечо, учитель, дерево, имя.
3. 1. родители, дяди, тети, близнецы-племянники 2. котята 3. племянницы
4. двоюродные сестры 5. мужа 6. англичане, имена 7. братья, жены
8. коллеги, друзья.

Chapter 4

1. S N, S P; 2. S N, S P; 3. S I, P I D, S A; 4. S A, S I, S G; 5. S N, P I D, S A, S G; 6. S N, S I, P I P, S G, P I G; 7. S D, S N, S I, S G; 8. S G, S P, P I G; 9. S D, P I G; 10. P I N, S G, S I, S I, P I A, S G; 11. S D; 12. S I, S G, S P, S N, S I, S I, S G, P I A, S A.

Chapter 5

1. 1. Вера – учительница. 2. «Гарри Поттер» – книга. 3. Газета на столе. 4. Отца зовут Саша. 5. Аэропорт называется Пулково.
2. 1. Двадцать одно окно, сто одна квартира. 2. Компьютеры дороже книг/ чем книги. 3. Такие животные, как тигры и леопарды, находятся под угрозой вымирания. 4. Мы смотрели оперу «Тоска».
3. 1–3, 2–5, 3–8, 4–6, 5–9, 6–4, 7–1, 8–7, 9–2.

Chapter 6

Sections 6.1–6.2

1. 1. оперу 2. рыбу, хлеб, фрукты 3. друга 4. туристов 5. собаку
2. 1. каждый день 2. неделю назад 3. весь месяц 4. целое утро

Sections 6.3–6.5

1. 1. на, на 2. в 3. на 4. в 5. в
2. 1. за 2. за 3. на 4. за 5. сквозь 6. через 7. на 8. в 9. в 10. в
3. 1. обед, приготовление 2. рецепты 3. говядину, свинину, картошку 4. свёклу, морковь, капусту, лук 5. пасту, соль, перец 6. картофель, морковь, яйца 7. огурцы, лук 8. горшок 9. ингредиенты, майонез, соль

Chapter 7

Sections 7.1–7.2

1. 1. Наташи 2. брата 3. попугая 4. подруги 5. моря
2. 1. нет лифта 2. нет аптеки 3. нет компьютера 4. нет подруги 5. нет телевизора
3. 1. человек 2. газа, нефти, угля 3. парка, музея, гостиницы. 4. рублей, копеек 5. сигарет, конфет, меду/мёда 6. чаю/чая 7. сахара, молока, хлеба.
4. **A. a.** третье октября две тысячи одиннадцатого года **b.** первое декабря тысяча девятьсот восемьдесят четвертого года **B. a.** тридцать первого февраля тысяча девятьсот семьдесят восьмого года **b.** тринадцатого июня двухтысячного года **C. a.** четверть одиннадцатого. **b.** пять минут десятого **c.** половина седьмого. **d.** двадцать пять минут пятого.
5. Счастливого пути! Спокойной ночи! Мягкой посадки! Приятного аппетита! Счастливого Рождества! Всего хорошего! Всего доброго!

Section 7.3

1. 1. нет каникул 2. нет работы 3. нет времени 4. нет домика 5. нет прибыли 6. нет внуков
2. 1. не будет матча 2. не было выборов 3. нет поддержки 4. нет сюжета 5. не будет заказов
3. 1. – 2. есть. 3. – 4. – 5. – 6. –
4. 1. от 2. от 3. от 4. от 5. до, после 6. с, до 7. против 8. от, до 9. от, из-за
5. 1. господина Смирнова 2. из-за болезни, подруги Ирины 3. у Ирины 4. у Ирины 5. у Ирины 6. от кашля и насморка 7. для Ирины 8. чаю/чая без сахара и молока, два яблока 10. до обеда. 11. от температуры, у Ирины 12. до конца недели

Chapter 8

Sections 8.1–8.2

1. 1. Натáше 2. студéнтам 3. брáту 4. друзья́м 5. Ю́рию Гага́рину 6. преподава́телю
7. Ребе́нку
2. 1. го́рю 2. свидéтелям 3. ро́дственникам 4. поклóнникам 5. по́мощи
6. иссле́дователям

Section 8.3

1. 1. по лингвисти́ке 2. к язы́кам 3. к прия́телю 3. к сча́стью 5. к сожа́лению
6. по пáтницам 7. по де́лу 8 по утра́м, по пла́жу
2. 1. к пра́здникам, по магази́нам 2. господи́ну Смирно́ву, роди́телям,
дядя́м, тётям, племя́нникам-близнеца́м, племя́нницам, сёстрам, мужья́м,
братья́м, жёна́м 3. семье́ 4. племя́нницам, племя́нникам 5. игру́шкам
6. к сча́стью, по ра́дио, по исто́рии, по иску́ству 7. братья́м и сёстрам
8. ро́дственникам 9. господи́ну Смирно́ву 10. сове́ту

Chapter 9

Sections 9.1–9.2

1. 1. ножо́м 2. па́лочками 3. карандашо́м 4. по́ездом 5. стрело́й 6. кре́мом
7. зимо́й 8. весно́й 9. у́тром
2. а. вы́сотой оди́н метр во́семьдесят сантимéтров; б. шири́ной оди́н метр
пятьдеся́т сантимéтров; с. глубино́й три́дцать пять сантимéтров
3. 1. же́нщиной-космона́втом 2. столи́цей 3. те́мпами 4. флóтом 5. музе́ями,
моста́ми, дворца́ми. 6. прия́телями 7. жи́знью 8. поп-му́зыкой, пла́ванием, го́льфом

Section 9.3

1. 1. Ме́жду Лондо́ном и Москво́й 2. за ово́щами 3. пе́ред едо́й 4. С го́рдостью
5. Пе́ред университе́том 6. с пра́здниками 7. под откры́тым не́бом 8. над статье́й
9. с колле́гами 10. со льдо́м, с то́ником
2. познако́миться с сосéдом 2. ко́фе со сли́вками 3. пиро́г с гриба́ми 4. смея́ться
над шу́тками 5. разве́стись с жено́й 6. спрýтаться за углу́м
3. 1. с колле́гами 2. с удово́льствием, с тради́циями и обы́чаями 3.
гостепри́имством, красо́той 4. с господи́ном Смирно́вым 5. с любопы́тством,
ве́ником 6. вхо́дом, полотёнцем, ве́ником 7. ве́ником 8. со здоро́вьем, па́ром
9. с лимо́ном, ме́дом, варе́ньем 10. с гриба́ми, ры́бой, мя́сом, я́блоками, я́годами

Chapter 10

1. 1. в шкафу́ 2. в о́фисе 3. на ле́кции 4. в саду́ 5. на се́вере 6. в Аме́рике
2. **A.** 1. о ко́смосе 2. об общежи́тии **B.** 1. о ма́тери 2. о царé **C.** 1. на самолёте
2. на велосипе́де
3. 1. При Горбачё́ве 2. В 1945-ом году́ 3. в октяб́ре 4. о ме́рах 5. в креди́те
6. в подде́ржке 7. о любви́ 8. о заседа́нии
4. на у́лицах, «О чём»

1. о семье́, до́ме, де́тях, роди́телях, ро́дственниках	6. здоро́вье
2. пробле́мах, стра́хах, фобия́х	7. путеше́ствиях, приро́де
3. бога́тстве, сла́ве, поче́те, уваже́нии, поку́пке	8. полити́ке и полити́ках
4. повыше́нии	9. пого́де
5. иноплане́тных	10. встре́чах

Chapter 11

1. 1. новых 2. важными 3. спортивную 4. зубному 5. китайском 6. серьезных 7. русские народные
1. художественной гимнастикой, детской спортивной школе 2. маленькой деревне, старинного русского города 3. огромная квартира, большими окнами, многоэтажном здании 4. современную одежду 5. близкие родственники, модный дорогой айпад 6. вечернем концерте, популярной рок-группы, свободных мест.
1. русских семей, маленькой деревне 2. старый деревенский дом, родовым гнездом 3. небольшом уютном двухэтажном доме, резным деревянным крыльцом, огромным светлым чердаком, темным холодным погребом 4. прошлого века 5. белой сирени, черной смороды, садовой малины 6. скрипучим ступенькам, длинный узкий 7. просторную комнату, настоящей русской печью 8. вкусные обеды, румяные пироги. 9. русской печи 10. русской печи, большой деревянный стол, белой льняной скатертью 11. старый медный самовар 12. большим столом, теплыми летними и холодными зимними вечерами, горячими вкусными пирогами

Chapter 12

1. 1. труднее 2. дешевле 3. дороже 4. крепче
1. самое глубокое 2. самая длинная 3. самые высокие 4. самый трудный
1. тяжелее 2. моложе 3. хуже 4. дороже 5. младше
1. самый глубокий, глубочайший, глубже всех 2. самый густонаселенный 3. самая короткая, кратчайшая, короче всех 4. самое ядовитое и опасное, опаснейшее, ядовитее и опаснее всех

Chapter 13

1. 1. по-английски 2. интересно 3. медленно 4. по-собачьи 5. искренне 6. дружески/по-дружески.
1. душно 2. скучно 3. домой 4. недавно 5. отовсюду 6. туда, завтра
1. нигде 2. никогда 3. нкуда 4. нгде 5. неоткуда 6. ниоткуда
1. интереснее/увлекательнее, увлекательнее 2. больше 3. ярче, громче 4. быстрее, больше 5. проворнее, ближе, ближе 6. громче 7. сильнее 8. чаще 9. лучше 10. реже, интереснее/увлекательнее/оживленнее, интереснее/увлекательнее/оживленнее 11. самый интересный

Chapter 14

Sections 14.1–14.7

1. 1. мне 2. Вам 3. нам 4. нём 5. тобой 6. их
1. моей сестре 2. нашему соседу 3. Вашему брату 4. их улице 5. этому человеку 6. эту открытку, тот словарь 7. такими верными словами
1. своим голосом 2. свою работу 3. моей комнате 4. своих стихах 5. его жену, свою работу.

Sections 14.8–14.11

1. (a) который (b) которая (c) который (d) который (e) который (f) которая (g) которая (h) который 2. которым 3. которую 4. которого 5. которого
1. Его, такого 2. всю свою, этом самом 3. Она, её 4. всех, это 5. Никто, этот 6. Все, свой, свой 7. Всем 8. Кто-то, кому-то, что-то 9. кем-то, чем-то 10. никого, какие-то 11. самого, такая 12. Его, какое 13. Сам, своей 14. Ему, себе 15. Его, его, такого 16. все 17. всеми своими, свою, этот

Chapter 15

1. красные розы/красных розы 2. новую машину 3. жёлтую дыню, сладких яблока 4. молодых актёров 5. интересных встреч
1. к семи часам 2. с одиннадцати утра до десяти вечера 3. без четверти девять, в половине шестого 4. с часу до двух 5. в час
1. Первого сентября тысяча девятьсот тридцать девятого года 2. Двадцатого ноября тысяча девятьсот десятого года 3. В тысяча четырёхста девятьсто втором году 4. В тысяча пятьсот шестьдесят четвертом году – в тысяча шестьсот шестнадцатом году 5. В десятом веке 6. Двадцать первое июня

Chapter 16

1. была 2. будет 3. будем 4. буду 5. были
1. является 2. будет 3. наступит, становится 4. считался 5. находится

Chapter 17

1. отдыхает, собирают, играют, разговаривают, обсуждают 2. танцует 3. рисует, пишет, печёт, продаёт
1. зовут 2. ищет 3. берут 4. пью, ем 5. ждут 6. ждёте 7. можете 8. плачет.
1. провожают 2. кончает, начинат 3. разрушает 4. погибает 5. болеет 4. Встаёт, принимает, брётся, одевается, занимается, купается, лежит, загорает, катается, играет, расслабляется, танцует, поёт, пьёт, ездит, ест, устаёт, спит, видит

Chapter 18

1. ходила 2. читал 3. не работала 4. интересовался 5. спали
1. тёр 2. пекла 3. нес 4. выращивал 5. везла 6. ели 7. прыгал 8. привыкли 9. танцевал, рисовал 10. текла 11. шли, разговаривали, смеялись
1. Вставал, ложился, мылся, брился, принимал, одевался, занимался, плавал, катался, расслаблялся, танцевал, пел, играл, обедал, пил, ездил, ел, торопился, ходил, ужинал, уставал, смотрел, спал

Chapter 19

1. будем изучать 2. будет работать 3. буду есть 4. будут плавать 5. будете обедать
1. Встану, вызову, позавтракаю, выпью, приеду, вскочу, расположусь, познакомлюсь, пообедаю, приеду, переночую, отправлюсь, поймаю, искупаюсь, вернусь, расскажу

Chapter 20

Sections 20.1–20.5

1. выучили 2. узнавали/узнаём 3. обедал/обедает 4. выпили, съели
1. сдавал, не сдал 2. научил, учился 3. проводить 4. позвонил(а) 5. закончит, поступит 6. снял
1. за час 2. 10 лет 3. на 2 дня 4. на 25 лет 5. через полчаса

Sections 20.6–20.7

1. слушать 2. вставать 3. выгуливать 4. пить 5. вставать 6. курить 7. заниматься 8. читать 9. обсуждать
1. vedi, не груби, слушай 2. ешь(те), пей(те) 3. не рассказывай(те), не проговорись/не проговоритесь 4. говори(те) 5. заходи(те), принеси(те) 6. не упади(те)

Chapter 21

1. 1. Слишком много денег было потрачено на свадьбу. Много гостей было приглашено, много было съедено и много вина выпито. 2. Москва не сразу строилась. 3. Статья должна быть переписана. 4. Вор будет пойман и отправлен в тюрьму. 5. Рядом с офисами строится новая парковка. 6. Осторожно! Двери закрываются.

2. 1. Вам звонили дважды. 2. Принесли для Вас пакет и оставили на столе. 3. Заходили, спрашивали, когда Вы будете? 4. Выставку открывают завтра. 5. В газетах писали о Вашем докладе.

Chapter 22

Sections 22.1–22.2

1. 1. уходи(те) 2. приготовь(те) 3. критикуй(те) 4. ешь(те) 5. пей(те)
6. садись/садитесь

2. **A.** «Ира, будь добра, позвони матери. Поздравь её с днём рождения. Купи ей цветы. Жди меня у входа в ресторан.» **B.** «Анна Ивановна! Будьте добры, пошлите факс г. Смиуту. Закажите столик на четверых в ресторане.»

Sections 22.3–22.4

1. **A.** 1. съездил бы 2. купил бы 3. помог бы 4. провёл бы **B.** 1. съездит 2. купит 3. поможет 4. проведёт

Chapter 23

1. 1. учитеcь / учились 2. расслабляются / расслаблялись 3. занимается / занимался 4. купаются / купались / 5. боится / боялся

2. 1. начнётся 2. продаются 3. кусается 4. спрячутся 5. разбиваются

Chapter 24

1. 1. ездил/катались на верблюдах 2. поедет в Москву 3. летать на самолёте 4. ходят 5. ездили/катались на велосипеде

2. **A.** 1. ходит 2. лазит 3. возит 4. водит **B.** 1. летит 2. идут, несут 3. едем 4. везёт **C.** 1. летали 2. возила 3. ходили 4. ездили **D.** 1. поедет 2. пойдёт 3. полетят 4. повезёт

3. 1. едет/ездит, ехала 2. плавать 3. шёл 4. будем ходить 5. ходил/бродил 6. лазил 7. ползают 8. летали

4. 1. идёшь 2. идё, хожу, идёшь 3. идё, ездить, езжу, плаваешь 4. плаваю 5. бегая, идти

Chapter 25

Sections 25.1–25.4

1. 1. вывозит, ввозит 2. выводит 3. войти, войти 4. уходит/отходит 5. приходи/ заходи 6. приходит, уходит 7. довезёте 8. отвезти 9. подходит/пошла/подойдёт 10. слетит/слетела/слетает 11. взлетает

2. 1. перебегают/перебежали/перебегут 2. переходить 3. прошёл 4. объехать 5. заехал(а) 6. залетела 7. переплыть 8. доехать, дойти

3. 1. поехать 2. пошёл 3. поедете 4. поехали 5. пошли, пошли 6. поехала

4. 1. проходили 2. сходить 3. побегала 4. заходила

Sections 25.5–25.6

1. 1. пришли 2. приехала 3. входил 4. прилетал 5. не принёс 6. еду/уезжаю 7. приехать 8. переезжаете 9. заходит, приносит, принёс

1. Моё душа́ уходи́т в па́тки при одной мы́сли о предстоя́щей опера́ции.
2. Моё подру́га выходи́ла за́муж три ра́за. 3. Они́ не смогли́ нам помо́чь, пёзд ушёл. 4. Моше́нник с лёгкостью́ обвёл вокру́г па́льца доверчи́вых люде́й.
5. По́сле несча́стного слу́чая пацие́нт ушёл в себя́.

Section 25.7

1. 1. сквозь 2. по 3. на, в, в, в 4. из-за, мимо, в 5. че́рез, мимо, за
2. 1. е́здил 2. вози́л, прие́хали 3. пое́хать 4. дое́хали 5. вы́шли, вошли́
6. отоше́л 7. шёл 8. принесе́л 9. пришёл 10. пое́хали 11. пошёл 12. пере́шли, прошли́, зашли́, дошли́ 13. обошли́, вышли́ 14. поплы́ли 15. сходи́ть/зайти́, съезди́ть/пое́хать 16. прие́хать

Chapter 26

1. 1. написа́ть 2. нести́ 3. приви́кнуть 4. танцева́ть 5. жить 6. взять 7. е́хать 8. унести́ 9. купи́ть 10. вы́пить
2. **A.** 1. пью́щий 2. берегущий 3. кладу́щий 4. и́щущий 5. смею́щийся 6. испо́льзующий
- B.** 1. пришё́дший 2. съе́вший 3. интересова́вшийся 4. встреча́вшийся 5. присе́вший 6. отдохну́вший
3. **A.** 1. экспорти́руемый 2. люби́мый 3. изуча́емый 4. несомый **B.** 1. сказа́нный 2. изу́ченный 3. приглаше́нный 4. расста́вленный 5. запре́щенный 6. откры́тый
4. 1. кото́рые прино́сят 2. кото́рые им понра́вились 3. кото́рые про́жили 4. кото́рых осуди́ли и пригово́рили 5. кото́рые написа́л **B.** Пеле́вин и кото́рые переве́ли 6. кото́рые понижа́ют жар.
5. 1. приезжа́ющие 2. поте́рянный рассе́янным профе́ссором 3. в незамерза́ющих исто́чниках 4. па́пку, оста́вленную пасса́жиром 5. основа́нной изве́стным бизне́смено́м 6. разруше́нных урага́ном
6. 1. опубликóванную 2. заинтере́сован 3. разоча́рованы 4. отремонти́рованный 5. кúпленный

Chapter 27

1. **A.** 1. зако́нчить 2. существова́ть 3. интересова́ться 4. попроща́ться 5. выра́сти 6. бо́яться 7. дава́ть 8. переда́ть 9. бы́ть 10. унести́ **B.** 1. при́дй 2. погасну́в 3. беря́ 4. рису́я 5. зацветя́/зацветши 6. ища́ 7. улыбу́вшись 8. най́дй 9. живя́ 10. спёкши
2. **A.** 1. лежи́т и блести́т 2. бу́дут раба́тывать и испо́льзовать 3. про́жил, раба́тал, не чита́л, не интересова́лся 4. По́сле того́ как Солжени́цын про́жил 5. По́сле того́ как она́ пришла́ домо́й 6. оступи́лся, упáл и не донёс 7. Когда́ семья́ услы́шала, она́ пригото́вилась
- B.** 1. бе́гая 2. шу́тя, показыва́я 3. поднима́ясь 4. разруша́я, лома́я, переворачива́я, оставля́я 5. верну́вшись 6. получи́в 7. за́полнив, прой́дй 8. зако́нчив
3. 1. сиде́ть сложа́ ру́ки 2. несли́сь слома́ го́лову 3. не покладая́ рук 4. Моё́ пе́сенка до конца́ не спёта
4. 1. раба́тает мно́го 2. занима́ется 3. ниче́го не де́лать 4. е́сли говори́ть откровенно́ 5. встал, при́нял, оде́лся, выпил 6. сел, вклю́чил 7. оста́вил 8. добра́лся, сел, прове́рил 9. серди́лся 10. переку́сил 11. ду́мал, беспоко́ился

Chapter 28

1. 1. из 2. у 3. на, за 4. на 5. в, с 6. в 7. в 8. с, до 9. на 10. без, с
2. 1. к 2. от 3. за 4. со, на 5. под 6. по 7. на 8. о 9. на, среди́, с 10. в, по.

Chapter 29

1. 1. Бизнесме́н попроси́л секретаря́, что́бы она́ отмени́ла встре́чу.
2. Домохозя́йка пошла́ на ры́нок, что́бы купи́ть проду́кты. 3. Хотя́ иностран́ные студе́нты пробы́ли в Росси́и недóлго, они́ уже́ нача́ли чу́вствовать себя́ как

дóма. 4. У нас не́ было достáточно дéнег, и по́тому мы реши́ли пое́сть дóма. 5. Вíктор устáл так, как бóдто он пробежáл марафóн. 6. Студéнты получи́ли пятёрки, потому́ что о́ни мнóго рабóтали. 7. Вы понима́ете рúсскую послóвицу «Чем дáльше в лес, тем бóльше дров?» 8. О́ни хоте́ли пойти́ на вечерíнку, о́днако отказа́лись от приглаше́ния.

2. 1. хотя́/несмотря́ на то что, по́тому 2 что, и́ли, и́ли, и́ли 3. е́сли бы 4. как бóдто 5. в то вре́мя как/пока́, чтóбы 6. едва́, что

Chapter 30

1. 1. Стáновится дúшно. 2. Им не хоте́лось рабóтать. 3. Нам náдо спешíть. 4. Здесь не́льзя ку́рить. 5. Полетéть бы на Луну́. 6. Никогó не́ было в лесу́ со мной. Я испугáлся/лась. 7. Мне не́когда. 8. Мне нúжен ваш совет. 9. Мне нра́вится Ва́ша причёска. 10. Извинíте, мне náдо идтí. 11. Бóльше всего́ я люблю́ гуля́ть по лéсу, когдá рассветáет.

2. 1. Нíне не́куда бýло по́ехать. 2. Им не́чему удивля́ться. 3. Мáльчику не́ с кем игра́ть. 4. Нам не́ над чем бýло смея́ться. 5. Вíктору не́куда спешíть.

Grammatical Index

Abbreviations

declension 29

gender 10–11

Accusative case

after verbs 43–45, 48–50

after verbs of motion and verbs

describing movement 43–45

as direct objects 40–42

endings 39

in idioms 50–51

in prepositional constructions 42–45

with prepositions, summary

268–269, 271

in time expressions 43, 45–47,

160, 161

see also Declension

Adjectives

comparatives 112–114

declension 105–110

short-form adjectives 116

superlatives 114–115

types 104

used as nouns 110

see also Agreement; Declension

Adverbs

comparatives 122

formation 118–119

superlatives 123

types 119–122, 253, 281–282, 283–284

Agreement

between cardinal, collective and
indefinite numbers and nouns
155–158, 162–164, 165

between nouns and long-form
adjectives/long-form participles/
ordinal numbers 104–110, 153–155,
256, 258–259

between subjects and predicates 32,
116, 158

Animate nouns 6–7

Apposition 36

Articles 6

Case

concept of cases 16

oblique cases 17–18

see also Accusative case; Dative case;

Genitive case; Instrumental case;

Nominative case; Prepositional case

Clause

compound sentences 274–275, 290

complex sentences 275–277, 290

see also Conjunctions

Conjunctions

co-ordinating 274–275

subordinating 275–277

Dative case

after adjectives 82

after verbs 78–81

in age expression 77–78, 160

denoting an addressee/recipient 76–77

endings 76

in idioms 84–85

in impersonal constructions 78, 281–282

with prepositions 83–85

with prepositions, summary 269,

271–272

see also Declension

Declension

declension of abbreviations 29

declension of adjectives 105–110

declension of cardinal numbers 148–153

declension of ordinal numbers 153–155

declension of plural nouns 22–28

declension of proper names 28–29

declension of singular nouns 18–22

first declension of nouns 19–21

fleeting vowels 30

formation of the genitive plural 24–27

principle of declension 16, 18

second declension of nouns 21

third declension of nouns 22

see also Accusative case; Agreement;

Case; Dative case; Endings; Genitive

- case; Instrumental case; Nominative case; Numbers of nouns; Participles; Prepositional case; Stems
- Endings
 hard 4, 12–13, 18–29, 39, 52, 76, 86, 97, 104–110, 148–153
 soft 4, 12–13, 18–29, 39, 52, 76, 86, 97, 104–110, 148–153
see also Accusative case; Agreement; Case; Dative case; Declension; Genitive case; Instrumental case; Nominative case; Numbers of nouns; Participles; Prepositional case; Stems
- Gender of nouns
 common gender 10
 feminine 7, 8, 9
 gender of abbreviations 10–11
 gender of indeclinable nouns 10–11
 gender of nouns denoting occupation 8–9
 grammatical gender 7
 masculine 7–9
 natural (biological) 7–8
 neuter 9–10
- Genitive case
 after numbers/numerals 57–58, 155–158
 after verbs 61–62, 73–74
 in comparative constructions 60–61
 describing location 67–69
 describing movement 69–71
 describing relationship between two objects 53–55
 endings 24–27, 30, 52
 genitive of quantity 55–58
 in idioms 62–63
 indicating measurement 57
 in negative constructions 61, 65–66
 partitive genitive 58
 in possessive constructions 53–55, 64–67
 in prepositional constructions 64–74
 with prepositions, summary 268–272
 in time expressions 59–60, 71, 158–160
see also Declension
- Gerunds
 characteristics 262
 in idioms, derived forms 265–266
 imperfective, formation, use 262–263, 264
 perfective, formation, use 263, 264–265
- Imperatives
 aspect 207–208
 formation, use 214–216
see also Mood
- Impersonal sentences
 types, use 281–287
see also Sentences
- Inanimate nouns 6–7
- Indefinite-personal sentences 212–213
- Infinitives
 aspect 168–169, 204–207
 function, use 168–170
 in impersonal sentences 283–284
- Instrumental case
 after short-form adjectives 89–90
 after verbs 90–91, 94–95
 in comparative constructions 88
 denoting measurements 88
 denoting route of a journey 88
 endings 86–87
 indicating the means/manner of an action 87
 in passive constructions 88
 as predicate 88–89, 211
 with prepositions 92–95, 268–270, 270–272
 in time expressions 87
see also Declension
- Mood
 conditional, formation, use 217
 imperative, formation, use 207–208, 214–215
 indicative 214
 subjunctive, formation, use 218
- Nominative case
 addressing people 36
 after cardinal numbers 36, 155–156
 as apposition 36
 in comparative constructions 36
 in generalizing constructions 36
 in idioms 37
 naming people and objects 35–36
 in possessive constructions 33, 64–65
 as predicate 34–35
 in sentences describing likes, dislikes or necessity 33–34, 282–283
 in sentences describing presence of someone or something 33
 in sentences without predicate 34
 as subject 32–34

Nouns

- animate or inanimate 6–7
- case, declension 16–31
- gender 7–9
- singular and plural nouns 12–15
- using nouns as numbers 165
- see also* Accusative case; Dative case; Genitive case; Instrumental case; Nominative case; Prepositional constructions

Numbers of nouns

- feminine plural 12
- formation of the genitive plural 24–26
- formation of plural nouns 12
- irregular plural nouns 13
- masculine plural 12
- neuter plural 13
- nouns after numbers 155–158
- nouns that only have a plural form 14
- nouns that only have a singular form 14–15

Numbers/numerals

- age expressions 77–78, 160
- cardinal 148–153
- cardinal numbers with nouns 57–58, 155–158
- collective 162–164
- decimals, fractions 161–162
- declension of cardinal numbers 148–153
- declension of ordinal numbers 154–155
- expressions of quantity 165–166
- fractions, decimals 161–162
- indefinite 45–57, 164–165
- ordinal 153–155
- time expressions 41–42, 45–47, 59–60, 71, 158–160
- using nouns as numbers 165
- see also* Declension

Objects

- direct 17, 40, 210
- indirect 17, 76–77, 210–211
- see also* Transitivity

Participles

- characteristics, types 255
- long-form participles, characteristics, formation, use 255–259
- short-form participles, characteristics, formation, use 259–260

Particles

- types, use 277–280

Passive constructions *see* Voice

Predicates 34–35, 88–89, 281–289, 290–291

Prefixes

- adverbs formation 119
- meanings of the prefixes used with verbal aspect formation 188–192
- verbs of motion 236–241

Prepositional case

- after verbs 8
- endings 97–98
- indicating location 98–99
- in prepositional constructions 99–100
- with prepositions, summary 268–269
- in time expressions 99, 160–161
- see also* Declension

Prepositional constructions 17, 42–43, 47–48, 67–68, 72–73, 92–94, 99, 210–211 *see also* Prepositions

Prepositions

- prepositions after verbs of motion and other verbs describing movement 250–252
- primary, summary 42–48, 64–73, 83–85, 92–95, 98–99, 268–270
- secondary, summary 270–272
- see also* Prepositional constructions

Pronouns

- demonstrative 130–133
- determinative 133–136
- indefinite 141–143
- interrogative 136–138
- negative 143–145, 283–286
- personal 125–127
- possessive 127–130
- reciprocal 145–146
- reflexive 127
- relative 138–141
- types 125

Punctuation 292–293

Reflexive verbs

- formation, past tense 181–182
- formation, present tense 179–180
- meanings 220–225

Sentences

- impersonal, types, use 281–289
- indefinite-personal sentences 212–213
- sentences with omitted subject 212–213, 281–289
- sentences with omitted predicate 34
- see also* Conjunctions; Mood; Voice

Spelling rules

- spelling rule one 3
- spelling rule two 3
- spelling rule three 4

Stems

- hard 4, 12–13, 19–28, 39, 52, 76, 86, 97, 105–110, 149–153
- soft 4, 12–13, 19–28, 39, 52, 76, 86, 97, 105–110, 149–153
- see also* Endings

Stress

- comparative adjectives 112
- plural nouns 15
- short-form adjectives 116

Subjects 32–34, 64–65, 281, 290–291

Suffixes

- adverb formation 118–119
- gerund formation 262–263
- participles formation 256–258
- verbal aspect formation 192–193

Syntax

- essentials 290–293

Tense

- future 185–186
- past 181–183
- present 174–180

Transitivity

- concept 210
- intransitive verbs 210–211
- transitive verbs 210

Transliteration 2–3

Verbal aspect

- concept 188
- formation 188–194
- imperfective, context, meanings, use 188, 194–195, 196, 197–204
- with imperatives 207–208
- with infinitives 201–207
- perfective, context, meanings, use 188, 195–196, 197–204
- with verbs of motion with prefixes 246–248

Verbs

- first conjugation 174–177
- future tense, formation 185–186
- impersonal verbs 286–288
- infinitive 168–170, 204–207
- mixed conjugation 179
- past tense 181–183
- present tense 174–180
- reflexive verbs 179–180, 181–182, 220–225
- second conjugation 178–179
- verbal grammatical categories 167–168
- the verb ‘to be’ 170–173, 182, 185
- see also* Mood; Reflexive verbs Tense; Transitivity; Verbal aspect; Verbs of motion; Voice

Verbs of motion

- adverbs after verbs of motion 253
- prepositions after verbs of motion 250–252
- reflexive verbs of motion without prefixes 228
- the verb ‘to go’ 227–228
- without prefixes, figurative meaning 233–234
- without prefixes, list 226–227
- without prefixes, meanings, use 228–231
- without prefixes, past tense 232
- without prefixes, present tense 231–232
- with prefixes, figurative meaning 248–250
- with prefixes, past tense 244–245
- with prefixes, prefixes’ meanings 236–242
- with prefixes, present and future tenses 242–244
- with prefixes, using verbal aspect 246–248
- see also* Prepositions; Tense; Verbal aspect

Voice

- concept 167, 211
- passive constructions 88, 211–212

Word order 291–292



Taylor & Francis Group
an **informa** business

Taylor & Francis eBooks

www.taylorfrancis.com

A single destination for eBooks from Taylor & Francis with increased functionality and an improved user experience to meet the needs of our customers.

90,000+ eBooks of award-winning academic content in Humanities, Social Science, Science, Technology, Engineering, and Medical written by a global network of editors and authors.

TAYLOR & FRANCIS EBOOKS OFFERS:

A streamlined experience for our library customers

A single point of discovery for all of our eBook content

Improved search and discovery of content at both book and chapter level

REQUEST A FREE TRIAL

support@taylorfrancis.com

 **Routledge**
Taylor & Francis Group

 **CRC Press**
Taylor & Francis Group